



User Guide

AWS Systems Manager Automation runbook reference



AWS Systems Manager Automation runbook reference: User Guide

Copyright © 2024 Amazon Web Services, Inc. and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Amazon's trademarks and trade dress may not be used in connection with any product or service that is not Amazon's, in any manner that is likely to cause confusion among customers, or in any manner that disparages or discredits Amazon. All other trademarks not owned by Amazon are the property of their respective owners, who may or may not be affiliated with, connected to, or sponsored by Amazon.

Table of Contents

Automation runbook reference	1
View runbook content	3
API Gateway	4
AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteAPIGatewayStage	4
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableAPIGatewayTracing	5
AWSConfigRemediation-UpdateAPIGatewayMethodCaching	7
AWS Batch	8
AWSSupport-TroubleshootAWSBatchJob	9
AWS CloudFormation	14
AWS-DeleteCloudFormationStack	15
AWS-EnableCloudFormationSNSNotification	16
AWS-RunCfnLint	18
AWSSupport-TroubleshootCFNCustomResource	20
AWS-UpdateCloudFormationStack	22
CloudFront	23
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontDefaultRootObject	23
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontAccessLogs	25
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity	27
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontOriginFailover	29
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontViewerPolicyHTTPS	30
CloudTrail	32
AWSConfigRemediation>CreateCloudTrailMultiRegionTrail	32
AWS-EnableCloudTrail	34
AWS-EnableCloudTrailCloudWatchLogs	35
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudTrailEncryptionWithKMS	37
AWS-EnableCloudTrailKmsEncryption	38
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudTrailLogFileValidation	40
AWS-EnableCloudTrailLogFileValidation	41
AWS-QueryCloudTrailLogs	42
CloudWatch	45
AWS-ConfigureCloudWatchOnEC2Instance	45
AWS-EnableCWAlarm	46
Amazon DocumentDB	49
AWS-EnableDocDbClusterBackupRetentionPeriod	49

CodeBuild	51
AWSConfigRemediation-ConfigureCodeBuildProjectWithKMSCMK	51
AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteAccessKeysFromCodeBuildProject	53
AWS CodeDeploy	55
AWSSupport-TroubleshootCodeDeploy	55
AWS Config	57
AWSSupport-SetupConfig	57
AWS Directory Service	60
AWS-CreateDSManagementInstance	60
AWSSupport-TroubleshootADConnectorConnectivity	65
AWSSupport-TroubleshootDirectoryTrust	68
AWS AppSync	72
AWS-EnableAppSyncGraphQLApiLogging	72
Amazon Athena	74
AWS-EnableAthenaWorkGroupEncryptionAtRest	75
DynamoDB	77
AWS-ChangeDDBRWCapacityMode	77
AWS>CreateDynamoDBBackup	79
AWS>DeleteDynamoDbBackup	81
AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteDynamoDbTable	81
AWS>DeleteDynamoDbTableBackups	83
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableEncryptionOnDynamoDbTable	84
AWSConfigRemediation-EnablePITRForDynamoDbTable	86
AWS-EnableDynamoDbAutoscaling	87
AWS-RestoreDynamoDBTable	90
Amazon EBS	93
AWSSupport-AnalyzeEBSResourceUsage	94
AWS-ArchiveEBSSnapshots	100
AWS-AttachEBSVolume	102
AWSSupport-CalculateEBSPerformanceMetrics	103
AWS-CopySnapshot	110
AWS-CreateSnapshot	111
AWS>DeleteSnapshot	112
AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedEBSVolume	113
AWS-DeregisterAMIs	115
AWS-DetachEBSVolume	116

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableEbsEncryptionByDefault	117
AWS-ExtendEbsVolume	119
AWSSupport-ModifyEBSSnapshotPermission	121
AWSConfigRemediation-ModifyEBSVolumeType	123
Amazon EC2	125
AWS-ASGEnterStandby	127
AWS-ASGExitStandby	128
AWS>CreateImage	129
AWS>DeleteImage	130
AWS-PatchAsgInstance	132
AWS-PatchInstanceWithRollback	134
AWS-QuarantineEC2Instance	137
AWS-ResizeInstance	139
AWS-RestartEC2Instance	140
AWS-SetupJupyter	141
AWS-StartEC2Instance	144
AWS-StopEC2Instance	145
AWS-TerminateEC2Instance	146
AWS-UpdateLinuxAmi	147
AWS-UpdateWindowsAmi	150
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableAutoScalingGroupELBHealthCheck	153
AWSConfigRemediation-EnforceEC2InstanceIMDSv2	155
AWSEC2-CloneInstanceAndUpgradeSQLServer	156
AWSEC2-CloneInstanceAndUpgradeWindows	160
AWSEC2-ConfigureSTIG	164
AWSEC2-PatchLoadBalancerInstance	192
AWSEC2-SQLServerDBRestore	193
AWSSupport-ActivateWindowsWithAmazonLicense	198
AWSSupport-AnalyzeAWSEndpointReachabilityFromEC2	201
AWSPremiumSupport-ChangeInstanceTypeIntelToAMD	205
AWSSupport-CheckXenToNitroMigrationRequirements	211
AWSSupport-ConfigureEC2Metadata	214
AWSSupport-CopyEC2Instance	218
AWSSupport-EnableWindowsEC2SerialConsole	223
AWSSupport-ExecuteEC2Rescue	231
AWSSupport-ListEC2Resources	234

AWSSupport-ManageRDPSettings	237
AWSSupport-ManageWindowsService	239
AWSSupport-MigrateEC2ClassicToVPC	241
AWSSupport-MigrateXenToNitroLinux	248
AWSSupport-ResetAccess	259
AWSSupport-ResetLinuxUserPassword	262
AWSPremiumSupport-ResizeNitroInstance	269
AWSSupport-RestoreEC2InstanceFromSnapshot	276
AWSSupport-SendLogBundleToS3Bucket	280
AWSSupport-StartEC2RescueWorkflow	282
AWSPremiumSupport-TroubleshootEC2DiskUsage	292
AWSSupport-TroubleshootEC2InstanceConnect	297
AWSSupport-TroubleshootRDP	303
AWSSupport-TroubleshootSSH	309
AWSSupport-TroubleshootSUSERegistration	312
AWSSupport-UpgradeWindowsAWSDrivers	314
Amazon ECS	318
AWSSupport-CollectECSInstanceLogs	318
AWS-InstallAmazonECSAgent	321
AWS-ECSRunTask	323
AWSSupport-TroubleshootECSContainerInstance	326
AWSSupport-TroubleshootECSTaskFailedToStart	328
AWS-UpdateAmazonECSAgent	332
Amazon EFS	334
AWSSupport-CheckAndMountEFS	335
Amazon EKS	338
AWSSupport-CollectEKSInstanceLogs	338
AWS>CreateEKSClusterWithFargateProfile	341
AWS>CreateEKSClusterWithNodegroup	344
AWS>DeleteEKSCluster	348
AWS>MigrateToNewEKSSelfManagedNodeGroup	351
AWSPremiumSupport-TroubleshootEKSCluster	357
AWSSupport-TroubleshootEKSWorkerNode	361
AWS>UpdateEKSCluster	363
AWS>UpdateEKSMangedNodeGroup	364
AWS>UpdateEKSSelfManagedLinuxNodeGroups	369

Elastic Beanstalk	373
AWSSupport-CollectElasticBeanstalkLogs	373
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableElasticBeanstalkEnvironmentLogStreaming ..	376
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableBeanstalkEnvironmentNotifications	377
AWSSupport-TroubleshootElasticBeanstalk	379
Elastic Load Balancing	382
AWSConfigRemediation-DropInvalidHeadersForALB	383
AWS-EnableCLBAccessLogs	384
AWS-EnableCLBConnectionDraining	386
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCLBCrossZoneLoadBalancing	388
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableELBDeletionProtection	389
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableLoggingForALBAndCLB	390
AWSSupport-TroubleshootCLBConnectivity	392
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableNLBCrossZoneLoadBalancing	395
AWS-UpdateALBDesyncMitigationMode	397
AWS-UpdateCLBDesyncMitigationMode	399
Amazon EMR	400
AWSSupport-AnalyzeEMRLogs	401
Amazon OpenSearch Service	407
AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteOpenSearchDomain	407
AWSConfigRemediation-EnforceHTTPSOnOpenSearchDomain	408
AWSConfigRemediation-UpdateOpenSearchDomainSecurityGroups	410
AWSSupport-TroubleshootOpenSearchRedYellowCluster	411
AWSSupport-TroubleshootOpenSearchHighCPU	417
EventBridge	423
AWS-AddOpsItemDedupStringToEventBridgeRule	424
AWS-DisableEventBridgeRule	425
GuardDuty	427
AWSConfigRemediation>CreateGuardDutyDetector	427
IAM	428
AWS-AttachIAMToInstance	429
AWS>DeleteIAMInlinePolicy	431
AWSConfigRemediation>DeleteIAMRole	432
AWSConfigRemediation>DeleteIAMUser	434
AWSConfigRemediation>DeleteUnusedIAMGroup	436
AWSConfigRemediation>DeleteUnusedIAMPolicy	438

AWSConfigRemediation-DetachIAMPolicy	439
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableAccountAccessAnalyzer	441
AWSupport-GrantPermissionsToIAMUser	442
AWSConfigRemediation-RemoveUserPolicies	447
AWSConfigRemediation-ReplaceIAMInlinePolicy	449
AWSConfigRemediation-RevokeUnusedIAMUserCredentials	451
AWSConfigRemediation-SetIAMPasswordPolicy	453
Amazon Kinesis Data Streams	456
AWS-EnableKinesisStreamEncryption	456
AWS KMS	458
AWSConfigRemediation-CancelKeyDeletion	458
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableKeyRotation	459
Lambda	461
AWSConfigRemediation-ConfigureLambdaFunctionXRayTracing	461
AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteLambdaFunction	462
AWSConfigRemediation-EncryptLambdaEnvironmentVariablesWithCMK	464
AWSConfigRemediation-MoveLambdaToVPC	465
AWSSupport-RemediateLambdaS3Event	467
AWSSupport-TroubleshootLambdaInternetAccess	470
AWSSupport-TroubleshootLambdaS3Event	473
Amazon Managed Workflows for Apache Airflow	475
AWSSupport-TroubleshootMWAAEnvironmentCreation	475
Neptune	482
AWS-EnableNeptuneDbAuditLogsToCloudWatch	482
AWS-EnableNeptuneDbBackupRetentionPeriod	484
AWS-EnableNeptuneClusterDeletionProtection	486
Amazon RDS	487
AWS-CreateEncryptedRdsSnapshot	488
AWS-CreateRdsSnapshot	491
AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRDSCluster	492
AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRDSClusterSnapshot	494
AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRDSInstance	495
AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRDSInstanceSnapshot	497
AWSConfigRemediation-DisablePublicAccessToRDSInstance	498
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCopyTagsToSnapshotOnRDSCluster	500
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCopyTagsToSnapshotOnRDSDBInstance	502

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableEnhancedMonitoringOnRDSInstance	503
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableMinorVersionUpgradeOnRDS	505
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableMultiAZOnRDSInstance	507
AWSConfigRemediation-EnablePerformanceInsightsOnRDSInstance	509
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRDSClusterDeletionProtection	511
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRDSInstanceBackup	512
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRDSInstanceDeletionProtection	514
AWSConfigRemediation-ModifyRDSInstancePortNumber	516
AWSSupport-ModifyRDSSnapshotPermission	518
AWSPremiumSupport-PostgreSQLWorkloadReview	520
AWS-RebootRdsInstance	536
AWSSupport-ShareRDSSnapshot	537
AWS-StartRdsInstance	540
AWS-StartStopAuroraCluster	541
AWS-StopRdsInstance	543
AWSSupport-TroubleshootConnectivityToRDS	544
AWSSupport-TroubleshootRDSIAMAuthentication	547
AWSSupport-ValidateRdsNetworkConfiguration	554
Amazon Redshift	560
AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRedshiftCluster	560
AWSConfigRemediation-DisablePublicAccessToRedshiftCluster	562
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRedshiftClusterAuditLogging	563
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRedshiftClusterAutomatedSnapshot	565
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRedshiftClusterEncryption	566
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRedshiftClusterEnhancedVPCRouting	568
AWSConfigRemediation-EnforceSSLOnlyConnectionsToRedshiftCluster	569
AWSConfigRemediation-ModifyRedshiftClusterMaintenanceSettings	571
AWSConfigRemediation-ModifyRedshiftClusterNodeType	573
Amazon S3	575
AWS-ArchiveS3BucketToIntelligentTiering	575
AWS-ConfigureS3BucketLogging	578
AWS-ConfigureS3BucketVersioning	580
AWSConfigRemediation-ConfigureS3BucketPublicAccessBlock	581
AWSConfigRemediation-ConfigureS3PublicAccessBlock	583
AWS-CreateS3PolicyToExpireMultipartUploads	585
AWS-DisableS3BucketPublicReadWrite	587

AWS-EnableS3BucketEncryption	588
AWS-EnableS3BucketKeys	589
AWSConfigRemediation-RemovePrincipalStarFromS3BucketPolicy	591
AWSConfigRemediation-RestrictBucketSSLRequestsOnly	592
AWSSupport-TroubleshootS3PublicRead	594
SageMaker	599
AWS-DisableSageMakerNotebookRootAccess	600
Secrets Manager	602
AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteSecret	602
AWSConfigRemediation-RotateSecret	603
Security Hub	605
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableSecurityHub	605
AWS Shield	607
AWSPremiumSupport-DDoSResiliencyAssessment	607
Amazon SNS	616
AWS-EnableSNSTopicDeliveryStatusLogging	616
AWSConfigRemediation-EncryptSNSTopic	619
AWS-PublishSNSNotification	620
Amazon SQS	621
AWS-EnableSQSEncryption	621
Step Functions	624
AWS-EnableStepFunctionsStateMachineLogging	624
Systems Manager	626
AWS-BulkDeleteAssociation	627
AWS-BulkEditOpsItems	628
AWS-BulkResolveOpsItems	631
AWS-ConfigureMaintenanceWindows	633
AWS>CreateManagedLinuxInstance	635
AWS/CreateManagedWindowsInstance	637
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCWLoggingForSessionManager	640
AWS-ExportOpsDataToS3	641
AWS-ExportPatchReportToS3	643
AWS-SetupInventory	645
AWS-SetupManagedInstance	649
AWS-SetupManagedRoleOnEC2Instance	650
AWSSupport-TroubleshootManagedInstance	652

AWS-Support-TroubleshootPatchManagerLinux	654
AWS-Support-TroubleshootSessionManager	658
Third-party	664
AWS-CreateJiraIssue	664
AWS-CreateServiceNowIncident	666
AWS-RunPacker	668
Amazon VPC	670
AWS-CloseSecurityGroup	671
AWSSupport-ConfigureDNSQueryLogging	672
AWSSupport-ConfigureTrafficMirroring	675
AWSSupport-ConnectivityTroubleshooter	678
AWSSupport-TroubleshootVPN	681
AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteEgressOnlyInternetGateway	687
AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedENI	689
AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedSecurityGroup	690
AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedVPCNetworkACL	691
AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteVPCFlowLog	693
AWSConfigRemediation-DetachAndDeleteInternetGateway	694
AWSConfigRemediation-DetachAndDeleteVirtualPrivateGateway	696
AWS-DisableIncomingSSHOnPort22	698
AWS-DisablePublicAccessForSecurityGroup	699
AWSConfigRemediation-DisableSubnetAutoAssignPublicIP	701
AWSSupport-EnableVPCFlowLogs	702
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableVPCFlowLogsToCloudWatch	705
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableVPCFlowLogsToS3Bucket	708
AWS-ReleaseElasticIP	710
AWS-RemoveNetworkACLUnrestrictedSSHRDP	711
AWSConfigRemediation-RemoveUnrestrictedSourceIngressRules	712
AWSConfigRemediation-RemoveVPCDefaultSecurityGroupRules	714
AWSSupport-SetupIPMonitoringFromVPC	715
AWSSupport-TerminateIPMonitoringFromVPC	727
AWS WAF	730
AWS-AddWAFRegionalRuleToRuleGroup	731
AWS-AddWAFRegionalRuleToWebAcl	733
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableWAFClassicLogging	735
AWSConfigRemediation-EnableWAFClassicRegionalLogging	737

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableWAFV2Logging	739
Amazon WorkSpaces	740
AWS-CreateWorkSpace	741
AWSSupport-RecoverWorkSpace	744
X-Ray	748
AWSConfigRemediation-UpdateXRayKMSKey	748

Systems Manager Automation runbook reference

To help you get started quickly, AWS Systems Manager provides predefined runbooks. These runbooks are maintained by Amazon Web Services, AWS Support, and AWS Config. The runbook reference describes each of the predefined runbooks provided by Systems Manager, AWS Support, and AWS Config.

⚠ Important

If you run an automation workflow that invokes other services by using an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) service role, be aware that the service role must be configured with permission to invoke those services. This requirement applies to all AWS Automation runbooks (AWS-* runbooks) such as the AWS-ConfigureS3BucketLogging, AWS-CreateDynamoDBBackup, and AWS-RestartEC2Instance runbooks, to name a few. This requirement also applies to any custom Automation runbooks you create that invoke other AWS services by using actions that call other services. For example, if you use the aws:executeAwsApi, aws:createStack, or aws:copyImage actions, then you must configure the service role with permission to invoke those services. You can enable permissions to other AWS services by adding an IAM inline policy to the role. For more information, see [Add an Automation inline policy to invoke other AWS services](#).

This reference includes topics that describe each of the Systems Manager runbooks that are owned by AWS, AWS Support, and AWS Config. Runbooks are organized by the relevant AWS service. Each page provides an explanation of the required and optional parameters that you can specify when using the runbook. Each page also lists the steps in the runbook and the output of the automation, if any.

This reference does *not* include a separate page for runbooks that require approval such as the AWS-CreateManagedLinuxInstanceWithApproval or AWS-StopEC2InstanceWithApproval runbook. Any runbook name that includes WithApproval, means the runbook includes the [aws:approve](#) action. This action temporarily pauses an automation until designated principals either approve or reject the action. After the required number of approvals is reached, the automation resumes.

For information about running automations, see [Running a simple automation](#). For information about running automations on multiple targets, see [Running automations that use targets and rate controls](#).

Topics

- [View runbook content](#)
- [API Gateway](#)
- [AWS Batch](#)
- [AWS CloudFormation](#)
- [CloudFront](#)
- [CloudTrail](#)
- [CloudWatch](#)
- [Amazon DocumentDB](#)
- [CodeBuild](#)
- [AWS CodeDeploy](#)
- [AWS Config](#)
- [AWS Directory Service](#)
- [AWS AppSync](#)
- [Amazon Athena](#)
- [DynamoDB](#)
- [Amazon EBS](#)
- [Amazon EC2](#)
- [Amazon ECS](#)
- [Amazon EFS](#)
- [Amazon EKS](#)
- [Elastic Beanstalk](#)
- [Elastic Load Balancing](#)
- [Amazon EMR](#)
- [Amazon OpenSearch Service](#)
- [EventBridge](#)
- [GuardDuty](#)

- [IAM](#)
- [Amazon Kinesis Data Streams](#)
- [AWS KMS](#)
- [Lambda](#)
- [Amazon Managed Workflows for Apache Airflow](#)
- [Neptune](#)
- [Amazon RDS](#)
- [Amazon Redshift](#)
- [Amazon S3](#)
- [SageMaker](#)
- [Secrets Manager](#)
- [Security Hub](#)
- [AWS Shield](#)
- [Amazon SNS](#)
- [Amazon SQS](#)
- [Step Functions](#)
- [Systems Manager](#)
- [Third-party](#)
- [Amazon VPC](#)
- [AWS WAF](#)
- [Amazon WorkSpaces](#)
- [X-Ray](#)

View runbook content

You can view the content for runbooks in the Systems Manager console.

To view runbook content

1. Open the AWS Systems Manager console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/>.
2. In the navigation pane, choose **Documents**.

-or-

If the AWS Systems Manager home page opens first, choose the menu icon



)

to open the navigation pane, and then choose **Documents** in the navigation pane.

3. In the **Categories** section, choose **Automation documents**.
4. Choose a runbook, and then choose **View details**.
5. Choose the **Content** tab.

API Gateway

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon API Gateway. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteAPIGatewayStage](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableAPIGatewayTracing](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-UpdateAPIGatewayMethodCaching](#)

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteAPIGatewayStage

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteAPIGatewayStage runbook deletes an Amazon API Gateway (API Gateway) stage. AWS Config must be enabled in the AWS Region where you run this automation.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- StageArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the API Gateway stage you want to delete.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- config:GetResourceConfigHistory
- apigateway:GET
- apigateway:DELETE

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Deletes the API Gateway stage specified in the StageArn parameter.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableAPIGatewayTracing

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableAPIGatewayTracing runbook enables tracing on an Amazon API Gateway (API Gateway) stage. AWS Config must be enabled in the AWS Region where you run this automation.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- StageArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the API Gateway stage you want to enable tracing on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution

- config:GetResourceConfigHistory
- apigateway:GET
- apigateway:PATCH

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Enables tracing on the API Gateway stage specified in the StageArn parameter.

AWSConfigRemediation-UpdateAPIGatewayMethodCaching

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-UpdateAPIGatewayMethodCaching runbook updates the cache method setting for an Amazon API Gateway stage resource.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- CachingAuthorizedMethods

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) The methods authorized to have caching enabled. The list must be some combination of `DELETE` , `GET` , `HEAD` , `OPTIONS` , `PATCH` , `POST` , and `PUT` . Caching is enabled for selected methods and disabled for non-selected methods. Caching is enabled for all methods if `ANY` is selected and is disabled for all methods if `NONE` is selected.

- StageArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The API Gateway stage ARN for the REST API.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `apigateway:PATCH`
- `apigateway:GET`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Accepts the stage resource ID as input, updates the cache method setting for an API Gateway stage using the `UpdateStage` API action, and verifies the update.

AWS Batch

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for AWS Batch. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootAWSBatchJob](#)

AWSSupport-TroubleshootAWSBatchJob

Description

The AWSSupport-TroubleshootAWSBatchJob runbook helps you to troubleshoot issues that prevent an AWS Batch job from progressing from RUNNABLE to STARTING status.

How does it work?

This runbook performs the following checks:

- If the compute environment is in an INVALID or DISABLED state.
- If the compute environment's Max vCPU parameter is large enough to accommodate the job volume in the job queue.
- If the jobs require more vCPUs or memory resources than what the compute environment's instance types can provide.
- If the jobs should run on GPU-based instances but the compute environment is not configured to use GPU-based instances.
- If the Auto Scaling group for the compute environment failed to launch instances.
- If the launched instances can join the underlying Amazon Elastic Container Service (Amazon ECS) cluster; if not, it runs the [AWSSupport-TroubleshootECSContainerInstance](#) runbook.
- If any permissions issue is blocking specific actions that are required to run the job.

Important

- This runbook must be initiated in the same AWS Region as your job that is stuck in RUNNABLE status.
- This runbook can be initiated for AWS Batch jobs scheduled on Amazon ECS, AWS Fargate or Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances. If the automation is initiated for an AWS Batch job on Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service (Amazon EKS), the initiation stops.
- If instances are available to run the job but fail to register the Amazon ECS cluster, this runbook initiates the AWSSupport-TroubleshootECSContainerInstance automation runbook to try determine why. For more information, reference the [AWSSupport-TroubleshootECSContainerInstance](#) runbook.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- JobId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the AWS Batch Job that is stuck in RUNNABLE status.

Allowed Pattern: ^[a-f0-9]{8}(-[a-f0-9]{4}){3}-[a-f0-9]{12}(:[0-9]+)?(#[0-9]+)?\$

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- autoscaling:DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- autoscaling:DescribeScalingActivities
- batch:DescribeComputeEnvironments

- batch:DescribeJobs
- batch:DescribeJobQueues
- batch>ListJobs
- cloudtrail:LookupEvents
- ec2:DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- ec2:DescribeInstanceAttribute
- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeInstanceTypeOfferings
- ec2:DescribeInstanceTypes
- ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls
- ec2:DescribeRouteTables
- ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups
- ec2:DescribeSpotFleetInstances
- ec2:DescribeSpotFleetRequests
- ec2:DescribeSpotFleetRequestHistory
- ec2:DescribeSubnets
- ec2:DescribeVpcEndpoints
- ec2:DescribeVpcs
- ecs:DescribeClusters
- ecs:DescribeContainerInstances
- ecs>ListContainerInstances
- iam:GetInstanceProfile
- iam:GetRole
- iam>ListRoles
- iam:PassRole
- iam:SimulateCustomPolicy
- iam:SimulatePrincipalPolicy
- ssm:DescribeAutomationExecutions
- ssm:DescribeAutomationStepExecutions
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `sts:GetCallerIdentity`

Instructions

1. Navigate to the [AWSSupport-TroubleshootAWSBatchJob](#) in the AWS Systems Manager Console.

2. Select **Execute Automation**

3. For input parameters, enter the following:

- **AutomationAssumeRole (Optional):**

The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **JobId (Required):**

The ID of the AWS Batch Job that is stuck in the RUNNABLE status.

Input parameters	
AutomationAssumeRole (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.	<input type="text"/> Choose an option <input type="button" value="▼"/> <input type="button" value="C"/>
JobId (Required) The ID of the AWS Batch Job that is stuck in RUNNABLE status.	<input type="text" value="b9[REDACTED]e32"/>

4. Select **Execute**.

5. Notice that the automation initiates.

6. The document performs the following steps:

- **PreflightPermissionChecks:**

Performs preflight IAM permission checks against the initiating user/role. If there are any missing permissions, this step provides the API Actions missing in the global output section.

- **ProceedOnlyIfUserHasPermission:**

Branches based on if you have permissions to all required actions for the runbook.

- **AWSBatchJobEvaluation:**

Performs checks against the AWS Batch Job verifying it exists and is in the RUNNABLE status.

- **ProceedOnlyIfBatchJobExistsAndIsInRunnableState:**

Branches based on if the job exists and is in the RUNNABLE status.

- **BatchComputeEnvironmentEvaluation:**

Performs checks against the AWS Batch Compute Environment.

- **ProceedOnlyIfComputeEnvironmentChecksAreOK:**

Branches based on if compute environment checks succeeded.

- **UnderlyingInfraEvaluation:**

Performs checks against the underlying Auto Scaling Group or Spot Fleet Request.

- **ProceedOnlyIfInstancesNotJoiningEcsCluster:**

Branches based on if there are instances not joining the Amazon ECS cluster.

- **EcsAutomationRunner:**

Runs the Amazon ECS automation for the instances not joining the cluster.

- **ExecutionResults:**

Generates output based on previous steps.

7. After completing, the URI for the assessment report HTML file is provided:

S3 Console link and Amazon S3 URI for the Report on successful execution of the runbook

▼ Outputs

```
ExecutionResults.message
#####
# EXECUTION RESULT SUMMARY
#####
Here is the summary of the execution of this runbook:

✓ [INFO]: Reviewing Compute Environment "ComputeEnvironment-edMKnoNEEwNmt8eY";
✗ [ERROR]: Job "4117d606" requires 4 vCPU core(s), 512 MiB of memory and 0 GPU core(s).
There is no Instance Type in Compute Environment : "ComputeEnvironment-edMKnoNEEwNmt8eY" that satisfies these resource requirements.
To fix this, add an Instance Type to the Compute Environment that provides enough vCPU, memory, and GPU resources to run the Job.
For more details on updating a Compute Environment see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/batch/latest/userguide/updating-compute-environments.html.
! [WARNING]: The automation detected that you are using BEST_FIT allocation strategy for your Compute Environment "ComputeEnvironment-edMKnoNEEwNmt8eY".
In general, we recommend the BEST_FIT strategy only when you want the lowest cost for your instance, and you are willing to trade cost for throughput and availability.
To favor availability, consider using BEST_FIT_PROGRESSIVE for on-demand and SPOT_CAPACITY_OPTIMIZED for spot. For more information see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/batch/latest/userguide/allocation-strategies.html

✗ [ERROR]: There is no Compute Environment attached to the Job's Queue that satisfies the conditions to run the Job.
Please double check above mentioned Compute Environments and errors.

#####
# RUNBOOK EXECUTION LOGS
#####

+++++
STEP:PreflightPermissionChecks
+++++
✓ [INFO]: The IAM Identity used to execute the runbook has all required permissions, proceeding further for next steps in execution.

+++++
STEP:AWSBatchJobEvaluation
+++++
✓ [INFO]: Job with ID "4117d606" exists and is in RUNNABLE status, proceeding further for next steps in execution.

+++++
STEP:BatchComputeEnvironmentEvaluation
+++++

✓ [INFO]: Reviewing Compute Environment "ComputeEnvironment-edMKnoNEEwNmt8eY";
✗ [ERROR]: Job "4117d606" requires 4 vCPU core(s), 512 MiB of memory and 0 GPU core(s).
There is no Instance Type in Compute Environment : "ComputeEnvironment-edMKnoNEEwNmt8eY" that satisfies these resource requirements.
To fix this, add an Instance Type to the Compute Environment that provides enough vCPU, memory, and GPU resources to run the Job.
For more details on updating a Compute Environment see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/batch/latest/userguide/updating-compute-environments.html.
! [WARNING]: The automation detected that you are using BEST_FIT allocation strategy for your Compute Environment "ComputeEnvironment-edMKnoNEEwNmt8eY".
In general, we recommend the BEST_FIT strategy only when you want the lowest cost for your instance, and you are willing to trade cost for throughput and availability.
To favor availability, consider using BEST_FIT_PROGRESSIVE for on-demand and SPOT_CAPACITY_OPTIMIZED for spot. For more information see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/batch/latest/userguide/allocation-strategies.html

✗ [ERROR]: There is no Compute Environment attached to the Job's Queue that satisfies the conditions to run the Job.
Please double check above mentioned Compute Environments and errors.
```

References

Systems Manager Automation

- [Run this Automation \(console\)](#)
- [Run an automation](#)
- [Setting up an Automation](#)
- [Support Automation Workflows landing page](#)

AWS CloudFormation

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for AWS CloudFormation. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-DeleteCloudFormationStack](#)
- [AWS-EnableCloudFormationSNSNotification](#)

- [AWS-RunCfnLint](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootCFNCustomResource](#)
- [AWS-UpdateCloudFormationStack](#)

AWS-DeleteCloudFormationStack

Description

Delete an AWS CloudFormation stack.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- StackNameOrId

Type: String

Description: (Required) Name or Unique ID of the CloudFormation stack to be deleted

AWS-EnableCloudFormationSNSNotification

Description

The AWS-EnableCloudFormationSNSNotification runbook enables Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) notifications for the AWS CloudFormation (AWS CloudFormation) stack you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- StackArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN or name of the AWS CloudFormation stack you want to enable Amazon SNS notifications for.

- NotificationArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the Amazon SNS topic you want to associate with the AWS CloudFormation stack.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- cloudformation:DescribeStacks
- cloudformation:UpdateStack
- kms:Decrypt
- kms:GenerateDataKey
- sns:Publish
- sqs:GetQueueAttributes

Document Steps

- CheckCfnSnsLimits (aws:executeScript) - Verifies the maximum number of Amazon SNS topics haven't already been associated with the AWS CloudFormation stack you specify.
- EnableCfnSnsNotification (aws:executeAwsApi) - Enables Amazon SNS notifications for the AWS CloudFormation stack.
- VerificationCfnSnsNotification (aws:executeScript) - Verifies that Amazon SNS notifications have been enabled for the AWS CloudFormation stack.

Outputs

CheckCfnSnsLimits.NotificationArnList - A list of ARNs that receive Amazon SNS notifications for the AWS CloudFormation stack.

VerificationCfnSnsNotification.VerifySnsTopicsResponse - Response from the API operation confirming Amazon SNS notifications have been enabled for the AWS CloudFormation stack.

AWS-RunCfnLint

Description

This runbook uses an [AWS CloudFormation Linter](#) (`cfn-python-lint`) to validate YAML and JSON templates against the AWS CloudFormation resource specification. The AWS-RunCfnLint runbook performs additional checks, such as ensuring that valid values have been entered for resource properties. If validation is not successful, the `RunCfnLintAgainstTemplate` step fails and the linter tool's output is provided in an error message. This runbook is using `cfn-lint v0.24.4`.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `ConfigureRuleFlag`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Configuration options for a rule to pass to the `--configure-rule` parameter.

Example: E2001:strict=false,E3012:strict=false.

- FormatFlag

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Value to pass to the --format parameter to specify the output format.

Valid values: Default | quiet | parseable | json

Default: Default

- IgnoreChecksFlag

Type: String

Description: (Optional) IDs of rules to pass to the --ignore-checks parameter. These rules are not checked.

Example: E1001,E1003,W7001

- IncludeChecksFlag

Type: String

Description: (Optional) IDs of rules to pass to the --include-checks parameter. These rules are checked.

Example: E1001,E1003,W7001

- InfoFlag

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Option for the --info parameter. Include the option to enable additional logging information about the template processing.

Default: false

- TemplateFileName

Type: String

Description: The name, or key, of the template file in the S3 bucket.

- TemplateS3BucketName

Type: String

Description: The name of the S3 bucket containing the packer template.

- RegionsFlag

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Values to pass to the --regions parameter to test the template against specified AWS Regions.

Example: us-east-1,us-west-1

Document Steps

RunCfnLintAgainstTemplate – Runs the cfn-python-lint tool against the specified AWS CloudFormation template.

Outputs

RunCfnLintAgainstTemplate.output – The stdout from the cfn-python-lint tool.

AWS Support - Troubleshoot CFN Custom Resource

Description

The AWS Support - Troubleshoot CFN Custom Resource runbook helps diagnose why an AWS CloudFormation stack failed in creating, updating, or deleting a custom resource. The runbook checks the service token used for the custom resource and the error message that was returned. After reviewing the details for the custom resource, the runbook output provides an explanation of the stack behavior and troubleshooting steps for the custom resource.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- StackName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the AWS CloudFormation stack where the custom resource failed.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `cloudformation:DescribeStacks`
- `cloudformation:DescribeStackEvents`
- `cloudformation>ListStackResources`
- `ec2:DescribeRouteTables`
- `ec2:DescribeNatGateways`
- `ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcs`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcEndpoints`
- `ec2:DescribeSubnets`
- `logs:FilterLogEvents`

Document Steps

- validateCloudFormationStack - Verifies that the AWS CloudFormation stack exists in the same AWS account and AWS Region.
- checkCustomResource - Analyzes the AWS CloudFormation stack, checks the failed custom resource, and outputs information about how to troubleshoot the failed custom resource.

AWS-UpdateCloudFormationStack

Description

Update an AWS CloudFormation stack by using an AWS CloudFormation template stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- LambdaAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the role assumed by Lambda

- StackNameOrId

Type: String

Description: (Required) Name or Unique ID of the AWS CloudFormation stack to be updated

- TemplateUrl

Type: String

Description: (Required) S3 bucket location that contains the updated CloudFormation template (e.g. <https://s3.amazonaws.com/doc-example-bucket/updated.template>)

CloudFront

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon CloudFront. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontDefaultRootObject](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontAccessLogs](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontOriginFailover](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontViewerPolicyHTTPS](#)

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontDefaultRootObject

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontDefaultRootObject runbook configures the default root object for the Amazon CloudFront (CloudFront) distribution that you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- CloudFrontDistributionId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the CloudFront distribution that you want to configure the default root object for.

- DefaultRootObject

Type: String

Description: (Required) The object that you want CloudFront to return when a viewer request points to your root URL.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution

- `cloudfront:GetDistributionConfig`
- `cloudfront:UpdateDistribution`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Configures the default root object for the CloudFront distribution that you specify in the `CloudFrontDistributionId` parameter.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontAccessLogs

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontAccessLogs runbook enables access logging for the Amazon CloudFront (CloudFront) distribution you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- `BucketName`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket you want to store access logs in. Buckets in the af-south-1, ap-east-1, eu-south-1, and me-south-1 AWS Region are not supported.

- CloudFrontId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the CloudFront distribution you want to enable access logging on.

- IncludeCookies

Type: Boolean

Valid values: true | false

Description: (Required) Set this parameter to true , if you want cookies to be included in the access logs.

- Prefix

Type: String

Description: (Optional) An optional string that you want CloudFront to prefix to the access log filenames for your distribution, for example, myprefix/.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- cloudfront:GetDistribution
- cloudfront:GetDistributionConfig
- cloudfront:UpdateDistribution
- s3:GetBucketLocation

- s3:GetBucketAcl
- s3:PutBucketAcl

 **Note**

The s3:GetBucketLocation API can only be used for S3 buckets in same account. You cannot use it for cross-account S3 buckets.

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Enables access logging for the CloudFront distribution you specify in the CloudFrontDistributionId parameter.

AWSConfigRemediation- EnableCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity runbook enables origin access identity for the Amazon CloudFront (CloudFront) distribution you specify. This automation assigns the same CloudFront Origin Access Identity for all Origins of the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) Origin type without origin access identity for the CloudFront distribution you specify. This automation does not grant read permission to the origin access identity for CloudFront to access objects in your Amazon S3 bucket. You must update your Amazon S3 bucket permissions to allow access.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- CloudFrontDistributionId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the CloudFront distribution you want to enable origin failover on.

- OriginAccessIdentityId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the CloudFront origin access identity to associate with the origin.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- cloudfront:GetDistributionConfig
- cloudfront:UpdateDistribution

Document Steps

- aws :executeScript - Enables origin access identity for the CloudFront distribution you specify in the CloudFrontDistributionId parameter, and verifies the origin access identity was assigned.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontOriginFailover

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontOriginFailover runbook enables origin failover for the Amazon CloudFront (CloudFront) distribution you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- CloudFrontDistributionId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the CloudFront distribution you want to enable origin failover on.

- OriginGroupId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the origin group.

- PrimaryOriginId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the primary origin in the origin group.

- SecondaryOriginId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the secondary origin in the origin group.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- cloudfront:GetDistributionConfig
- cloudfront:UpdateDistribution

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Enables origin failover for the CloudFront distribution you specify in the CloudFrontDistributionId parameter, and verifies that failover has been enabled.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontViewerPolicyHTTPS

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudFrontViewerPolicyHTTPS runbook enables the viewer protocol policy for the Amazon CloudFront (CloudFront) distribution you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- CloudFrontDistributionId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the CloudFront distribution you want to enable the viewer protocol policy on.

- ViewerProtocolPolicy

Type: String

Valid values: https-only, redirect-to-https

Description: (Required) The protocol that viewers can use to access the files in the origin.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- cloudfront:GetDistributionConfig
- cloudfront:UpdateDistribution

- `cloudfront:GetDistribution`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Enables the viewer protocol policy for the CloudFront distribution you specify in the `CloudFrontDistributionId` parameter, and verifies the policy was assigned.

CloudTrail

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for AWS CloudTrail. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSConfigRemediation-CreateCloudTrailMultiRegionTrail](#)
- [AWS-EnableCloudTrail](#)
- [AWS-EnableCloudTrailCloudWatchLogs](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudTrailEncryptionWithKMS](#)
- [AWS-EnableCloudTrailKmsEncryption](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudTrailLogFileValidation](#)
- [AWS-EnableCloudTrailLogFileValidation](#)
- [AWS-QueryCloudTrailLogs](#)

AWSConfigRemediation-CreateCloudTrailMultiRegionTrail

Description

The `AWSConfigRemediation-CreateCloudTrailMultiRegionTrail` runbook creates an AWS CloudTrail (CloudTrail) trail that delivers log files from multiple AWS Regions to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket of your choice.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon S3 bucket you want to upload logs to.

- KeyPrefix

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon S3 key prefix that comes after the name of the bucket you designated for log file delivery.

- TrailName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the CloudTrail trail to be created.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution

- `cloudtrail:CreateTrail`
- `cloudtrail:StartLogging`
- `cloudtrail:GetTrail`
- `s3:PutObject`
- `s3:GetBucketAcl`
- `s3:PutBucketLogging`
- `s3>ListBucket`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Accepts the trail name and the Amazon S3 bucket name as input and creates a CloudTrail trail.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables logging on the created trail and starts log delivery to the Amazon S3 bucket you specified.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies that the CloudTrail trail has been created.

AWS-EnableCloudTrail

Description

Create an AWS CloudTrail trail and configure logging to an S3 bucket.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- S3BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Required) Name of the S3 bucket designated for publishing log files.

 **Note**

The S3 bucket must exist and the bucket policy must grant CloudTrail permission to write to it. For information, see [Amazon S3 Bucket Policy for CloudTrail](#).

- TrailName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the new trail.

AWS-EnableCloudTrailCloudWatchLogs

Description

This runbook updates the configuration of one or more AWS CloudTrail trails to send events to an Amazon CloudWatch Logs log group.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- CloudWatchLogsLogGroupArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the CloudWatch Logs log group where the CloudTrail logs will be delivered.

- CloudWatchLogsRoleArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the IAM role CloudWatch Logs assumes to write to the specified log group.

- TrailNames

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) A comma separated list of the names of the CloudTrail trails whose events you want to send to CloudWatch Logs.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `cloudtrail:UpdateTrail`
- `iam:PassRole`

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Updates the specified CloudTrail trails to deliver events to the specified CloudWatch Logs log group.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudTrailEncryptionWithKMS

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudTrailEncryptionWithKMS runbook encrypts an AWS CloudTrail (CloudTrail) trail using the AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) customer managed key you specify. This runbook should only be used as a baseline to ensure that your CloudTrail trails are encrypted according to minimum recommended security best practices. We recommend encrypting multiple trails with different KMS keys. CloudTrail digest files are not encrypted. If you have previously set the EnableLogFileValidation parameter to true for the trail, see the "Use server-side encryption with AWS KMS managed keys" section of the [CloudTrail Preventative Security Best Practices](#) topic in the *AWS CloudTrail User Guide* for more information.

Run this Automation (console)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- KMSKeyId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN, key ID, or the key alias of the customer managed key you want to use to encrypt the trail you specify in the TrailName parameter.

- TrailName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN or name of the trail you want to update to be encrypted.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- cloudtrail:GetTrail
- cloudtrail:UpdateTrail

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Enables encryption on the trail you specify in the TrailName parameter.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers the ARN for the customer managed key you specify in the KMSKeyId parameter.
- aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Verifies that encryption has been enabled on the CloudTrail trail.

AWS-EnableCloudTrailKmsEncryption

Description

This runbook updates the configuration of one or more AWS CloudTrail trails to use AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) encryption.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- KMSKeyId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The key ID of the customer managed key you want to use to encrypt the trail you specify in the TrailName parameter. The value can be an alias name prefixed by "alias/", a fully specified ARN to an alias, or a fully specified ARN to a key.

- TrailNames

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) A comma separated list of the trails you want to update to be encrypted.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `cloudtrail:UpdateTrail`
- `kms:DescribeKey`
- `kms>ListKeys`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Enables AWS KMS encryption on the trails you specify in the `TrailName` parameter.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudTrailLogFileValidation

Description

The `AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCloudTrailLogFileValidation` runbook enables log file validation for your AWS CloudTrail trail.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- TrailName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name or Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the trail you want to enable log validation for.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- cloudtrail:GetTrail
- cloudtrail:UpdateTrail

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Enables log validation for the AWS CloudTrail trail you specify in the TrailName parameter.
- aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Verifies log validation is enabled for your trail.

AWS-EnableCloudTrailLogFileValidation

Description

The AWS-EnableCloudTrailLogFileValidation runbook enables log file validation for the AWS CloudTrail trails you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- TrailNames

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) A comma separated list of the names of the CloudTrail trails you want to enable log validation for.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `cloudtrail:GetTrail`
- `cloudtrail:UpdateTrail`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Enables log validation for the AWS CloudTrail trails you specify in the TrailNames parameter.

AWS-QueryCloudTrailLogs

Description

The AWS-QueryCloudTrailLogs runbook creates an Amazon Athena table from the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket of your choice containing AWS CloudTrail (CloudTrail) logs. After creating the table, the automation runs SQL queries you specify and then deletes the table.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Query

Type: String

Description: (Required) The SQL query you want to run.

- SourceBucketPath

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon S3 bucket containing the CloudTrail log files you want to query.

- TableName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The name of the Athena table created by the automation.

Default: cloudtrail_logs

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- athena:GetQueryResults
- athena:GetQueryExecution
- athena:StartQueryExecution
- glue>CreateTable
- glue>DeleteTable
- glue:GetDatabase
- glue:GetPartitions
- glue:GetTable
- s3:AbortMultipartUpload
- s3>CreateBucket
- s3:GetBucketLocation
- s3:GetObject
- s3>ListBucket
- s3>ListBucketMultipartUploads
- s3>ListMultipartUploadParts
- s3:PutObject

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Creates an Athena table.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Runs the query string you specify in the Query parameter.
- aws:executeScript - Polls and waits for the query to complete.

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets the results of the query.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Deletes the table created by the automation.

CloudWatch

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon CloudWatch. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-ConfigureCloudWatchOnEC2Instance](#)
- [AWS-EnableCWAlarm](#)

AWS-ConfigureCloudWatchOnEC2Instance

Description

Enable or disable Amazon CloudWatch detailed monitoring on managed instances.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on

your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `InstanceId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance on which you want to enable CloudWatch monitoring.

- `properties`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) This parameter is not supported. It is listed here for backwards compatibility.

- `status`

Valid values: Enabled | Disabled

Description: (Optional) Specifies whether to enable or disable CloudWatch.

Default: Enabled

Document Steps

`configureCloudWatch` - Configures CloudWatch on the Amazon EC2 instance with the given status.

Outputs

This automation has no output.

AWS-EnableCWAalarm

Description

The `AWS-EnableCWAalarm` runbook creates Amazon CloudWatch (CloudWatch) alarms for AWS resources in your AWS account that do not already have one. CloudWatch alarms are created for the following AWS resources:

- Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances
- Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) volumes

- Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) buckets
- Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) clusters

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- ComparisonOperator

Type: String

Valid values: GreaterThanOrEqualToThreshold | GreaterThanThreshold | GreaterThanUpperThreshold | LessThanLowerOrGreaterThanUpperThreshold | LessThanLowerThreshold | LessThanOrEqualToThreshold | LessThanThreshold

Description: (Required) The arithmetic operation to use when comparing the specified statistic and threshold.

- MetricName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name for the metric associated with the alarm.

- Period

Type: Integer

Valid values: 10 | 30 | 60 | A multiple of 60

Description: (Required) The period, in seconds, over which the statistic is applied.

- ResourceARNs

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) A comma separated list of ARNs of the resources to create a CloudWatch alarm for

- Statistic

Type: String

Valid values: Average | Maximum | Minimum | SampleCount | Sum

Description: (Required) The statistic for the metric associated with the alarm.

- Threshold

Type: Integer

Description: (Required) The value to compare with the specified statistic.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- cloudwatch:PutMetricAlarm

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Creates a CloudWatch alarm according to the values specified in the runbook parameters for the resources you specify in the ResourceARNs parameter .

Outputs

EnableCWAAlarm.FailedResources: A maplist of resource ARNs for which a CloudWatch alarm was not created and the reason for the failure.

EnableCWAAlarm.SuccessfulResources: A list of resource ARNs for which a CloudWatch alarm was successfully created.

Amazon DocumentDB

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon DocumentDB (with MongoDB compatibility). For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-EnableDocDbClusterBackupRetentionPeriod](#)

AWS-EnableDocDbClusterBackupRetentionPeriod

Description

The AWS-EnableDocDbClusterBackupRetentionPeriod runbook enables a backup retention period for the Amazon DocumentDB cluster you specify. This feature sets the total number of days for which an automated backup is retained. To modify a cluster, the cluster must be in the available state with an engine type of docdb.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **DBClusterResourceId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The resource ID for the Amazon DocumentDB cluster you want to enable the backup retention period for.

- **BackupRetentionPeriod**

Type: Integer

Description: (Required) The number of days for which automated backups are retained. Must be a value from 7-35 days.

- **PreferredBackupWindow**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) A daily time range in Universal Time Coordinated (UTC) in the format hh24:mm-hh24:mm, for example 07:14-07:44. The value must be at least 30 minutes and can't conflict with the preferred maintenance window.

- **ssm:GetAutomationExecution**
- **ssm:StartAutomationExecution**
- **docdb:DescribeDBClusters**
- **docdb:ModifyDBCluster**
- **rds:DescribeDBClusters**
- **rds:ModifyDBCluster**

Document Steps

- `GetDocDbClusterIdentifier` (`aws:executeAwsApi`) - Returns the Amazon DocumentDB cluster identifier using the provided resource ID.
- `VerifyDocDbEngine` (`aws:assertAwsResourceProperty`) - Verifies the Amazon DocumentDB engine type is docdb to prevent inadvertent changes to other Amazon RDS engine types.
- `VerifyDocDbStatus` (`aws:waitAwsResourceProperty`) - Verifies the Amazon DocumentDB cluster status is available.
- `ModifyDocDbRetentionPeriod` (`aws:executeAwsApi`) - Sets the retention period using the provided values for the specified Amazon DocumentDB cluster.
- `VerifyDocDbBackupsEnabled` (`aws:executeScript`) - Verifies the retention period for the Amazon DocumentDB cluster and the preferred back up window, if specified, were successfully set.

Outputs

`ModifyDocDbRetentionPeriod.ModifyDbClusterResponse` - Response from the `ModifyDBCluster` API operation.

`VerifyDocDbBackupsEnabled.VerifyDbClusterBackupsEnabledResponse` - Output from the `VerifyDocDbBackupsEnabled` step confirming successful modification of the Amazon DocumentDB cluster.

CodeBuild

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for AWS CodeBuild. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSConfigRemediation-ConfigureCodeBuildProjectWithKMSCMK](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteAccessKeysFromCodeBuildProject](#)

AWSConfigRemediation-ConfigureCodeBuildProjectWithKMSCMK

Description

The `AWSConfigRemediation-ConfigureCodeBuildProjectWithKMSCMK` runbook encrypts an AWS CodeBuild (CodeBuild) project's build artifacts using the AWS Key Management Service

(AWS KMS) customer managed key you specify. AWS Config must be enabled in the AWS Region where you run this automation.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- KMSKeyId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS KMS customer managed key you want to use to encrypt the CodeBuild project you specify in the ProjectId parameter.

- ProjectId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the CodeBuild project whose build artifacts you want to encrypt.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- codebuild:BatchGetProjects
- codebuild:UpdateProject
- config:GetResourceConfigHistory

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers the CodeBuild project name from the project ID.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Enables encryption on the CodeBuild project you specify in the ProjectId parameter.
- aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Verifies that encryption has been enabled on the CodeBuild project.

Outputs

UpdateLambdaConfig.UpdateFunctionConfigurationResponse - Response from the UpdateFunctionConfiguration API call.

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteAccessKeysFromCodeBuildProject

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteAccessKeysFromCodeBuildProject runbook deletes the AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID and AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY environment variables from the AWS CodeBuild (CodeBuild) project you specify. AWS Config must be enabled in the AWS Region where you run this automation.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- Resourceld

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the CodeBuild project whose access key environment variables you want to delete.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- config:GetResourceConfigHistory
- codebuild:BatchGetProjects
- codebuild:UpdateProject

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Deletes the access key environment variables for the CodeBuild project specified in the ResourceId parameter.

AWS CodeDeploy

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for AWS CodeDeploy. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootCodeDeploy](#)

AWSSupport - TroubleshootCodeDeploy

Description

The AWSSupport - TroubleshootCodeDeploy runbook helps diagnose why an AWS CodeDeploy deployment failed on an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance. The runbook outputs steps to help you resolve the issue or troubleshoot further. Best practices for CodeDeploy are also provided to help you avoid similar issues in the future.

This runbook can help you to resolve the following issues:

- The CodeDeploy agent is not installed or not running on the Amazon EC2 instance
- The Amazon EC2 instance does not have an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) instance profile attached
- The IAM instance profile attached to the Amazon EC2 instance does not have the required Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) permissions
- A revision stored in Amazon S3 is missing, or the Amazon S3 bucket used is in an AWS Region that is different than the Amazon EC2 instance
- Application specification (AppSpec) file issues
- "File already exists at location" errors
- Failed CodeDeploy managed lifecycle event hooks
- Failed customer managed lifecycle event hooks
- Scale-in events during the deployment

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- DeploymentId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the deployment which failed.

- Instanceld

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance where the deployment failed.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- codedeploy:GetDeployment
- codedeploy:GetDeploymentTarget
- ec2:DescribeInstances

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Verifies the values provided for the `DeploymentId` and `InstanceId` parameters.
- `aws:executeScript` - Collects information from the Amazon EC2 instance such as the state of the instance and IAM instance profile details.
- `aws:executeScript` - Reviews the specified deployment, and returns an analysis regarding why the deployment failed.

AWS Config

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for AWS Config. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSSupport-SetupConfig](#)

AWSSupport-SetupConfig

Description

The AWSSupport-SetupConfig runbook creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) service-linked role, a configuration recorder powered by AWS Config, and a delivery channel with an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket where AWS Config sends configuration snapshots and configuration history files. If you specify values for the `AggregatorAccountId` and `AggregatorAccountRegion` parameters, the runbook also creates authorizations for data aggregation to collect AWS Config configuration and compliance data from multiple AWS accounts and multiple AWS Regions. To learn more about aggregating data from multiple accounts and Regions, see [Multi-Account Multi-Region Data Aggregation](#) in the *AWS Config Developer Guide*.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- AggregatorAccountId

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ID of the AWS account where an aggregator will be added to aggregate AWS Config configuration and compliance data from multiple accounts and AWS Regions. This account is also used by the aggregator to authorize the source accounts.

- AggregatorAccountRegion

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Region where an aggregator will be added to aggregate AWS Config configuration and compliance data from multiple accounts and Regions.

- IncludeGlobalResourcesRegion

Type: String

Default: us-east-1

Description: (Required) To avoid recording global resource data in each Region, specify one Region to record global resource data from.

- Partition

Type: String

Default: aws

Description: (Required) The partition you want to collect AWS Config configuration and compliance data from.

- S3BucketName

Type: String

Default: aws-config-delivery-channel

Description: (Optional) The name you want to apply to the Amazon S3 bucket created for the delivery channel. The account ID is appended to the end of the name.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- config:DescribeConfigurationRecorders
- config:DescribeDeliveryChannels
- config:PutAggregationAuthorization
- config:PutConfigurationRecorder
- config:PutDeliveryChannel
- config:StartConfigurationRecorder
- iam>CreateServiceLinkedRole
- iam:PassRole
- s3>CreateBucket
- s3>ListAllMyBuckets
- s3:PutBucketPolicy

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Creates a service-linked IAM role for AWS Config if one does not already exist.
- `aws:executeScript` - Creates a configuration recorder if one does not already exist.
- `aws:executeScript` - Creates an Amazon S3 bucket to be used by the delivery channel if one does not already exist.
- `aws:executeScript` - Creates a delivery channel using the resources created by the runbook.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Starts the configuration recorder.
- `aws:executeScript` - If you specified values for the `AggregatorAccountId` and `AggregatorAccountRegion` parameters, authorizations for multi-account and multi-Region data aggregation are configured.

AWS Directory Service

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for AWS Directory Service. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-CreateDSManagementInstance](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootADConnectorConnectivity](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootDirectoryTrust](#)

AWS-CreateDSManagementInstance

Description

The `AWS-CreateDSManagementInstance` runbook creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Windows instance that you can use to manage your AWS Directory Service directory. The management instance can't be used to manage AD Connector directories.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- AmiID

Type: String

Default: {{ ssm:/aws/service/ami-windows-latest/Windows_Server-2019-English-Full-Base }}

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) you want to use to launch the management instance.

- DirectoryId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the AWS Directory Service directory you want to manage. The instance is joined to the directory you specify.

- IamInstanceProfileName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name you specify is applied to the IAM instance profile that is created by the automation and attached to the management instance.

- InstanceType

Type: String

Default: t3.medium

Allowed values:

- t2.nano
- t2.micro
- t2.small
- t2.medium
- t2.large
- t2.xlarge
- t2.2xlarge
- t3.nano
- t3.micro
- t3.small
- t3.medium
- t3.large
- t3.xlarge
- t3.2xlarge

Description: (Required) The type of instance you want to launch.

- KeyPairName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The key pair to use when creating the instance. If you do not specify a value, no key pair is associated with the instance.

- RemoteAccessCidr

Type: String

Description: (Required) The CIDR block you want to allow RDP traffic (port 3389) from. The CIDR block you specify is applied to an inbound rule that's added to the security group created by the automation.

- SecurityGroupName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name you specify is applied to the security group that is created by the automation and associated with the management instance.

- Tags

Type: MapList

Description: (Optional) A key-value pair you want to apply to the resources created by the automation.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ds:DescribeDirectories
- ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
- ec2>CreateSecurityGroup
- ec2>CreateTags
- ec2>DeleteSecurityGroup
- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeInstanceStatus
- ec2:DescribeKeyPairs
- ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups
- ec2:DescribeVpcs
- ec2:RunInstances
- ec2:TerminateInstances
- iam:AddRoleToInstanceProfile
- iam:AttachRolePolicy
- iam>CreateInstanceProfile
- iam>CreateRole
- iam>DeleteInstanceProfile
- iam>DeleteRole
- iam:DetachRolePolicy

- `iam:GetInstanceProfile`
- `iam:GetRole`
- `iam>ListAttachedRolePolicies`
- `iam>ListInstanceProfiles`
- `iam>ListInstanceProfilesForRole`
- `iam:PassRole`
- `iam:RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfile`
- `iam:TagInstanceProfile`
- `iam:TagRole`
- `ssm>CreateDocument`
- `ssm>DeleteDocument`
- `ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetParameters`
- `ssm>ListCommandInvocations`
- `ssm>ListCommands`
- `ssm>ListDocuments`
- `ssm:SendCommand`
- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers details about the directory you specify in the `DirectoryId` parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets the CIDR block of the virtual private cloud (VPC) where the directory was launched.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Creates a security group using the value you specify in the `SecurityGroupName` parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Creates an inbound rule for the newly created security group that allows RDP traffic from the CIDR you specify in the `RemoteAccessCidr` parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Creates an IAM role and instance profile using the value you specify in the `IamInstanceProfileName` parameter.

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Launches an Amazon EC2 instance based on the values you specify in the runbook parameters.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Creates an AWS Systems Manager document to join the newly launched instance to your directory.
- `aws:runCommand` - Joins the new instance to your directory.
- `aws:runCommand` - Installs remote server administration tools on the new instance.

AWSSupport-TroubleshootADConnectorConnectivity

Description

The AWSSupport-TroubleshootADConnectorConnectivity runbook verifies the following prerequisites for an AD Connector:

- Checks if the required traffic is allowed by the security group and network access control list (ACL) rules associated with your AD Connector.
- Checks if the AWS Systems Manager, AWS Security Token Service, and Amazon CloudWatch interface VPC endpoints exist in the same virtual private cloud (VPC) as the AD Connector.

When the prerequisite checks complete successfully, the runbook launches two Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Linux t2.micro instances in the same subnets as your AD Connector. Network connectivity tests are then performed using the netcat and nslookup utilities.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Important

Using this runbook might incur extra charges to your AWS account for the Amazon EC2 instances, Amazon Elastic Block Store volumes and Amazon Machine Image (AMI) created during the automation. For more information, see [Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud Pricing](#) and [Amazon Elastic Block Store Pricing](#).

If the `aws:deletetestack` step fails, go to the AWS CloudFormation console to manually delete the stack. The stack name created by this runbook begins with AWSSupport-TroubleshootADConnectorConnectivity. For information about deleting AWS CloudFormation stacks, see [Deleting a stack](#) in the *AWS CloudFormation User Guide*.

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- DirectoryId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the AD Connector directory you want to troubleshoot connectivity to.

- Ec2InstanceProfile

Type: String

Maximum characters: 128

Description: (Required) The name of the instance profile you want to assign to the instances that are launched to perform connectivity tests. The instance profile you specify must have the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore policy or equivalent permissions attached.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeImages
- ec2:DescribeSubnets
- ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups
- ec2:DescribeNetworkAccls
- ec2:DescribeVpcEndpoints
- ec2:CreateTags
- ec2:RunInstances
- ec2:StopInstances
- ec2:TerminateInstances
- cloudformation>CreateStack
- cloudformation:DescribeStacks
- cloudformation>ListStackResources
- cloudformation>DeleteStack
- ds:DescribeDirectories
- ssm:SendCommand
- ssm>ListCommands
- ssm>ListCommandInvocations
- ssm:GetParameters
- ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation
- iam:PassRole

Document Steps

- aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Confirms the directory specified in the DirectoryId parameter is an AD Connector.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers information about the AD Connector.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers information about the security groups that are associated with the AD Connector.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers information about the network ACL rules that are associated with the subnets for the AD Connector.

- `aws:executeScript` - Evaluates the AD Connector security group rules to verify that the required outbound traffic is allowed.
- `aws:executeScript` - Evaluates the AD Connector network ACL rules to verify that the required outbound and inbound network traffic is allowed.
- `aws:executeScript` - Checks if the AWS Systems Manager, AWS Security Token Service and Amazon CloudWatch interface endpoints exist in the same VPC as the AD Connector.
- `aws:executeScript` - Compiles the outputs of the checks performed in the previous steps.
- `aws:branch` - Branches the automation depending on the output of previous steps. The automation stops here if the required outbound and inbound rules are missing for the security groups and network ACLs.
- `aws:createStack` - Creates an AWS CloudFormation stack to launch Amazon EC2 instances to perform connectivity tests.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the IDs of newly launched Amazon EC2 instances.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the first newly launched Amazon EC2 instance to report as managed by AWS Systems Manager.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the second newly launched Amazon EC2 instance to report as managed by AWS Systems Manager.
- `aws:runCommand` - Performs network connectivity tests to the on-premises DNS server IP addresses from the first Amazon EC2 instance.
- `aws:runCommand` - Performs network connectivity tests to the on-premises DNS server IP addresses from the second Amazon EC2 instance.
- `aws:changeInstanceState` - Stops the Amazon EC2 instances used for the connectivity tests.
- `aws:deleteStack` - Deletes the AWS CloudFormation stack.
- `aws:executeScript` - Outputs instructions about how to manually delete the AWS CloudFormation stack if the automation fails to delete the stack.

AWSsupport-TroubleshootDirectoryTrust

Description

The AWSSupport-TroubleshootDirectoryTrust runbook diagnoses trust creation issues between an AWS Managed Microsoft AD and a Microsoft Active Directory. The automation ensures the directory type supports trusts, and then checks the associated security group rules, network access control lists (network ACLs), and route tables for potential connectivity issues.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- DirectoryId

Type: String

Allowed pattern: ^d-[a-zA-Z0-9]{10}\$

Description: (Required) The ID of the AWS Managed Microsoft AD to troubleshoot.

- RemoteDomainCidrs

Type: StringList

Allowed pattern: ^(([0-9]|([1-9][0-9])|1[0-9]{2})|2[0-4][0-9]|25[0-5])\.\){3}(([0-9]|([1-9][0-9])|1[0-9]{2})|2[0-4][0-9]|25[0-5])(\/(3[0-2])|([1-2][0-9])|([1-9]))\$

Description: (Required) The CIDR(s) of the remote domain you are attempting to establish a trust relationship with. You can add multiple CIDRs using comma-separated values. For example, 172.31.48.0/20, 192.168.1.10/32.

- RemoteDomainName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The fully qualified domain name of the remote domain you are establishing a trust relationship with.

- RequiredTrafficACL

Type: String

Description: (Required) The default port requirements for AWS Managed Microsoft AD. In most cases, you should not modify the default value.

Default: {"inbound":{"tcp":[[53,53],[88,88],[135,135],[389,389],[445,445],[464,464],[636,636],[1024,65535]],"udp":[[53,53],[88,88],[123.123],[138,138],[389,389],[445,445],[464,464]],"icmp":[[,-1,-1]]},"outbound":{-1:[[0,65535]]}}

- RequiredTrafficSG

Type: String

Description: (Required) The default port requirements for AWS Managed Microsoft AD. In most cases, you should not modify the default value.

Default: {"inbound":{"tcp":[[53,53],[88,88],[135,135],[389,389],[445,445],[464,464],[636,636],[1024,65535]],"udp":[[53,53],[88,88],[123.123],[138,138],[389,389],[445,445],[464,464]],"icmp":[[,-1,-1]]},"outbound":{-1:[[0,65535]]}}

- TrustId

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ID of the trust relationship to troubleshoot.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ds:DescribeConditionalForwarders
- ds:DescribeDirectories
- ds:DescribeTrusts

- `ds>ListIpRoutes`
- `ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls`
- `ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups`
- `ec2:DescribeSubnets`

Document Steps

- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the directory type is AWS Managed Microsoft AD.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets information about the AWS Managed Microsoft AD.
- `aws:branch` - Branches automation if a value is provided for the `TrustId` input parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets information about the trust relationship.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets the conditional forwarder DNS IP addresses for the `RemoteDomainName`.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets information about IP routes that have been added to the AWS Managed Microsoft AD.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets the CIDRs of the AWS Managed Microsoft AD subnets.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets information about the security groups associated with the AWS Managed Microsoft AD.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets information about the network ACLs associated with the AWS Managed Microsoft AD.
- `aws:executeScript` - Confirms the `RemoteDomainCidrs` are valid values. Confirms that the AWS Managed Microsoft AD has conditional forwarders for the `RemoteDomainCidrs`, and that the requisite IP routes have been added to the AWS Managed Microsoft AD if the `RemoteDomainCidrs` are non-RFC 1918 IP addresses.
- `aws:executeScript` - Evaluates security group rules.
- `aws:executeScript` - Evaluates network ACLs.

Outputs

`evalDirectorySecurityGroup.output` - Results from evaluating whether the security group rules associated with the AWS Managed Microsoft AD allow the requisite traffic for trust creation.

`evalAclEntries.output` - Results from evaluating whether the network ACLs associated with the AWS Managed Microsoft AD allow the requisite traffic for trust creation.

`evaluateRemoteDomainCidr.output` - Results from evaluating whether the `RemoteDomainCidrs` are valid values. Confirms that the AWS Managed Microsoft AD has conditional forwarders for the `RemoteDomainCidrs`, and that the requisite IP routes have been added to the AWS Managed Microsoft AD if the `RemoteDomainCidrs` are non-RFC 1918 IP addresses.

AWS AppSync

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for AWS AppSync. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-EnableAppSyncGraphQLApiLogging](#)

AWS-EnableAppSyncGraphQLApiLogging

Description

The `AWS-EnableAppSyncGraphQLApiLogging` runbook enables field-level logging and request-level logging for the AWS AppSync GraphQL API you specify. The runbook will apply changes to the specified GraphQL API even if logging has already been enabled.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Apild

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the API you want to enable logging for.

- FieldLogLevel

Type: String

Valid Values: ERROR | ALL

Description: (Required) The field logging level.

- CloudWatchLogsRoleArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the service role that AWS AppSync assumes to publish to Amazon CloudWatch Logs.

- ExcludeVerboseContent

Type: Boolean

Default: False

Description: (Optional) Set to True to exclude information such as headers, context, and evaluated mapping templates, regardless of logging level.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution

- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `appsync:GetGraphqlApi`
- `appsync:UpdateGraphqlApi`
- `iam:PassRole`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the authentication type and configuration information relevant for the primary authentication type.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the authentication type.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Updates the logging configuration for the AWS AppSync GraphQL API based on the values specified for the runbook's input parameters.

Outputs

- `EnableApiLoggingWithApiKeyOrAwsIamAuthorization.UpdateGraphQLApiResponse`: Response from the `UpdateGraphqlApi` call.
- `EnableApiLoggingWithLambdaAuthorization.UpdateGraphQLApiResponse`: Response from the `UpdateGraphqlApi` call.
- `EnableApiLoggingWithCognitoAuth.UpdateGraphQLApiResponse`: Response from the `UpdateGraphqlApi` call.
- `EnableApiLoggingWithOpenIdAuthorization.UpdateGraphQLApiResponse`: Response from the `UpdateGraphqlApi` call.

Amazon Athena

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon Athena. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-EnableAthenaWorkGroupEncryptionAtRest](#)

AWS-EnableAthenaWorkGroupEncryptionAtRest

Description

The AWS-EnableAthenaWorkGroupEncryptionAtRest runbook enables encryption at rest for the Amazon Athena workgroup you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- WorkGroup

Type: String

Description: (Required) The workgroup that you want to enable encryption at rest for.

- EncryptionOption

Type: String

Valid Values: SSE_S3 | SSE_KMS | CSE_KMS

Description: (Required) Specifies which encryption option is used. You can choose server-side encryption with Amazon S3 managed keys (SSE_S3), server-side encryption with AWS KMS managed keys (SSE_KMS), or client-side encryption with AWS KMS managed keys (CSE_KMS).

- **KmsKeyId**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) If you're using a AWS KMS encryption option, specify the key ARN, key ID, or the key alias of the key you want to use.

- **EnableMinimumEncryptionConfiguration**

Type: Boolean

Default: True

Description: (Optional) Enforces a minimal level of encryption for the workgroup for query and calculation results that are written to Amazon S3. When enabled, workgroup users can set encryption only to the minimum level set by the administrator or higher when they submit queries. This setting does not apply to Spark-enabled workgroups.

- **EnforceWorkGroupConfiguration**

Type: Boolean

Default: True

Description: (Optional) If set to True, the settings for the workgroup override client-side settings. If set to False, client-side settings are used.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- **ssm:GetAutomationExecution**
- **ssm:StartAutomationExecution**
- **athena:GetWorkGroup**
- **athena:UpdateWorkGroup**

Document Steps

- aws:branch - Branches based on the encryption option specified in the EncryptionOption parameter.
- aws:executeAwsApi - This step updates the Athena Work Group with the specified encryption setting.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Updates the Athena Work Group with the specified encryption setting.
- aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Verifies that encryption for the workgroup has been enabled.

DynamoDB

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon DynamoDB. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-ChangeDDBRWCapacityMode](#)
- [AWS>CreateDynamoDBBackup](#)
- [AWS>DeleteDynamoDbBackup](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteDynamoDbTable](#)
- [AWS>DeleteDynamoDbTableBackups](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableEncryptionOnDynamoDbTable](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnablePITRForDynamoDbTable](#)
- [AWS-EnableDynamoDbAutoscaling](#)
- [AWS-RestoreDynamoDBTable](#)

AWS-ChangeDDBRWCapacityMode

Description

The AWS-ChangeDDBRWCapacityMode runbook changes the read/write capacity mode for one or more Amazon DynamoDB (DynamoDB) tables to either on-demand mode, or provisioned mode.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- CapacityMode

Type: String

Valid values: PROVISIONED | PAY_PER_REQUEST

Description: (Required) The desired read/write capacity mode. When switching from on-demand(pay-per-request) to provisioned capacity, initial provisioned capacity values must be set. The initial provisioned capacity values are estimated based on the consumed read and write capacity of your table and global secondary indexes over the past 30 minutes.

- ReadCapacityUnits

Type: Integer

Default: 0

Description: (Optional) The maximum number of strongly consistent reads consumed per second before DynamoDB returns a throttling exception.

- TableNames

Type: String

Description: (Required) Comma separated list of DynamoDB table names to change the read/write capacity mode for..

- WriteCapacityUnits

Type: Integer

Default: 0

Description: (Optional) The maximum number of writes consumed per second before DynamoDB returns a throttling exception.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- dynamodb:DescribeTable
- dynamodb:UpdateTable

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Changes the read/write capacity mode for the DynamoDB tables specified in the TableNames parameter.

Outputs

ChangeDDBRWCapacityMode.SuccessesTables - List of DynamoDB table names where the capacity mode was successfully changed

ChangeDDBRWCapacityMode.FailedTables - Maplist of DynamoDB table names where changing the capacity mode failed and the reason for the failure.

AWS - CreateDynamoDBBackup

Description

Create a backup of an Amazon DynamoDB table.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- BackupName

Type: String

Description: (Required) Name of the backup to create.

- LambdaAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN of the role that allows Lambda created by Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If not specified a transient role will be created to run the Lambda function.

- TableName

Type: String

Description: (Required) Name of the DynamoDB table.

AWS-DeleteDynamoDbBackup

Description

Delete the backup of an Amazon DynamoDB table.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- BackupArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) ARN of the DynamoDB table backup to delete.

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteDynamoDbTable

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteDynamoDbTable runbook deletes the Amazon DynamoDB (DynamoDB) table you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- TableName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the DynamoDB table you want to delete.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- dynamodb:DeleteTable
- dynamodb:DescribeTable

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Deletes the DynamoDB table specified in the `TableName` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies the DynamoDB table has been deleted.

AWS-DeleteDynamoDbTableBackups

Description

Delete DynamoDB table backups based on retention days or count.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `LambdaAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN of the role that allows Lambda created by Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If not specified a transient role will be created to run the Lambda function.

- `RetentionCount`

Type: String

Default: 10

Description: (Optional) The number of backups to retain for the table. If more than the specified number of backup exist, the oldest backups beyond that number are deleted. Either RetentionCount or RetentionDays can be used, not both.

- RetentionDays

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The number of days to retain backups for the table. Backups older than the specified number of days are deleted. Either RetentionCount or RetentionDays can be used, not both.

- TableName

Type: String

Description: (Required) Name of the DynamoDB table.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableEncryptionOnDynamoDbTable

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableEncryptionOnDynamoDbTable runbook encrypts an Amazon DynamoDB (DynamoDB) table using the AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) customer managed key you specify for the KMSKeyId parameter.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- KMSKeyId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the customer managed key you want to use to encrypt the DynamoDB table you specify in the TableName parameter.

- TableName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the DynamoDB table you want to encrypt.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- dynamodb:DescribeTable
- dynamodb:UpdateTable

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Encrypts the DynamoDB table you specify in the TableName parameter.
- aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Verifies the Enabled property for the DynamoDB table's SSESpecification is set to true .
- aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Verifies the DynamoDB table is encrypted with the customer managed key specified in the KMSKeyId parameter.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnablePITRForDynamoDbTable

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnablePITRForDynamoDbTable runbook enables point-in-time recovery (PITR) on the Amazon DynamoDB table you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- TableName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the DynamoDB table to enable point-in-time recovery on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution

- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `dynamodb:DescribeContinuousBackups`
- `dynamodb:UpdateContinuousBackups`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables point-in-time recovery on the DynamoDB table you specify in the `TableName` parameter.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms point-in-time recovery is enabled on the DynamoDB table.

AWS-EnableDynamoDbAutoscaling

Description

The AWS-EnableDynamoDbAutoscaling runbook enables Application Auto Scaling for the provisioned capacity Amazon DynamoDB table you specify. Application Auto Scaling dynamically adjusts provisioned throughput capacity in response to traffic patterns. For more information, see [Managing throughput capacity automatically with DynamoDB auto scaling](#) in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- TableName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the DynamoDB table you want to enable Application Auto Scaling on.

- MinReadCapacity

Type: Integer

Description: (Required) The minimum number of provisioned throughput read capacity units for the DynamoDB table.

- MaxReadCapacity

Type: Integer

Description: (Required) The maximum number of provisioned throughput read capacity units for the DynamoDB table.

- TargetReadCapacityUtilization

Type: Integer

Description: (Required) The desired target read capacity utilization. Target utilization is the percentage of consumed provisioned throughput at a point in time. You can set the auto scaling target utilization values between 20 and 90 percent.

- ReadScaleOutCooldown

Type: Integer

Description: (Required) The amount of time in seconds to wait for a previous read capacity scale-out activity to take effect.

- ReadScaleInCooldown

Type: Integer

Description: (Required) The amount of time in seconds after a read capacity scale-in activity completes before another scale-in activity can start.

- MinWriteCapacity

Type: Integer

Description: (Required) The minimum number of provisioned throughput write units for the DynamoDB table.

- MaxWriteCapacity

Type: Integer

Description: (Required) The maximum number of provisioned throughput write units for the DynamoDB table.

- TargetWriteCapacityUtilization

Type: Integer

Description: (Required) The desired target write capacity utilization. Target utilization is the percentage of consumed provisioned throughput at a point in time. You can set the auto scaling target utilization values between 20 and 90 percent.

- WriteScaleOutCooldown

Type: Integer

Description: (Required) The amount of time in seconds to wait for a previous write capacity scale-out activity to take effect.

- WriteScaleInCooldown

Type: Integer

Description: (Required) The amount of time in seconds after a write capacity scale-in activity completes before another scale-in activity can start.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `application-autoscaling:DescribeScalableTargets`
- `application-autoscaling:DescribeScalingPolicies`
- `application-autoscaling:PutScalingPolicy`
- `application-autoscaling:RegisterScalableTarget`

- `RegisterAppAutoscalingTargetWrite` (`aws:executeAwsApi`) - Configures Application Auto Scaling on the DynamoDB table you specify.
- `RegisterAppAutoscalingTargetWriteDelay` (`aws:sleep`) - Sleeps to avoid API throttling.
- `PutScalingPolicyWrite` (`aws:executeAwsApi`) - Configures the target write capacity utilization for the DynamoDB table.
- `PutScalingPolicyWriteDelay` (`aws:sleep`) - Sleeps to avoid API throttling.
- `RegisterAppAutoscalingTargetRead` (`aws:executeAwsApi`) - Configures minimum and maximum read capacity units for the DynamoDB table.
- `RegisterAppAutoscalingTargetReadDelay` (`aws:sleep`) - Sleeps to avoid API throttling.
- `PutScalingPolicyRead` (`aws:executeAwsApi`) - Configures the target read capacity utilization for the DynamoDB table.
- `VerifyDynamoDbAutoscalingEnabled` (`aws:executeScript`) - Verifies Application Auto Scaling is enabled for the DynamoDB table according to the values you specify.

Outputs

- `RegisterAppAutoscalingTargetWrite.Response`
- `PutScalingPolicyWrite.Response`
- `RegisterAppAutoscalingTargetRead.Response`
- `PutScalingPolicyRead.Response`
- `VerifyDynamoDbAutoscalingEnabled.DynamoDbAutoscalingEnabledResponse`

AWS-RestoreDynamoDBTable

Description

The AWS-RestoreDynamoDBTable runbook restores the Amazon DynamoDB table that you specify using point-in-time recovery (PITR).

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- EnablePointInTimeRecoverAsNeeded

Type: Boolean

Default: true

Description: (Optional) Determines whether the automation turns on point-in-time recovery as needed to restore the table.

- GlobalSecondaryIndexOverride

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The new global secondary indexes to replace the existing secondary indexes for the new table.

- LocalSecondaryIndexOverride

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The new local secondary indexes to replace the existing secondary indexes for the new table.

- RestoreDateTime

Type: String

Description: (Required) The point-in-time recovery that you want to restore your table to during the last 35 days. Specify the date and time using the following format: DD/MM/YYYY HH:MM:SS

- SourceTableArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the table that you want to restore.

- SseSpecificationOverride

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The server-side encryption settings to use for the new table.

- TargetTableName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the table to restore.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- dynamodb:BatchWriteItem
- dynamodb:DeleteItem
- dynamodb:DescribeTable
- dynamodb:GetItem
- dynamodb:PutItem

- dynamodb:Query
- dynamodb:RestoreTableToPointInTime
- dynamodb:Scan
- dynamodb:UpdateItem

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Restores the DynamoDB table that you specify in the TargetTableName parameter using point-in-time recovery.

Amazon EBS

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon Elastic Block Store. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSSupport-AnalyzeEBSSourceUsage](#)
- [AWS-ArchiveEBSSnapshots](#)
- [AWS-AttachEBSSVolume](#)
- [AWSSupport-CalculateEBSSourcePerformanceMetrics](#)
- [AWS-CopySnapshot](#)
- [AWS-CreateSnapshot](#)
- [AWS-DeleteSnapshot](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedEBSSourceVolume](#)
- [AWS-DeregisterAMIs](#)
- [AWS-DetachEBSSourceVolume](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableEbsEncryptionByDefault](#)
- [AWS-ExtendEbsVolume](#)
- [AWSSupport-ModifyEBSSnapshotPermission](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-ModifyEBSSourceVolumeType](#)

AWSSupport-AnalyzeEBSResourceUsage

Description

The AWSSupport-AnalyzeEBSResourceUsage automation runbook is used to analyze resource usage on Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS). It analyzes volume usage and identifies abandoned volumes, images, and snapshots in a given AWS Region.

How does it work?

The runbook performs the following four tasks:

1. Verifies that an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket exists, or creates a new Amazon S3 bucket.
2. Gathers all the Amazon EBS volumes in the available state.
3. Gathers all Amazon EBS snapshots for which source volume has been deleted.
4. Gathers all Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) which are not in use by any non-terminated Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances.

The runbook generates CSV reports and stores them in a user-provided Amazon S3 bucket. The provided bucket should be secured following AWS security best practices as outlined in the end. If the user provided Amazon S3 bucket does not exist in the account, the runbook creates a new Amazon S3 bucket with the name format <User-provided-name>-awssupport-YYYY-MM-DD, encrypted with a custom AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key, with object versioning enabled, blocked public access, and require requests to use SSL/TLS.

If you want to specify your own Amazon S3 bucket, please make sure it is configured following these best practices:

- Block public access to the bucket (set IsPublic to False).
- Turn on Amazon S3 access logging.
- [Allow only SSL requests to your bucket.](#)
- Turn on object versioning.
- Use an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key to encrypt your bucket.

⚠ Important

Using this runbook might incur extra charges against your account for the creation of Amazon S3 buckets and objects. See [Amazon S3 Pricing](#) for more details on the charges that might incur.

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- S3BucketName

Type: AWS::S3::Bucket::Name

Description: (Required) The Amazon S3 bucket in your account to upload the report to. Ensure the bucket policy does not grant unnecessary read/write permissions to parties that do not need access to the collected logs. If the bucket specified does not exist in the account, then automation creates a new bucket in the Region where automation is initiated with the name format <User-provided-name>-awssupport-YYYY-MM-DD, encrypted with a custom AWS KMS key.

Allowed Pattern: \$|^(!(^(([0-9]{1,3}[.]){3}[0-9]{1,3}\$)))^((?!xn-)(?!.*-s3alias))[a-zA-Z0-9][-.a-zA-Z0-9]{1,61}[a-zA-Z0-9]\$

- CustomerManagedKmsKeyArn

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The custom AWS KMS key Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for encrypting the new Amazon S3 bucket that will create if the bucket specified does not exist in the account. Automation fails if the bucket creation is attempted without specifying a custom AWS KMS key ARN.

Allowed Pattern: (^\$|^arn:aws:kms:[a-zA-Z0-9]:[0-9]:key/[a-zA-Z0-9]*\$)

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:DescribeImages
- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeSnapshots
- ec2:DescribeVolumes
- kms:Decrypt
- kms:GenerateDataKey
- s3>CreateBucket
- s3:GetBucketAcl
- s3:GetBucketPolicyStatus
- s3:GetBucketPublicAccessBlock
- s3>ListBucket
- s3>ListAllMyBuckets
- s3:PutObject
- s3:PutBucketLogging
- s3:PutBucketPolicy

- s3:PutBucketPublicAccessBlock
- s3:PutBucketTagging
- s3:PutBucketVersioning
- s3:PutEncryptionConfiguration
- ssm:DescribeAutomationExecutions

Example policy with minimum required IAM Permissions to run this runbook:

```
{  
    "Version": "2012-10-17",  
    "Statement": [{  
        "Sid": "Read_Only_Permissions",  
        "Effect": "Allow",  
        "Action": [  
            "ec2:DescribeImages",  
            "ec2:DescribeInstances",  
            "ec2:DescribeSnapshots",  
            "ec2:DescribeVolumes",  
            "ssm:DescribeAutomationExecutions"  
        ],  
        "Resource": ""  
    }, {  
        "Sid": "KMS_Generate_Permissions",  
        "Effect": "Allow",  
        "Action": ["kms:GenerateDataKey", "kms:Decrypt"],  
        "Resource": "arn:aws:kms:us-  
west-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab"  
    }, {  
        "Sid": "S3_Read_Only_Permissions",  
        "Effect": "Allow",  
        "Action": [  
            "s3:GetBucketAcl",  
            "s3:GetBucketPolicyStatus",  
            "s3:GetBucketPublicAccessBlock",  
            "s3>ListBucket"  
        ],  
        "Resource": [  
            "arn:aws:s3:::awsexamplebucket1",  
            "arn:aws:s3:::awsexamplebucket1/"  
        ]  
    }]
```

```
    },
    {
        "Sid": "S3_Create_Permissions",
        "Effect": "Allow",
        "Action": [
            "s3:CreateBucket",
            "s3:PutObject",
            "s3:PutBucketLogging",
            "s3:PutBucketPolicy",
            "s3:PutBucketPublicAccessBlock",
            "s3:PutBucketTagging",
            "s3:PutBucketVersioning",
            "s3:PutEncryptionConfiguration"
        ],
        "Resource": "*"
    ]
}
```

Instructions

Follow these steps to configure the automation:

1. Navigate to the [AWSSupport-AnalyzeEBSResourceUsage](#) in the AWS Systems Manager console.
2. For the input parameters enter the following:

- **AutomationAssumeRole (Optional):**

The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **S3BucketName (Required):**

The Amazon S3 bucket in your account to upload the report to.

- **CustomerManagedKmsKeyArn (Optional):**

The custom AWS KMS key Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for encrypting the new Amazon S3 bucket that will create if the bucket specified does not exist in the account.

Input parameters

S3BucketName (Optional) The Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3) bucket in your account to upload the report to. Please make sure the bucket policy does not grant unnecessary read/write permissions to parties that do not need access to the collected logs. If the bucket specified does not exist in the account, then automation will create a new bucket in region where automation is executed with name format **<User-provided-name>-awssupport-YYYY-MM-DD**, encrypted with custom Key Management Service (KMS) key.	CustomerManagedKmsKeyArn (Optional) The custom KMS key ARN for encrypting the new Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3) bucket that will be created in case the bucket specified does not exist in the account. Automation will fail if bucket creation is attempted without specifying custom KMS key ARN
<input type="text" value="Enter the name of an existing S3 Bucket"/>	<input type="text" value="arn:aws:kms:eu-central-1:████████:key/████████-4216-a498-460a2132ca4c"/>
S3 Bucket <input type="text" value="test-bucket-1"/> Example: s3-bucket-name	<input type="button" value="G"/>
AutomationAssumeRole (Optional) The ARN of the role that allows Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If role is not specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permission of the user that runs this document.	Select an existing IAM Role <input type="text" value="admin-my-████████role-████"/> <input type="button" value="G"/>

3. Select Execute.

4. The automation initiates.

5. The automation runbook performs the following steps:

- **checkConcurrency:**

Ensures there is only one initiation of this runbook in the Region. If the runbook finds another execution in progress, it returns an error and ends.

- **verifyOrCreateS3bucket:**

Verifies if the Amazon S3 bucket exists. If not, it creates a new Amazon S3 bucket in the Region where automation is initiated with the name format <User-provided-name>-awssupport-YYYY-MM-DD, encrypted with a custom AWS KMS key.

- **gatherAmiDetails:**

Searches for AMIs, which are not in use by any Amazon EC2 instances, generates the report with the name format <region>-images.csv, and uploads it to the Amazon S3 bucket.

- **gatherVolumeDetails:**

Verifies Amazon EBS volumes in the available state, generates the report with the name format <region>-volume.csv, and uploads it in an Amazon S3 bucket.

- **gatherSnapshotDetails:**

Looks for the Amazon EBS snapshots of the Amazon EBS volumes that are deleted already, generates the report with the name format <region>-snapshot.csv, and uploads it to Amazon S3 bucket.

6. After completed, review the Outputs section for the detailed results of the execution.

▼ Outputs	
gatherVolumeDetails.gatherVolumeDetailsOutput No volume found in available state in region eu-central-1	verifyOrCreateS3bucket.createdNewBucket true
gatherAmiDetails.gatherAmiDetailsOutput File eu-central-1-image.csv have been uploaded to bucket aws-support-ssm-[REDACTED]1-awssupport-2023-11-27. Please review the file carefully and verify if you need to keep those AMI.	
gatherSnapshotDetails.gatherSnapshotDetailsOutput File eu-central-1-snapshot.csv have been uploaded to bucket aws-support-ssm-[REDACTED]1-awssupport-2023-11-27. Please review the file carefully and verify if you need to keep those snapshots.	

References

Systems Manager Automation

- [Run this Automation \(console\)](#)
- [Run an automation](#)
- [Setting up an Automation](#)
- [Support Automation Workflows landing page](#)

AWS-ArchiveEBSSnapshots

Description

The AWS-ArchiveEBSSnapshots runbook helps you archive snapshots for Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) volumes by specifying the tag you've applied to your snapshots. Alternatively, you can provide the ID of a volume if your snapshots are not tagged.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **Description**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) A description for the Amazon EBS snapshot.

- **DryRun**

Type: String

Valid values: Yes | No

Description: (Required) Checks whether you have the required permissions for the action, without actually making the request, and provides an error response.

- **RetentionCount**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The number of snapshots you want to archive. Don't specify a value for this parameter if you specify a value for RetentionDays.

- **RetentionDays**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The number of previous days of snapshots you want to archive. Don't specify a value for this parameter if you specify a value for RetentionCount.

- **SnapshotWithTag**

Type: String

Valid values: Yes | No

~~Description: (Required) Specifies whether the snapshots you want to archive are tagged.~~

- TagKey

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The key of the tag assigned to the snapshots you want to archive.

- TagValue

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The value of the tag assigned to the snapshots you want to archive.

- Volumeld

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ID of the volume whose snapshots you want to archive. Use this parameter if your snapshots are not tagged.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:ArchiveSnapshots
- ec2:DescribeSnapshots

Document Steps

`aws:executeScript` - Archives snapshots using the tag you specify using the TagKey and TagValue parameters, or the VolumeId parameter.

AWS-AttachEBSVolume

Description

Attach an Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) volume to an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Device

Type: String

Description: (Required) The device name (for example, /dev/sdh or xvdh).

- Instanceld

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the instance where you want to attach the volume.

- Volumeld

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EBS volume. The volume and instance must be in the same Availability Zone.

AwSSupport-CalculateEBSPerformanceMetrics

Description

The AWSSupport-CalculateEBSPerformanceMetrics runbook helps diagnose Amazon EBS performance issues by calculating and publishing performance metrics to a CloudWatch dashboard. The dashboard displays the estimated average IOPS and throughput for a target Amazon EBS volume or all the volumes attached to the target Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance. For Amazon EC2 instances, it also shows the instance's average IOPS and throughput. The runbook outputs the link to the newly created CloudWatch dashboard that displays the relevant calculated CloudWatch metrics. The CloudWatch dashboard is created in your account with the name: AWSSupport-<ResourceId>-EBS-Performance-<automation:EXECUTION_ID>.

How does it work?

The runbook performs the following steps:

- Ensures that the specified timestamps are valid.
- Validates if the Resource ID (Amazon EBS Volume or Amazon EC2 Instance) is valid.
- When you provide an Amazon EC2 as a ResourcID, it creates a CloudWatch dashboard with Actual Total IOPS/Throughput for that Amazon EC2 instance and Estimated Average IOPS/Throughput graph for all Amazon EBS volumes attached to an Amazon EC2 instance.
- When you provide an Amazon EBS Volume as a ResourcID, it creates a CloudWatch dashboard with Estimated Average IOPS/Throughput graph for that volume.
- After the CloudWatch dashboard is generated, if Estimated Average IOPS or Estimated Average Throughput is more than Maximum IOPS or Maximum Throughput, respectively, then microbursting is possible for the volume or volumes attached to an Amazon EC2 instance.

Note

For burstable volumes (gp2, sc2, and st1), the maximum IOPS/throughput should be considered, until you have burst balance. After burst balance is completely utilized i.e. it becomes zero, consider baseline IOPS/throughput metrics.

Important

Creating the CloudWatch dashboard might result in your extra charges to your account. For more information, consult the [Amazon CloudWatch Pricing guide](#).

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:DescribeVolumes
- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeInstanceTypes
- cloudwatch:PutDashboard

Sample Policy

```
{  
    "Version": "2012-10-17",  
    "Statement": [  
        {  
            "Sid": "VisualEditor0",  
            "Effect": "Allow",  
            "Action": "cloudwatch:PutDashboard",  
            "Resource": "arn:aws:cloudwatch::Account-id:dashboard/*-EBS-  
Performance-*"  
        },  
        {  
            "Sid": "VisualEditor1",  
            "Effect": "Allow",  
            "Action": [  
                "ec2:DescribeInstances",  
                "ec2:DescribeVolumes",  
                "ec2:DescribeInstanceTypes"  
            ],  
            "Resource": "*"  
        }  
    ]  
}
```

Instructions

Follow these steps to configure the automation:

1. Navigate to [AwSSupport-CalculateEBSPerformanceMetrics](#) in Systems Manager under Documents.
2. Select Execute automation.
3. For the input parameters, enter the following:

- **AutomationAssumeRole (Optional):**

The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user who starts this runbook.

- **ResourceId (Required):**

The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance or Amazon EBS volume.

- **Start time (Required):**

The start time to view the data in CloudWatch. The time must be in the format yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss and in UTC.

- **End time (Required):**

The end time to view the data in CloudWatch. The time must be in the format yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss and in UTC.

Input parameters	
AutomationAssumeRole (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.	ResourceId (Required) The ID of the EC2 Instance or EBS Volume. String
StartTime (Required) The start time to view the data in CloudWatch. The time must be in the format "yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss" and in UTC. String	EndTime (Required) The end time to view the data in CloudWatch. The time must be in the format "yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss" and in UTC. String

4. Select Execute.
5. The automation initiates.
6. The document performs the following steps:

- **CheckResourceIdAndTimeStamps:**

Checks if end time is greater than start time by at least one minute and if the resource provided exists.

- **CreateCloudWatchDashboard:**

Calculates Amazon EBS performance and displays a graph based on your Resource ID. If you provide an Amazon EBS Volume ID for the parameter Resource ID, this runbook creates a dashboard with estimated average IOPS and estimated average throughput for the Amazon EBS volume. If you provide an Amazon EC2 Instance ID for the parameter Resource ID, this runbook creates a CloudWatch dashboard with Average Total IOPS and Average Total Throughput for Amazon EC2 instance and with Estimated average IOPS and estimated average throughput for all Amazon EBS volumes attached to the Amazon EC2 instance.

7. After completed, review the Outputs section for the detailed results of the execution:

▼ Outputs

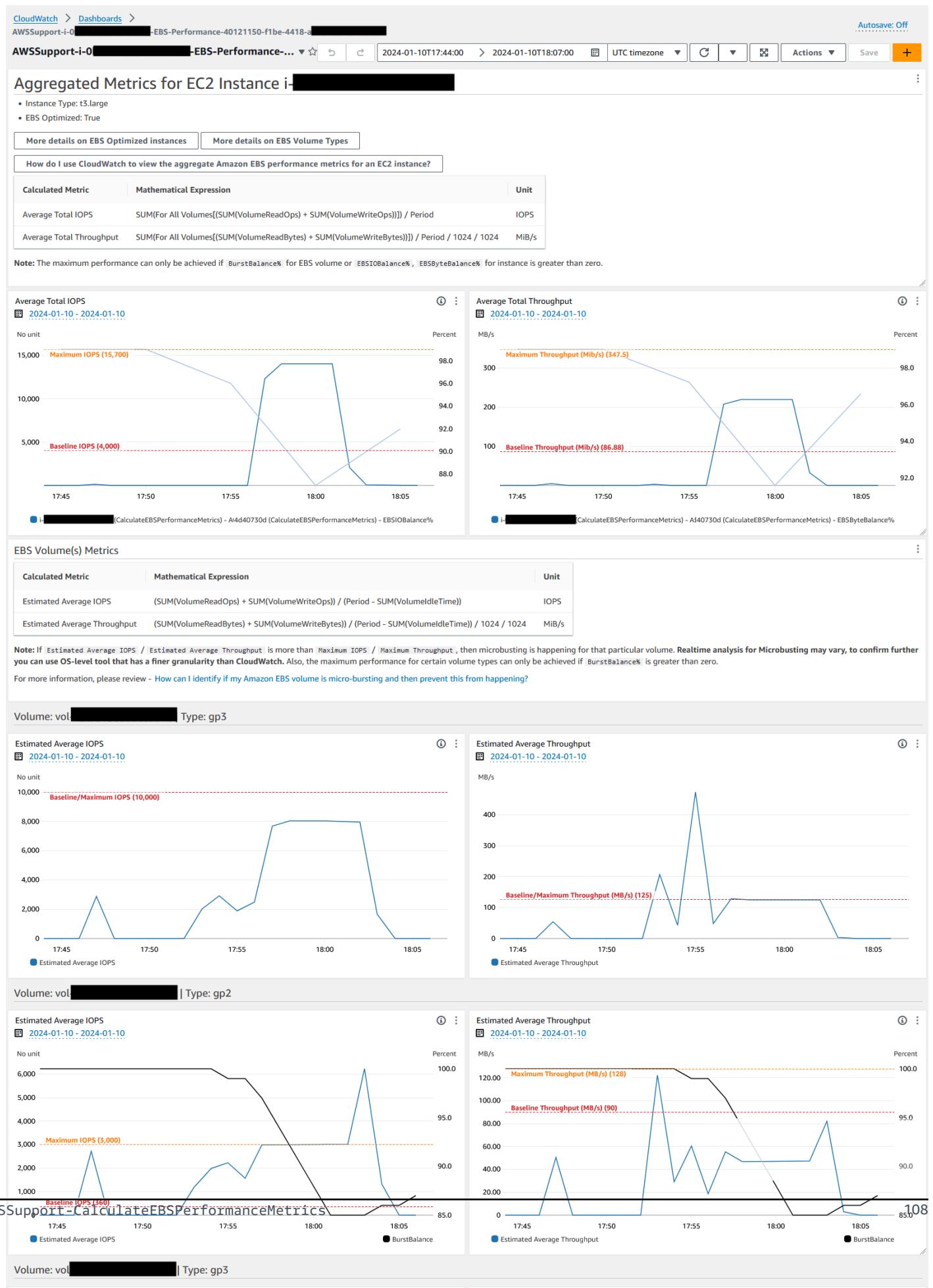
CreateCloudWatchDashboard.CloudWatchDashboardLink

<https://console.aws.amazon.com/cloudwatch/home?region=us-east-1#dashboards:name=AWSSupport-i-██████████EBS-Performance-443096c1-df23-44ba-96dd-2d005b5ae971>

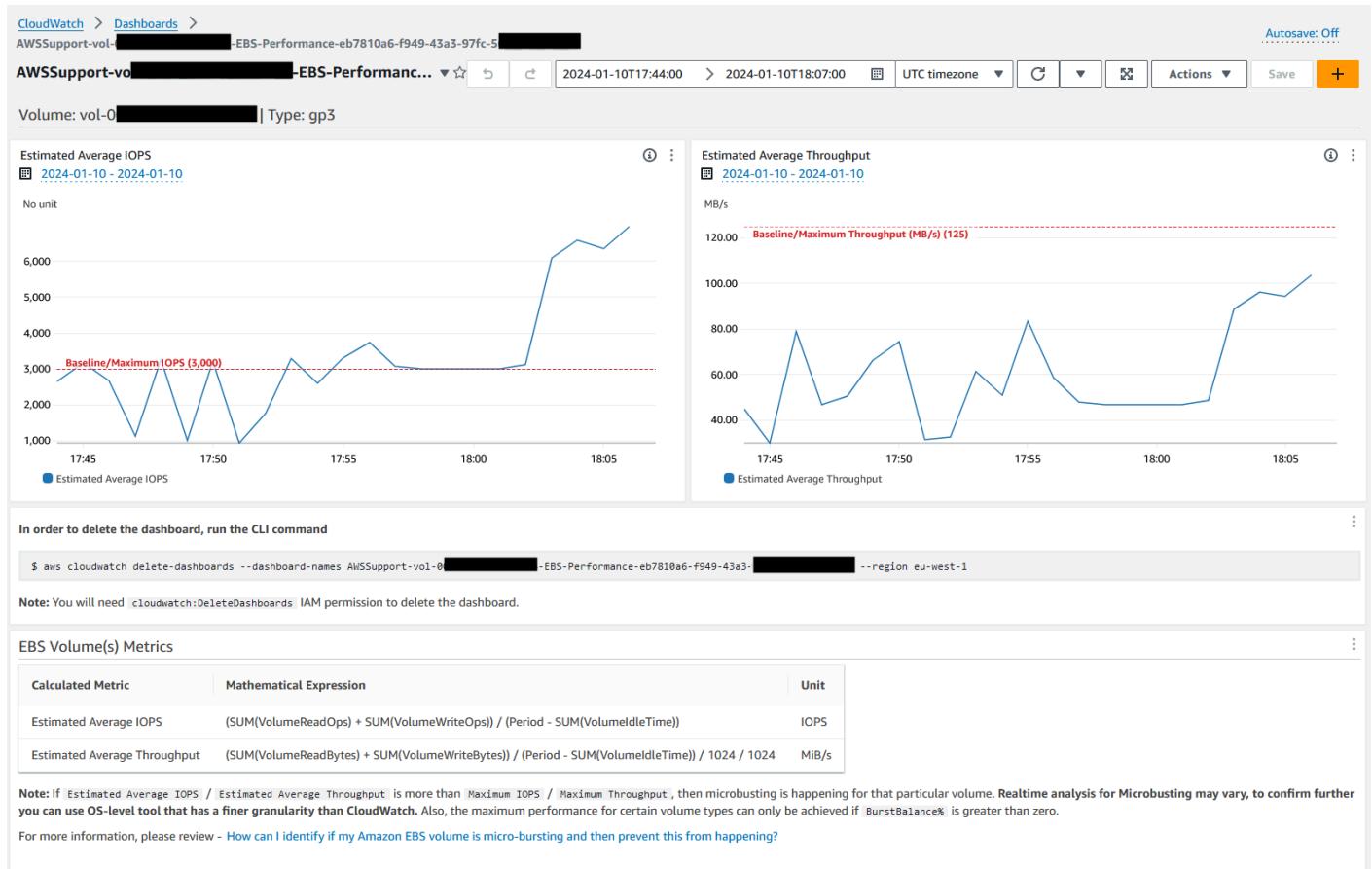
CreateCloudWatchDashboard.CloudWatchDashboardMessage

Open the CloudWatch Dashboard URL in your browser to see the performance metrics for the target resource 'i-██████████'. You can delete the CloudWatch Dashboard from the CloudWatch console.

Example CloudWatch Dashboard For Resource ID as Amazon EC2 instance



Example CloudWatch Dashboard For Resource ID as Amazon EBS volume id



References

Systems Manager Automation

- [Run this Automation \(console\)](#)
- [Run an automation](#)
- [Setting up an Automation](#)
- [Support Automation Workflows landing page](#)

AWS service documentation

- [How can I identify if my Amazon EBS volume is micro-bursting and then prevent this from happening?](#)
- [How do I use CloudWatch to view the aggregate Amazon EBS performance metrics for an EC2 instance?](#)

AWS-CopySnapshot

Description

Copies a point-in-time snapshot of an Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) volume. You can copy the snapshot within the same AWS Region or from one Region to another. Copies of encrypted Amazon EBS snapshots remain encrypted. Copies of unencrypted snapshots remain unencrypted. To copy an encrypted snapshot that was shared from another account, you must have permissions for the KMS key used to encrypt the snapshot. Snapshots created by copying another snapshot have an arbitrary volume ID that should not be used for any purpose.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Description

Type: String

Description: (Optional) A description for the Amazon EBS snapshot.

- SnapshotId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EBS snapshot to copy.

- SourceRegion

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Region where the source snapshot currently exists.

Document Steps

copySnapshot - Copies a snapshot of an Amazon EBS volume.

Outputs

copySnapshot.SnapshotId - The ID of the new snapshot.

AWS-CreateSnapshot

Description

Create a snapshot of an Amazon EBS volume.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **Description**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) A description for the snapshot

- **Volumeld**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the volume.

AWS-DeleteSnapshot

Description

Delete a snapshot of an Amazon EBS volume.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **SnapshotId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the EBS snapshot.

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedEBSVolume

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedEBSVolume runbook deletes an unused Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) volume.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- **CreateSnapshot**

Type: Boolean

Description: (Optional) If set to `true`, the automation creates a snapshot of the Amazon EBS volume before it is deleted.

- **VolumeId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EBS volume that you want to delete.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ec2:CreateSnapshot`
- `ec2:DeleteVolume`
- `ec2:DescribeSnapshots`
- `ec2:DescribeVolumes`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies the Amazon EBS volume you specify in the `VolumeId` parameter is not in use, and creates a snapshot depending on the value you choose for the `CreateSnapshot` parameter.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value you chose for the `CreateSnapshot` parameter.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the snapshot to complete.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Deletes the snapshot if the snapshot creation failed.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Deletes the Amazon EBS volume you specify in the `VolumeId` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies the Amazon EBS volume has been deleted.

AWS-DeregisterAMIs

Description

The AWS-DeregisterAMIs runbook helps you deregister Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) by specifying the tag that you've applied to your AMIs.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- DryRun

Type: String

Valid values: Yes | No

Description: (Required) Checks whether you have the required permissions for the action, without actually making the request, and provides an error response.

- RetainNumber

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The number of AMIs that you want to retain. Don't specify a value for this parameter if you specify a value for Age.

- Age

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The number of previous days of AMIs that you want to retain. Don't specify a value for this parameter if you specify a value for RetainNumber.

- TagKey

Type: String

Description: (Required) The key of the tag assigned to the AMIs that you want to deregister.

- TagValue

Type: String

Description: (Required) The value of the tag assigned to the AMIs that you want to deregister.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:DeregisterImage
- ec2:DescribeImages

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Validates the values that you specify for the runbook input parameters.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Deregisters AMIs using the tag that you specify using the TagKey and TagValue parameters.

AWS-DetachEBSVolume

Description

Detach an Amazon EBS volume from an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- LambdaAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN of the role assumed by Lambda

- Volumeld

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the EBS volume. The volume and instance must be within the same Availability Zone

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableEbsEncryptionByDefault

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableEbsEncryptionByDefault runbook enables encryption on all new Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) volumes in the AWS account and AWS Region where you run the automation. Volumes that were created before you run the automation are not encrypted.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:EnableEbsEncryptionByDefault
- ec2:GetEbsEncryptionByDefault
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables the default Amazon EBS encryption setting in the current account and Region.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies that the default Amazon EBS encryption setting has been enabled.

AWS-ExtendEbsVolume

Description

The AWS-ExtendEbsVolume runbook increases the size of an Amazon EBS volume and extends the file system. This automation supports the `xfs` and `ext4` file systems.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `DriveLetter`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The letter of the drive whose file system you want to extend. This parameter is required for Windows instances.

- **InstanceId**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance that the Amazon EBS volume you want to extend is attached to.

- **KeepSnapshot**

Type: Boolean

Default: true

Description: (Optional) Determines whether to keep the snapshot created before increasing the size of your Amazon EBS volume.

- **MountPoint**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The mount point of the drive whose file system you want to extend. This parameter is required for Linux instances.

- **SizeGiB**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The size in GiB that you want to modify your Amazon EBS volume to.

- **VolumeId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the EBS volume that you want to extend.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- **ec2:CreateSnapshot**
- **ec2:CreateTags**
- **ec2>DeleteSnapshot**

- `ec2:DescribeVolumes`
- `ec2:ModifyVolume`
- `ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation`
- `ssm:GetCommandInvocation`
- `ssm:SendCommand`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Increases the size of the volume to the value that you specify in the `VolumeId` parameter and extends the file system.

AWSsupport-ModifyEBSSnapshotPermission

Description

The AWSsupport-ModifyEBSSnapshotPermission runbook helps you to modify permissions for multiple Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) snapshots. Using this runbook, you can make snapshots Public or Private and share them with other AWS accounts. Snapshots encrypted with a default KMS key can't be shared with other accounts using this runbook.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- AccountIds

Type: StringList

Default: none

Description: (Optional) The IDs of the accounts you want to share snapshots with. This parameter is required if you enter No for the value of the Private parameter.

- AccountPermissionOperation

Type: String

Valid values: add | remove

Default: none

Description: (Optional) The type of operation to perform.

- Private

Type: String

Valid values: Yes | No

Description: (Required) Enter No for the value if you want to share snapshots with specific accounts.

- SnapshotIds

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) The IDs of Amazon EBS snapshots whose permission you want to modify.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ec2:DescribeSnapshots`
- `ec2:ModifySnapshotAttribute`

Document Steps

1. `aws:executeScript` - Verifies the IDs of the snapshots provided in the `SnapshotIds` parameter. After verifying the IDs, the script checks for encrypted snapshots and outputs a list if any are found.
2. `aws:branch` - Branches the automation based on the value you enter for the `Private` parameter.
3. `aws:executeScript` - Modifies permissions of the snapshots specified to share it with the accounts specified.
4. `aws:executeScript` - Modifies permissions of the snapshots to change them from `Public` to `Private`.

Outputs

`ValidateSnapshots.EncryptedSnapshots`

`SharewithOtherAccounts.Result`

`MakePrivate.Result`

`MakePrivate.Commands`

AWSConfigRemediation-ModifyEBSVolumeType

Description

The `AWSConfigRemediation-ModifyEBSVolumeType` runbook modifies the volume type of an Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) volume. After the volume type is modified, the volume enters an optimizing state. For information about monitoring the progress of volume modifications, see [Monitor the progress of volume modifications](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances*.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- EbsVolumeId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EBS volume that you want to modify.

- EbsVolumeType

Type: String

Valid values: standard | io1 | io2 | gp2 | gp3 | sc1 | st1

Description: The volume type you want to change the Amazon EBS volume to. For information about Amazon EBS volume types, see [Amazon EBS volume types](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances*.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`

- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ec2:DescribeVolumes`
- `ec2:ModifyVolume`

Document Steps

- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the state of the volume is available or in-use.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Modifies the Amazon EBS volume you specify in the `EbsVolumeId` parameter.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the type of the volume has been changed to the value you specified in the `EbsVolumeType` parameter.

Amazon EC2

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud. Runbooks for Amazon Elastic Block Store are located in the [Amazon EBS](#) section of the runbook reference. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-ASGEnterStandby](#)
- [AWS-ASGExitStandby](#)
- [AWS-CreatelImage](#)
- [AWS-DeleteImage](#)
- [AWS-PatchAsgInstance](#)
- [AWS-PatchInstanceWithRollback](#)
- [AWS-QuarantineEC2Instance](#)
- [AWS-ResizeInstance](#)
- [AWS-RestartEC2Instance](#)
- [AWS-SetupJupyter](#)
- [AWS-StartEC2Instance](#)
- [AWS-StopEC2Instance](#)

- [AWS-TerminateEC2Instance](#)
- [AWS-UpdateLinuxAmi](#)
- [AWS-UpdateWindowsAmi](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableAutoScalingGroupELBHealthCheck](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnforceEC2InstanceIMDSv2](#)
- [AWSEC2-CloneInstanceAndUpgradeSQLServer](#)
- [AWSEC2-CloneInstanceAndUpgradeWindows](#)
- [AWSEC2-ConfigureSTIG](#)
- [AWSEC2-PatchLoadBalancerInstance](#)
- [AWSEC2-SQLServerDBRestore](#)
- [AWSSupport-ActivateWindowsWithAmazonLicense](#)
- [AWSSupport-AnalyzeAWSEndpointReachabilityFromEC2](#)
- [AWSPremiumSupport-ChangeInstanceTypeIntelToAMD](#)
- [AWSSupport-CheckXenToNitroMigrationRequirements](#)
- [AWSSupport-ConfigureEC2Metadata](#)
- [AWSSupport-CopyEC2Instance](#)
- [AWSSupport-EnableWindowsEC2SerialConsole](#)
- [AWSSupport-ExecuteEC2Rescue](#)
- [AWSSupport-ListEC2Resources](#)
- [AWSSupport-ManageRDPSettings](#)
- [AWSSupport-ManageWindowsService](#)
- [AWSSupport-MigrateEC2ClassicToVPC](#)
- [AWSSupport-MigrateXenToNitroLinux](#)
- [AWSSupport-ResetAccess](#)
- [AWSSupport-ResetLinuxUserPassword](#)
- [AWSPremiumSupport-ResizeNitroInstance](#)
- [AWSSupport-RestoreEC2InstanceFromSnapshot](#)
- [AWSSupport-SendLogBundleToS3Bucket](#)
- [AWSSupport-StartEC2RescueWorkflow](#)

- [AWSPremiumSupport-TroubleshootEC2DiskUsage](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootEC2InstanceConnect](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootRDP](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootSSH](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootSUSERegistration](#)
- [AWSSupport-UpgradeWindowsAWSDrivers](#)

AWS-ASGEnterStandby

Description

Change the standby state of an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance in an Auto Scaling group.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Instanceld

Type: String

Description: (Required) ID of an Amazon EC2 instance for which you want to change the standby state within an Auto Scaling group.

- LambdaRoleArn

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN of the role that allows Lambda created by Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If not specified a transient role will be created to run the Lambda function.

AWS-ASGExitStandby

Description

Change the standby state of an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance in an Auto Scaling group.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on

your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `InstanceId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) ID of an EC2 instance for which you want to change the standby state within an Auto Scaling group.

- `LambdaRoleArn`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN of the role that allows Lambda created by Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If not specified a transient role will be created to run the Lambda function.

AWS-CreateImage

Description

Create a new Amazon Machine Image (AMI) from an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **Instanceld**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the EC2 instance.

- **NoReboot**

Type: Boolean

Description: (Optional) Do not reboot the instance before creating the image.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "ec2:CreateImage",
                "ec2:DescribeImages"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "*"
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

AWS-DeleteImage

Description

Delete an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) and all associated snapshots.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- ImageId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the AMI.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

```
{  
    "Version": "2012-10-17",  
    "Statement": [  
        {  
            "Effect": "Allow",  
            "Action": "image:DeleteImage",  
            "Resource": "*"  
        }  
    ]  
}
```

```
        "Action": "ec2>DeleteSnapshot",
        "Resource": "arn:aws:ec2:{region}::snapshot/*"
    },
    {
        "Effect": "Allow",
        "Action": "ec2>DescribeImages",
        "Resource": "*"
    },
    {
        "Effect": "Allow",
        "Action": "ec2>DeregisterImage",
        "Resource": "*"
    }
]
```

AWS-PatchAsgInstance

Description

Patch Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances in an Auto Scaling group.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on

your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `InstanceId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) ID of the instance to patch. Don't specify an instance ID that is configured to run during a maintenance window.

- `LambdaRoleArn`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN of the role that allows the Lambda created by Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If not specified, a transient role will be created to run the Lambda function.

- `WaitForInstance`

Type: String

Default: PT2M

Description: (Optional) Duration that the Automation should sleep to allow the instance to come back into service.

- `WaitForReboot`

Type: String

Default: PT5M

Description: (Optional) Duration that the Automation should sleep to allow a patched instance to reboot.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`

- ssm:GetCommandInvocation
- ssm:GetParameter
- ssm:SendCommand
- cloudformation>CreateStack
- cloudformation>DeleteStack
- cloudformation>DescribeStacks
- ec2>CreateTags
- ec2>DescribeInstances
- ec2>RunInstances
- iam:AttachRolePolicy
- iam>CreateRole
- iam>DeleteRole
- iam>DeleteRolePolicy
- iam>DetachRolePolicy
- iam>GetRole
- iam>PassRole
- iam>PutRolePolicy
- lambda>CreateFunction
- lambda>DeleteFunction
- lambda>GetFunction
- lambda>InvokeFunction

AWS-PatchInstanceWithRollback

Description

Brings an EC2 instance into compliance with the applicable patch baseline. Rolls back root volume on failure.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Instanceld

Type: String

Description: (Required) EC2 Instanceld to which we apply the patch-baseline.

- LambdaAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN of the role that allows Lambda created by Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If not specified a transient role will be created to run the Lambda function.

- ReportS3Bucket

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Amazon S3 Bucket destination for the Compliance Report generated during process.

Document Steps

Step number	Step name	Automation action
1	createDocumentStack	aws:createStack
2	IdentifyRootVolume	aws:invokeLambdaFunction
3	PrePatchSnapshot	aws:executeAutomation
4	installMissingUpdates	aws:runCommand
5	SleepThruInstallation	aws:invokeLambdaFunction
6	CheckCompliance	aws:invokeLambdaFunction
7	SaveComplianceReportToS3	aws:invokeLambdaFunction
8	ReportSuccessOrFailure	aws:invokeLambdaFunction
9	RestoreFromSnapshot	aws:invokeLambdaFunction
10	DeleteSnapshot	aws:invokeLambdaFunction
11	deleteCloudFormationTemplate	aws:deleteStack

Outputs

IdentifyRootVolume.Payload

PrePatchSnapshot.Output

SaveComplianceReportToS3.Payload

RestoreFromSnapshot.Payload

CheckCompliance.Payload

AWS-QuarantineEC2Instance

Description

With the AWS-QuarantineEC2Instance runbook, you can assign a security group to an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance that doesn't allow any inbound or outbound traffic.

Important

Changes to the RDP settings should be carefully reviewed before running this runbook.

Run this Automation (console)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **InstanceId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the managed instance to manage the RDP settings of.

- **IsolationSecurityGroup**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the security group that you want to assign to the instance to prevent inbound or outbound traffic.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `autoscaling:DescribeAutoScalingInstances`
- `autoscaling:DetachInstances`
- `ec2:CreateSecurityGroup`
- `ec2:CreateSnapshot`
- `ec2:DescribeInstances`
- `ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups`
- `ec2:DescribeSnapshots`
- `ec2:ModifyInstanceAttribute`
- `ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupEgress`
- `ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupIngress`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers details about the instance.
- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies the instance isn't part of an Auto Scaling group.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Creates a snapshot of the root volume attached to the instance.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the snapshot state to be completed.

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Assigns the security group specified in the `IsolationSecurityGroup` parameter to your instance.

Outputs

`GetEC2InstanceResources.RevokedSecurityGroupsIds`

`GetEC2InstanceResources.RevokedSecurityGroupsNames`

`createSnapshot.SnapId`

AWS-ResizeInstance

Description

Change the instance type of an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **InstanceId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the instance.

- **InstanceType**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The instance type.

- **LambdaAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN of the role assumed by Lambda.

AWS-RestartEC2Instance

Description

Restart one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **Instanceld**

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) The IDs of the Amazon EC2 instances to restart.

AWS-SetupJupyter

Description

The AWS-SetupJupyter runbook helps you set up Jupyter Notebook on an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance. You can either specify an existing instance, or provide an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) ID for the automation to launch and set up a new instance. Before you begin, you must create a SecureString parameter in Parameter Store to use as the password for Jupyter Notebook. Parameter Store is a capability of AWS Systems Manager. For information about creating parameters, see [Creating parameters](#) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `Amild`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ID of the AMI that you want to use to launch a new instance and set up Jupyter Notebook.

- `Instanceld`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the instance that you want to set up Jupyter Notebook on.

- `InstanceType`

Type: String

Default: t3.medium

Description: (Optional) If you're launching a new instance to set up Jupyter Notebook, specify the instance type that you want to use.

- `JupyterPasswordSSMKey`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the SecureString parameter in Parameter Store that you want to use as the password for Jupyter Notebook.

- `KeyPairName`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The key pair that you want to associate with the newly launched instance.

- `RemoteAccessCidr`

Type: String

Default: 0.0.0.0/0

Description: (Optional) The CIDR range that you want to allow SSH traffic from.

- RoleName

Type: String

Default: SSMMangedInstanceProfileRole

Description: (Optional) The name of the instance profile for the newly launched instance.

- StackName

Type: String

Default: CreateManagedInstanceStack{{automation:EXECUTION_ID}}

Description: (Optional) The AWS CloudFormation stack name that you want the automation to use.

- SubnetId

Type: String

Default: Default

Description: (Optional) The subnet that you want to launch the new instance to use.

- VpcId

Type: String

Default: Default

Description: (Optional) The ID of the virtual private cloud (VPC) that you want to launch the new instance in to.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetCommandInvocation

- ssm:GetParameter
- ssm:SendCommand
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- cloudformation>CreateStack
- cloudformation>DeleteStack
- cloudformation>DescribeStacks
- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeKeyPairs
- ec2:RunInstances
- iam:AttachRolePolicy
- iam>CreateRole
- iam>DeleteRole
- iam>DeleteRolePolicy
- iam>DetachRolePolicy
- iam:GetRole
- iam:PassRole
- iam:PutRolePolicy
- lambda>CreateFunction
- lambda>DeleteFunction
- lambda:GetFunction
- lambda:InvokeFunction

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Sets up Jupyter Notebook on the instance you specify, or on a newly launched instance, using the values that you specify for the runbook input parameters.

AWS-StartEC2Instance

Description

Start one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Instanceld

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) EC2 instances to start.

AWS-StopEC2Instance

Description

Stops one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Instanceld

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) EC2 instances to stop.

AWS-TerminateEC2Instance

Description

Terminate one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- InstanceId

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) IDs of one or more EC2 instances to terminate.

AWS-UpdateLinuxAmi

Description

Update an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) with Linux distribution packages and Amazon software.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- ExcludePackages

Type: String

Default: none

Description: (Optional) Names of packages to hold back from updates, under all conditions. By default ("none"), no package is excluded.

- IamInstanceProfileName

Type: String

Default: ManagedInstanceProfile

Description: (Required) The instance profile that enables Systems Manager to manage the instance.

- IncludePackages

Type: String

Default: all

Description: (Optional) Only update these named packages. By default ("all"), all available updates are applied.

- InstanceType

Type: String

Default: t2.micro

Description: (Optional) Type of instance to launch as the workspace host. Instance types vary by Region.

- MetadataOptions

Type: StringMap

Default: {"HttpEndpoint": "enabled", "HttpTokens": "optional"}

Description: (Optional) The metadata options for the instance. For more information, see [InstanceMetadataOptionsRequest](#).

- PostUpdateScript

Type: String

Default: none

Description: (Optional) URL of a script to run after package updates are applied. Default ("none") is to not run a script.

- PreUpdateScript

Type: String

Default: none

Description: (Optional) URL of a script to run before updates are applied. Default ("none") is to not run a script.

- SourceAmild

Type: String

Description: (Required) The source Amazon Machine Image ID.

- SubnetId

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ID of the subnet you want to launch the instance into. If you have deleted your default VPC, this parameter is required.

- TargetAmiName

Type: String

Default: UpdateLinuxAmi_from_{{SourceAmild}}_on_{{global:DATE_TIME}}

Description: (Optional) The name of the new AMI that will be created. Default is a system-generated string including the source AMI id, and the creation time and date.

AWS-UpdateWindowsAmi

Description

Update a Microsoft Windows Amazon Machine Image (AMI). By default, this runbook installs all Windows updates, Amazon software, and Amazon drivers. It then runs Sysprep to create a new AMI. Supports Windows Server 2008 R2 or later.

Important

If your instances connect to AWS Systems Manager using VPC endpoints, this runbook will fail unless used in the us-east-1 Region. Instances must have TLS 1.2 enabled to use this runbook.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Categories

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Specify one or more update categories. You can filter categories using comma-separated values. Options: Application, Connectors, CriticalUpdates, DefinitionUpdates, DeveloperKits, Drivers, FeaturePacks, Guidance, Microsoft, SecurityUpdates, ServicePacks, Tools, UpdateRollups, Updates. Valid formats include a single entry, for example: CriticalUpdates. Or you can specify a comma separated list: CriticalUpdates,SecurityUpdates. NOTE: There cannot be any spaces around the commas.

- ExcludeKbs

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Specify one or more Microsoft Knowledge Base (KB) article IDs to exclude. You can exclude multiple IDs using comma-separated values. Valid formats: KB9876543 or 9876543.

- IamInstanceProfileName

Type: String

Default: ManagedInstanceProfile

Description: (Required) The name of the role that enables Systems Manager to manage the instance.

- IncludeKbs

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Specify one or more Microsoft Knowledge Base (KB) article IDs to include. You can install multiple IDs using comma-separated values. Valid formats: KB9876543 or 9876543.

- InstanceType

Type: String

Default: t2.medium

Description: (Optional) Type of instance to launch as the workspace host. Instance types vary by region. Default is t2.medium.

- **MetadataOptions**

Type: StringMap

Default: {"HttpEndpoint": "enabled", "HttpTokens": "optional"}

Description: (Optional) The metadata options for the instance. For more information, see [InstanceMetadataOptionsRequest](#).

- **PostUpdateScript**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) A script provided as a string. It will run after installing OS updates.

- **PreUpdateScript**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) A script provided as a string. It will run prior to installing OS updates.

- **PublishedDateAfter**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Specify the date that the updates should be published after. For example, if 01/01/2017 is specified, any updates that were found during the Windows Update search that have been published on or after 01/01/2017 will be returned.

- **PublishedDateBefore**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Specify the date that the updates should be published before. For example, if 01/01/2017 is specified, any updates that were found during the Windows Update search that have been published on or before 01/01/2017 will be returned.

- **PublishedDaysOld**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Specify the amount of days old the updates must be from the published date. For example, if 10 is specified, any updates that were found during the Windows Update search that have been published 10 or more days ago will be returned.

- **SeverityLevels**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Specify one or more MSRC severity levels associated with an update. You can filter severity levels using comma-separated values. By default patches for all security levels are selected. If value supplied, the update list is filtered by those values. Options: Critical, Important, Low, Moderate or Unspecified. Valid formats include a single entry, for example: Critical. Or, you can specify a comma separated list: Critical,Important,Low.

- SourceAmild

Type: String

Description: (Required) The source Amazon Machine Image ID.

- SubnetId

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ID of the subnet you want to launch the instance into. If you have deleted your default VPC, this parameter is required.

- TargetAmiName

Type: String

Default: UpdateWindowsAmi_from_{{SourceAmild}}_on_{{global:DATE_TIME}}

Description: (Optional) The name of the new AMI that will be created. Default is a system-generated string including the source AMI id, and the creation time and date.

AWSConfigRemediation- EnableAutoScalingGroupELBHealthCheck

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableAutoScalingGroupELBHealthCheck runbook enables health checks for the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling (Auto Scaling) group you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- AutoScalingGroupARN

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the auto scaling group that you want to enable health checks on.

- HealthCheckGracePeriod

Type: Integer

Default: 300

Description: (Optional) The amount of time, in seconds, that Auto Scaling waits before checking the health status of an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance that has come into service.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution

- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ec2:DescribeAutoScalingGroups`
- `ec2:UpdateAutoScalingGroup`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Enables health checks on the Auto Scaling group you specify in the `AutoScalingGroupARN` parameter.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnforceEC2InstanceIMDSv2

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnforceEC2InstanceIMDSv2 runbook requires the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance you specify to use Instance Metadata Service Version 2 (IMDSv2).

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `InstanceId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance you want to require to use IMDSv2.

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- `HttpPutResponseHopLimit`

Type: Integer

Description: (Optional) The Hop response limit from the IMDS service back to the requester. Set to 2 or greater for EC2 instances hosting containers. Set to 0 to not change (Default).

Allowed pattern: `^([1-5]?\\d|6[0-4])$`

Default: 0

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ec2:DescribeInstances`
- `ec2:ModifyInstanceMetadataOptions`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Sets the `HttpTokens` option to `required` on the Amazon EC2 instance you specify in the `InstanceId` parameter.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies IMDSv2 is required on the Amazon EC2 instance.

AWSEC2-CloneInstanceAndUpgradeSQLServer

Description

Create an AMI from an EC2 instance for Windows Server running SQL Server 2008 or later, and then upgrade the AMI to a later version of SQL Server.

The following upgrade paths are supported:

- SQL Server 2008 to SQL Server 2017, 2016, or 2014
- SQL Server 2008 R2 to SQL Server 2017, 2016, or 2014
- SQL Server 2012 to SQL Server 2019, 2017, 2016, or 2014
- SQL Server 2014 to SQL Server 2019, 2017, or 2016
- SQL Server 2016 to SQL Server 2019 or 2017
- SQL Server 2017 to SQL Server 2019

If you are using an earlier version of Windows Server that is incompatible with SQL Server 2019, the automation document must upgrade your Windows Server version to 2016.

The upgrade is a multi-step process that can take 2 hours to complete. The automation creates the AMI from the instance, and then launches a temporary instance from the new AMI in the specified SubnetID. The security groups associated with your original instance are applied to the temporary instance. The automation then performs an in-place upgrade to the TargetSQLVersion on the temporary instance. After the upgrade, the automation creates a new AMI from the temporary instance and then terminates the temporary instance.

You can test application functionality by launching the new AMI in your VPC. After you finish testing, and before you perform another upgrade, schedule application downtime before completely switching over to the upgraded instance.

 **Note**

If you want to modify the computer name of the EC2 instance launched from the new AMI , see [Rename a Computer that Hosts a Stand-Alone Instance of SQL Server](#).

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Windows

Parameters

Prerequisites

- TLS version 1.2.
- The EC2 instance must use a version of Windows Server that is Windows Server 2008 R2 (or later) and SQL Server 2008 (or later).
- Verify that SSM Agent is installed on your instance. For more information, see [Installing and configuring SSM Agent on EC2 instances for Windows Server](#).
- Configure the instance to use an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) instance profile role. For more information, see [Create an IAM instance profile for Systems Manager](#).
- Verify that the instance has 20 GB of free disk space in the instance boot disk.
- For instances that use a Bring Your Own License (BYOL) SQL Server version, the following additional prerequisites apply:
 - Provide an EBS snapshot ID that includes the target SQL Server installation media. To do this:
 1. Verify that the EC2 instance is running Windows Server 2008 R2 or later.
 2. Create a 6 GB EBS volume in the same Availability Zone where the instance is running. Attach the volume to the instance. Mount it, for example, as drive D.
 3. Right-click the ISO and mount it to an instance as, for example, drive E.
 4. Copy the content of the ISO from drive E:\ to drive D:\
 5. Create an EBS snapshot of the 6 GB volume created in step 2.

Limitations

- The upgrade can be performed on only a SQL Server using Windows authentication.
- Verify that no security patch updates are pending on the instances. Open **Control Panel**, then choose **Check for updates**.
- SQL Server deployments in HA and mirroring mode are not supported.

Parameters

- **IamInstanceProfile**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The IAM instance profile.

- **Instanceld**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The instance running Windows Server 2008 R2 (or later) and SQL Server 2008 (or later).

- **KeepPreUpgradedImageBackUp**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) If set to true, the automation doesn't delete the AMI created from the instance before the upgrade. If set to true, then you must delete the AMI. By default, the AMI is deleted.

- **SubnetId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) Provide a subnet for the upgrade process. Verify that the subnet has outbound connectivity to AWS services, Amazon S3, and Microsoft (to download patches).

- **SQLServerSnapshotId**

Type: String

Description: (Conditional) Snapshot ID for target SQL Server installation media. This parameter is required for instances that use a BYOL SQL Server version. This parameter is optional for SQL Server license-included instances (instances launched using an AWS provided Amazon Machine Image for Windows Server with Microsoft SQL Server).

- **RebootInstanceBeforeTakingImage**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) If set to true, the automation reboots the instance before creating a pre-upgrade AMI. By default, the automation doesn't reboot before upgrade.

- **TargetSQLVersion**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Select the target SQL Server version.

Possible targets:

- SQL Server 2019
- SQL Server 2017
- SQL Server 2016
- SQL Server 2014

Default target: SQL Server 2016

Outputs

AMIID: The ID of the AMI created from the instance that was upgraded to a later version of SQL Server.

AWSEC2-CloneInstanceAndUpgradeWindows

Description

Create an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) from a Windows Server 2008 R2, 2012 R2, 2016, or 2019 instance, and then upgrade the AMI to Windows Server 2016, 2019, or 2022. The supported upgrade paths are as follows.

- Windows Server 2008 R2 to Windows Server 2016.
- Windows Server 2012 R2 to Windows Server 2016.
- Windows Server 2012 R2 to Windows Server 2019.
- Windows Server 2012 R2 to Windows Server 2022.
- Windows Server 2016 to Windows Server 2019.
- Windows Server 2016 to Windows Server 2022.
- Windows Server 2019 to Windows Server 2022.

The upgrade operation is a multi-step process that can take 2 hours to complete. We recommend performing an operating system upgrade on instances with at least 2 vCPUs and 4GB of RAM. The automation creates an AMI from the instance and then launches a temporary instance from the

newly created AMI in the SubnetId that you specify. The security groups associated with your original instance are applied to the temporary instance. The automation then performs an in-place upgrade to the TargetWindowsVersion on the temporary instance. To upgrade your Windows Server 2008 R2 instance to Windows Server 2016, 2019, or 2022, an in-place upgrade is performed twice because directly upgrading Windows Server 2008 R2 to Windows Server 2016, 2019, or 2022 is not supported. The automation also updates or installs the AWS drivers required by the temporary instance. After the upgrade, the automation creates a new AMI from the temporary instance and then terminates the temporary instance.

You can test application functionality by launching a test instance from the upgraded AMI in your Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC). After you finish testing, and before you perform another upgrade, schedule application downtime before completely switching over to the upgraded AMI.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document Type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Windows Server 2008 R2, 2012 R2, 2016, or 2019 Standard and Datacenter editions

Prerequisites

- TLS version 1.2.
- Verify that SSM Agent is installed on your instance. For more information, see [Installing and configuring SSM Agent on EC2 instances for Windows Server](#).
- Windows PowerShell 3.0 or later must be installed on your instance.
- For instances that are joined to a Microsoft Active Directory domain, we recommend specifying a SubnetId that does not have connectivity to your domain controllers to help avoid hostname conflicts.
- The instance subnet must have outbound connectivity to the internet, which provides access to AWS services such as Amazon S3 and access to download patches from Microsoft. This

requirement is met if either the subnet is a public subnet and the instance has a public IP address, or if the subnet is a private subnet with a route that sends internet traffic to a public NAT device.

- This Automation works only with Windows Server 2008 R2, 2012 R2, 2016, and 2019 instances.
- Configure the Windows Server instance with an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) instance profile that provides the requisite permissions for Systems Manager. For more information, see [Create an IAM instance profile for Systems Manager](#).
- Verify that the instance has 20 GB of free disk space in the boot disk.
- If the instance does not use an AWS-provided Windows license, then specify an Amazon EBS snapshot ID that includes Windows Server 2012 R2 installation media. To do this:
 - Verify that the EC2 instance is running Windows Server 2012 or later.
 - Create a 6 GB EBS volume in the same Availability Zone where the instance is running. Attach the volume to the instance. Mount it, for example, as drive D.
 - Right-click the ISO and mount it to an instance as, for example, drive E.
 - Copy the content of the ISO from drive E:\ to drive D:\
 - Create an EBS snapshot of the 6 GB volume created in step 2 above.

Limitations

This Automation doesn't support upgrading Windows domain controllers, clusters, or Windows desktop operating systems. This Automation also doesn't support EC2 instances for Windows Server with the following roles installed.

- Remote Desktop Session Host (RDSH)
- Remote Desktop Connection Broker (RDCB)
- Remote Desktop Virtualization Host (RDVH)
- Remote Desktop Web Access (RDWA)

Parameters

- AlternativeKeyName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The name of an alternative key pair to use during the upgrade process. This is useful in situations where the key pair assigned to the original instance is unavailable. If the original instance was not assigned a key pair, you must specify a value for this parameter.

- **BYOLWindowsMediaSnapshotId**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ID of the Amazon EBS snapshot to copy that includes Windows Server 2012R2 installation media. Required only if you are upgrading a BYOL instance.

- **IamInstanceProfile**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the IAM instance profile that enables Systems Manager to manage the instance.

- **InstanceId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The EC2 instance running Windows Server 2008 R2, 2012 R2, 2016, or 2019.

- **KeepPreUpgradeImageBackUp**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) If set True, the Automation doesn't delete the AMI created from the EC2 instance before the upgrade. If set to True, then you must delete the AMI. By default, the AMI is deleted.

- **SubnetId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) This is the subnet for the upgrade process and where your source EC2 instance resides. Verify that the subnet has outbound connectivity to AWS services, Amazon S3, and Microsoft (to download patches).

- **TargetWindowsVersion**

Type: String

Description: (Required) Select the target Windows version.

Default: 2022

- RebootInstanceBeforeTakingImage

Type: String

Description: (Optional) If set True, the Automation reboots the instance before creating a pre-upgrade AMI. By default, the Automation doesn't reboot before upgrade.

AWSEC2-ConfigureSTIG

Security Technical Implementation Guides (STIGs) are the configuration hardening standards created by the Defense Information Systems Agency (DISA) to secure information systems and software. To make your systems compliant with STIG standards, you must install, configure, and test a variety of security settings.

Amazon EC2 provides a Systems Manager runbook, AWSEC2-ConfigureSTIG, which you can use to apply STIG settings to an instance. This document helps you to quickly build compliant images for STIG standards. The STIG Systems Manager document scans for misconfigurations and runs a remediation script. It also installs InstallRoot from the Department of Defense (DoD) on Windows AMIs to install and update the DoD certificates and to remove unnecessary certificates to maintain STIG compliance. There are no additional charges for using the STIG Systems Manager document.

Important

With few exceptions, the STIG hardening components that the Systems Manager document downloads do not install third-party packages. If third-party packages are already installed on the instance, and if there are related STIGs that Amazon EC2 supports for that package, those STIGs are applied.

This page lists all STIGs that Amazon EC2 supports that the STIG hardening components apply to your EC2 instance.

You can choose which STIG compliance category to apply.

Compliance levels

- **High (Category I)**

The most severe risk. Includes any vulnerability that can result in loss of confidentiality, availability, or integrity.

- **Medium (Category II)**

Includes any vulnerability that can result in loss of confidentiality, availability, or integrity but the risk can be mitigated.

- **Low (Category III)**

Includes any vulnerability that degrades measures to protect against loss of confidentiality, availability, or integrity.

Topics

- [STIG hardening component downloads](#)
- [Windows STIG settings](#)
- [Windows STIG version history](#)
- [Linux STIG settings](#)
- [Linux STIG version history](#)

STIG hardening component downloads

Amazon groups STIG hardening components together into operating system related bundles for each release. Bundles are archive files that are appropriate for the target operating system where they download and run. Linux component bundles are stored as TAR files (.tgz file extension). Windows component bundles are stored as ZIP files (.zip file extension).

Amazon stores the component bundles in the Image Builder S3 STIG bucket in each AWS Region. Use SSL/TLS to communicate with AWS resources. We require TLS 1.2 and recommend TLS 1.3.

Patterns and examples for component storage paths and bundle file names are as follows:

Component storage path

s3://aws-windows-downloads-<region>/STIG/<bundle file name>

Component path variables

region

AWS Region (Each Region has its own components bucket.)

bundle file name

The format is `<os bundle name>_<YYYY>_Q<quarter>[<release>].<file extension>`. Note that the name has underscores between the nodes, not periods.

os bundle name

The standard name prefix for the operating system bundle is either LinuxAWSConfigureSTIG or AWSConfigureSTIG. To maintain backwards compatibility, the download for Windows doesn't include a platform prefix.

YYYY

The four digit year of the release.

quarter

Identifies the quarter of the year: 1, 2, 3, or 4.

release

Incremental number that starts at one, and increments by one for each new release. The release is not included for the first release in a quarter and is only added for subsequent releases.

file extension

Compressed file format tgz (Linux) or zip (Windows).

Example bundle file names

- LinuxAWSConfigureSTIG_2023_Q1_2.tgz
- AWSConfigureSTIG_2022_Q4.zip

Windows STIG settings

Amazon EC2 Windows STIG AMIs and hardening components are designed for standalone servers and apply Local Group Policy. STIG-compliant components install InstallRoot from the Department

of Defense (DoD) on Windows AMIs to download, install and update the DoD certificates. They also remove unnecessary certificates to maintain STIG compliance. Currently, Amazon EC2 supports STIG baselines for the following versions of Windows Server: 2012 R2, 2016, 2019, and 2022.

This section lists current STIG settings that Amazon EC2 supports for your Windows infrastructure, followed by a version history log.

You can apply low, medium, or high STIG settings.

Windows STIG Low (Category III)

The following list contains STIG settings that Amazon EC2 supports to your infrastructure. If a supported setting isn't applicable for your infrastructure, Amazon EC2 skips that setting, and moves on. For example, some STIG hardening settings might not apply to standalone servers. Organization-specific policies can also affect which settings apply, such as a requirement for administrators to review document settings.

For a complete list of Windows STIGs, see the [STIGs Document Library](#). For information about how to view the complete list, see [STIG Viewing Tools](#).

- **Windows Server 2022 STIG Version 1 Release 1**

V-254335, V-254336, V-254337, V-254338, V-254351, V-254357, V-254363, and V-254481

- **Windows Server 2019 STIG Version 2 Release 5**

V-205691, V-205819, V-205858, V-205859, V-205860, V-205870, V-205871, and V-205923

- **Windows Server 2016 STIG Version 2 Release 5**

V-224916, V-224917, V-224918, V-224919, V-224931, V-224942, and V-225060

- **Windows Server 2012 R2 MS STIG Version 3 Release 5**

V-225537, V-225536, V-225526, V-225525, V-225514, V-225511, V-225490, V-225489, V-225488, V-225487, V-225485, V-225484, V-225483, V-225482, V-225481, V-225480, V-225479, V-225476, V-225473, V-225468, V-225462, V-225460, V-225459, V-225412, V-225394, V-225392, V-225376, V-225363, V-225362, V-225360, V-225359, V-225358, V-225357, V-225355, V-225343, V-225342, V-225336, V-225335, V-225334, V-225333, V-225332, V-225331, V-225330, V-225328, V-225327, V-225324, V-225319, V-225318, and V-225250

- **Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0 STIG Version 2 Release 2**

No STIG settings apply to the Microsoft .NET Framework for Category III vulnerabilities.

- **Windows Firewall STIG Version 2 Release 1**

V-241994, V-241995, V-241996, V-241999, V-242000, V-242001, V-242006, V-242007, and V-242008

- **Internet Explorer 11 STIG Version 2 Release 3**

V-46477, V-46629, and V-97527

- **Microsoft Edge STIG Version 1 Release 6 (Windows Server 2022 only)**

V-235727, V-235731, V-235751, V-235752, and V-235765

Windows STIG Medium (Category II)

The following list contains STIG settings that Amazon EC2 supports to your infrastructure. If a supported setting isn't applicable for your infrastructure, Amazon EC2 skips that setting, and moves on. For example, some STIG hardening settings might not apply to standalone servers. Organization-specific policies can also affect which settings apply, such as a requirement for administrators to review document settings.

For a complete list of Windows STIGs, see the [STIGs Document Library](#). For information about how to view the complete list, see [STIG Viewing Tools](#).

 **Note**

The Windows STIG Medium category includes all of the listed STIG hardening settings that apply to Windows STIG low (Category III), in addition to the STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Category II vulnerabilities.

- **Windows Server 2022 STIG Version 1 Release 1**

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Category III (Low) vulnerabilities, plus:

V-254247, V-254265, V-254269, V-254270, V-254271, V-254272, V-254273, V-254274, V-254276, V-254277, V-254278, V-254285, V-254286, V-254287, V-254288, V-254289, V-254290, V-254291, V-254292, V-254300, V-254301, V-254302, V-254303, V-254304,

V-254305, V-254306, V-254307, V-254308, V-254309, V-254310, V-254311, V-254312, V-254313, V-254314, V-254315, V-254316, V-254317, V-254318, V-254319, V-254320, V-254321, V-254322, V-254323, V-254324, V-254325, V-254326, V-254327, V-254328, V-254329, V-254330, V-254331, V-254332, V-254333, V-254334, V-254339, V-254341, V-254342, V-254344, V-254345, V-254346, V-254347, V-254348, V-254349, V-254350, V-254355, V-254356, V-254358, V-254359, V-254360, V-254361, V-254362, V-254364, V-254365, V-254366, V-254367, V-254368, V-254369, V-254370, V-254371, V-254372, V-254373, V-254375, V-254376, V-254377, V-254379, V-254380, V-254382, V-254383, V-254431, V-254432, V-254433, V-254434, V-254435, V-254436, V-254438, V-254439, V-254442, V-254443, V-254444, V-254445, V-254449, V-254450, V-254451, V-254452, V-254453, V-254454, V-254455, V-254456, V-254459, V-254460, V-254461, V-254462, V-254463, V-254464, V-254468, V-254470, V-254471, V-254472, V-254473, V-254476, V-254477, V-254478, V-254479, V-254480, V-254482, V-254483, V-254484, V-254485, V-254486, V-254487, V-254488, V-254489, V-254490, V-254493, V-254494, V-254495, V-254497, V-254499, V-254501, V-254502, V-254503, V-254504, V-254505, V-254507, V-254508, V-254509, V-254510, V-254511, and V-254512

- **Windows Server 2019 STIG Version 2 Release 5**

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Category III (Low) vulnerabilities, plus:

V-205625, V-205626, V-205627, V-205629, V-205630, V-205633, V-205634, V-205635, V-205636, V-205637, V-205638, V-205639, V-205643, V-205644, V-205648, V-205649, V-205650, V-205651, V-205652, V-205655, V-205656, V-205659, V-205660, V-205662, V-205671, V-205672, V-205673, V-205675, V-205676, V-205678, V-205679, V-205680, V-205681, V-205682, V-205683, V-205684, V-205685, V-205686, V-205687, V-205688, V-205689, V-205690, V-205692, V-205693, V-205694, V-205697, V-205698, V-205708, V-205709, V-205712, V-205714, V-205716, V-205717, V-205718, V-205719, V-205720, V-205722, V-205729, V-205730, V-205733, V-205747, V-205751, V-205752, V-205754, V-205756, V-205758, V-205759, V-205760, V-205761, V-205762, V-205764, V-205765, V-205766, V-205767, V-205768, V-205769, V-205770, V-205771, V-205772, V-205773, V-205774, V-205775, V-205776, V-205777, V-205778, V-205779, V-205780, V-205781, V-205782, V-205783, V-205784, V-205795, V-205796, V-205797, V-205798, V-205801, V-205808, V-205809, V-205810, V-205811, V-205812, V-205813, V-205814, V-205815, V-205816, V-205817, V-205821, V-205822, V-205823, V-205824, V-205825, V-205826, V-205827, V-205828, V-205830, V-205832, V-205833, V-205834, V-205835, V-205836, V-205837, V-205838, V-205839, V-205840, V-205841, V-205861, V-205863, V-205865,

V-205866, V-205867, V-205868, V-205869, V-205872, V-205873, V-205874, V-205911, V-205912, V-205915, V-205916, V-205917, V-205918, V-205920, V-205921, V-205922, V-205924, V-205925, and V-236001

- **Windows Server 2016 STIG Version 2 Release 5**

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Category III (Low) vulnerabilities, plus:

V-224850, V-224852, V-224853, V-224854, V-224855, V-224856, V-224857, V-224858, V-224859, V-224866, V-224867, V-224868, V-224869, V-224870, V-224871, V-224872, V-224873, V-224881, V-224882, V-224883, V-224884, V-224885, V-224886, V-224887, V-224888, V-224889, V-224890, V-224891, V-224892, V-224893, V-224894, V-224895, V-224896, V-224897, V-224898, V-224899, V-224900, V-224901, V-224902, V-224903, V-224904, V-224905, V-224906, V-224907, V-224908, V-224909, V-224910, V-224911, V-224912, V-224913, V-224914, V-224915, V-224920, V-224922, V-224924, V-224925, V-224926, V-224927, V-224928, V-224929, V-224930, V-224935, V-224936, V-224937, V-224938, V-224939, V-224940, V-224941, V-224943, V-224944, V-224945, V-224946, V-224947, V-224948, V-224949, V-224951, V-224952, V-224953, V-224955, V-224956, V-224957, V-224959, V-224960, V-224962, V-224963, V-225010, V-225013, V-225014, V-225015, V-225016, V-225017, V-225018, V-225019, V-225021, V-225022, V-225023, V-225024, V-225028, V-225029, V-225030, V-225031, V-225032, V-225033, V-225034, V-225035, V-225038, V-225039, V-225040, V-225041, V-225042, V-225043, V-225047, V-225049, V-225050, V-225051, V-225052, V-225055, V-225056, V-225057, V-225058, V-225061, V-225062, V-225063, V-225064, V-225065, V-225066, V-225067, V-225068, V-225069, V-225072, V-225073, V-225074, V-225076, V-225078, V-225080, V-225081, V-225082, V-225083, V-225084, V-225086, V-225087, V-225088, V-225089, V-225092, V-225093 and V-236000

- **Windows Server 2012 R2 MS STIG Version 3 Release 5**

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Category III (Low) vulnerabilities, plus:

V-225574, V-225573, V-225572, V-225571, V-225570, V-225569, V-225568, V-225567, V-225566, V-225565, V-225564, V-225563, V-225562, V-225561, V-225560, V-225559, V-225558, V-225557, V-225555, V-225554, V-225553, V-225551, V-225550, V-225549, V-225548, V-225546, V-225545, V-225544, V-225543, V-225542, V-225541, V-225540, V-225539, V-225538, V-225535, V-225534, V-225533, V-225532, V-225531, V-225530,

V-225529, V-225528, V-225527, V-225524, V-225523, V-225522, V-225521, V-225520, V-225519, V-225518, V-225517, V-225516, V-225515, V-225513, V-225510, V-225509, V-225508, V-225506, V-225504, V-225503, V-225502, V-225501, V-225500, V-225494, V-225486, V-225478, V-225477, V-225475, V-225474, V-225472, V-225471, V-225470, V-225469, V-225464, V-225463, V-225461, V-225458, V-225457, V-225456, V-225455, V-225454, V-225453, V-225452, V-225448, V-225443, V-225442, V-225441, V-225415, V-225414, V-225413, V-225411, V-225410, V-225409, V-225408, V-225407, V-225406, V-225405, V-225404, V-225402, V-225401, V-225400, V-225398, V-225397, V-225395, V-225393, V-225391, V-225389, V-225386, V-225385, V-225384, V-225383, V-225382, V-225381, V-225380, V-225379, V-225378, V-225377, V-225375, V-225374, V-225373, V-225372, V-225371, V-225370, V-225369, V-225368, V-225367, V-225356, V-225353, V-225352, V-225351, V-225350, V-225349, V-225348, V-225347, V-225346, V-225345, V-225344, V-225341, V-225340, V-225339, V-225338, V-225337, V-225329, V-225326, V-225325, V-225317, V-225316, V-225315, V-225314, V-225305, V-225304, V-225303, V-225302, V-225301, V-225300, V-225299, V-225298, V-225297, V-225296, V-225295, V-225294, V-225293, V-225292, V-225291, V-225290, V-225289, V-225288, V-225287, V-225286, V-225285, V-225284, V-225283, V-225282, V-225281, V-225280, V-225279, V-225278, V-225277, V-225276, V-225275, V-225273, V-225272, V-225271, V-225270, V-225269, V-225268, V-225267, V-225266, V-225265, V-225264, V-225263, V-225261, V-225260, V-225259, and V-225239

- **Microsoft .NET Framework STIG 4.0 Version 2 Release 2**

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Category III (Low) vulnerabilities, plus:

V-225238

- **Windows Firewall STIG Version 2 Release 1**

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Category III (Low) vulnerabilities, plus:

V-241989, V-241990, V-241991, V-241993, V-241998, and V-242003

- **Internet Explorer 11 STIG Version 2 Release 3**

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Category III (Low) vulnerabilities, plus:

V-46473, V-46475, V-46481, V-46483, V-46501, V-46507, V-46509, V-46511, V-46513, V-46515, V-46517, V-46521, V-46523, V-46525, V-46543, V-46545, V-46547, V-46549, V-46553, V-46555, V-46573, V-46575, V-46577, V-46579, V-46581, V-46583, V-46587, V-46589, V-46591, V-46593, V-46597, V-46599, V-46601, V-46603, V-46605, V-46607, V-46609, V-46615, V-46617, V-46619, V-46621, V-46625, V-46633, V-46635, V-46637, V-46639, V-46641, V-46643, V-46645, V-46647, V-46649, V-46653, V-46663, V-46665, V-46669, V-46681, V-46685, V-46689, V-46691, V-46693, V-46695, V-46701, V-46705, V-46709, V-46711, V-46713, V-46715, V-46717, V-46719, V-46721, V-46723, V-46725, V-46727, V-46729, V-46731, V-46733, V-46779, V-46781, V-46787, V-46789, V-46791, V-46797, V-46799, V-46801, V-46807, V-46811, V-46815, V-46819, V-46829, V-46841, V-46847, V-46849, V-46853, V-46857, V-46859, V-46861, V-46865, V-46869, V-46879, V-46883, V-46885, V-46889, V-46893, V-46895, V-46897, V-46903, V-46907, V-46921, V-46927, V-46939, V-46975, V-46981, V-46987, V-46995, V-46997, V-46999, V-47003, V-47005, V-47009, V-64711, V-64713, V-64715, V-64717, V-64719, V-64721, V-64723, V-64725, V-64729, V-72757, V-72759, V-72761, V-72763, V-75169, and V-75171

- **Microsoft Edge STIG Version 1 Release 6 (Windows Server 2022 only)**

V-235720, V-235721, V-235723, V-235724, V-235725, V-235726, V-235728, V-235729, V-235730, V-235732, V-235733, V-235734, V-235735, V-235736, V-235737, V-235738, V-235739, V-235740, V-235741, V-235742, V-235743, V-235744, V-235745, V-235746, V-235747, V-235748, V-235749, V-235750, V-235754, V-235756, V-235760, V-235761, V-235763, V-235764, V-235766, V-235767, V-235768, V-235769, V-235770, V-235771, V-235772, V-235773, V-235774, and V-246736

- **Defender STIG Version 2 Release 4 (Windows Server 2022 only)**

V-213427, V-213429, V-213430, V-213431, V-213432, V-213433, V-213434, V-213435, V-213436, V-213437, V-213438, V-213439, V-213440, V-213441, V-213442, V-213443, V-213444, V-213445, V-213446, V-213447, V-213448, V-213449, V-213450, V-213451, V-213455, V-213464, V-213465, and V-213466

Windows STIG High (Category I)

The following list contains STIG settings that Amazon EC2 supports to your infrastructure. If a supported setting isn't applicable for your infrastructure, Amazon EC2 skips that setting, and moves on. For example, some STIG hardening settings might not apply to standalone servers.

Organization-specific policies can also affect which settings apply, such as a requirement for administrators to review document settings.

For a complete list of Windows STIGs, see the [STIGs Document Library](#). For information about how to view the complete list, see [STIG Viewing Tools](#).

 **Note**

The Windows STIG High category includes all of the listed STIG hardening settings that apply for Windows STIG Medium and Low categories, in addition to the STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Category I vulnerabilities.

- **Windows Server 2022 STIG Version 1 Release 1**

V-254293, V-254352, V-254353, V-254354, V-254374, V-254378, V-254381, V-254446, V-254465, V-254466, V-254467, V-254469, V-254474, V-254475, and V-254500

- **Windows Server 2019 STIG Version 2 Release 5**

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Categories II and III (Medium and Low) vulnerabilities, plus:

V-205653, V-205654, V-205711, V-205713, V-205724, V-205725, V-205757, V-205802, V-205804, V-205805, V-205806, V-205849, V-205908, V-205913, V-205914, and V-205919

- **Windows Server 2016 STIG Version 2 Release 5**

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Categories II and III (Medium and Low) vulnerabilities, plus:

V-224874, V-224932, V-224933, V-224934, V-224954, V-224958, V-224961, V-225025, V-225044, V-225045, V-225046, V-225048, V-225053, V-225054, and V-225079

- **Windows Server 2012 R2 MS STIG Version 3 Release 5**

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Categories II and III (Medium and Low) vulnerabilities, plus:

V-225556, V-225552, V-225547, V-225507, V-225505, V-225498, V-225497, V-225496, V-225493, V-225492, V-225491, V-225449, V-225444, V-225399, V-225396, V-225390, V-225366, V-225365, V-225364, V-225354, and V-225274

- **Microsoft .NET Framework STIG 4.0 Version 2 Release 2**

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Categories II and III (Medium and Low) vulnerabilities for the Microsoft .NET Framework. No additional STIG settings apply for Category I vulnerabilities.

- **Windows Firewall STIG Version 2 Release 1**

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Categories II and III (Medium and Low) vulnerabilities, plus:

V-241992, V-241997, and V-242002

- **Internet Explorer 11 STIG Version 2 Release 3**

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Categories II and III (Medium and Low) vulnerabilities for Internet Explorer 11. No additional STIG settings apply for Category I vulnerabilities.

- **Microsoft Edge STIG Version 1 Release 6 (Windows Server 2022 only)**

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Categories II and III (Medium and Low) vulnerabilities, plus:

V-235758 and V-235759

- **Defender STIG Version 2 Release 4 (Windows Server 2022 only)**

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Categories II and III (Medium and Low) vulnerabilities, plus:

V-213426, V-213452, and V-213453

Windows STIG version history

This section logs Windows component version history for the quarterly STIG updates. To see the changes and published versions for a quarter, choose the title to expand the information.

2024 Q1 changes - 02/23/2024 (no changes):

There were no changes for Windows component STIGS for the 2024 first quarter release.

2023 Q4 changes - 12/07/2023 (no changes):

There were no changes for Windows component STIGS for the 2023 fourth quarter release.

2023 Q3 changes - 10/04/2023 (no changes):

There were no changes for Windows component STIGS for the 2023 third quarter release.

2023 Q2 changes - 05/03/2023 (no changes):

There were no changes for Windows component STIGS for the 2023 second quarter release.

2023 Q1 changes - 03/27/2023 (no changes):

There were no changes for Windows component STIGS for the 2023 first quarter release.

2022 Q4 changes - 02/01/2023:

Updated STIG versions and applied STIGS for the 2022 Q4 release as follows:

STIG-Build-Windows-Low version 2022.4.0

- Windows Server 2022 STIG Version 1 Release 1
- Windows Server 2019 STIG Version 2 Release 5
- Windows Server 2016 STIG Version 2 Release 5
- Windows Server 2012 R2 MS STIG Version 3 Release 5
- Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0 STIG Version 2 Release 2
- Windows Firewall STIG Version 2 Release 1
- Internet Explorer 11 STIG Version 2 Release 3
- Microsoft Edge STIG Version 1 Release 6 (Windows Server 2022 only)

STIG-Build-Windows-Medium version 2022.4.0

- Windows Server 2022 STIG Version 1 Release 1
- Windows Server 2019 STIG Version 2 Release 5
- Windows Server 2016 STIG Version 2 Release 5
- Windows Server 2012 R2 MS STIG Version 3 Release 5

- Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0 STIG Version 2 Release 2
- Windows Firewall STIG Version 2 Release 1
- Internet Explorer 11 STIG Version 2 Release 3
- Microsoft Edge STIG Version 1 Release 6 (Windows Server 2022 only)
- Defender STIG Version 2 Release 4 (Windows Server 2022 only)

STIG-Build-Windows-High version 2022.4.0

- Windows Server 2022 STIG Version 1 Release 1
- Windows Server 2019 STIG Version 2 Release 5
- Windows Server 2016 STIG Version 2 Release 5
- Windows Server 2012 R2 MS STIG Version 3 Release 5
- Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0 STIG Version 2 Release 2
- Windows Firewall STIG Version 2 Release 1
- Internet Explorer 11 STIG Version 2 Release 3
- Microsoft Edge STIG Version 1 Release 6 (Windows Server 2022 only)
- Defender STIG Version 2 Release 4 (Windows Server 2022 only)

2022 Q3 changes - 09/30/2022 (no changes):

There were no changes for Windows component STIGS for the 2022 third quarter release.

2022 Q2 changes - 08/02/2022:

Updated STIG versions and applied STIGS for the 2022 Q2 release.

STIG-Build-Windows-Low version 1.5.0

- Windows Server 2019 STIG Version 2 Release 4
- Windows Server 2016 STIG Version 2 Release 4
- Windows Server 2012 R2 MS STIG Version 3 Release 3
- Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0 STIG Version 2 Release 1
- Windows Firewall STIG Version 2 Release 1
- Internet Explorer 11 STIG Version 1 Release 19

STIG-Build-Windows-Medium version 1.5.0

- Windows Server 2019 STIG Version 2 Release 4
- Windows Server 2016 STIG Version 2 Release 4
- Windows Server 2012 R2 MS STIG Version 3 Release 3
- Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0 STIG Version 2 Release 1
- Windows Firewall STIG Version 2 Release 1
- Internet Explorer 11 STIG Version 1 Release 19

STIG-Build-Windows-High version 1.5.0

- Windows Server 2019 STIG Version 2 Release 4
- Windows Server 2016 STIG Version 2 Release 4
- Windows Server 2012 R2 MS STIG Version 3 Release 3
- Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0 STIG Version 2 Release 1
- Windows Firewall STIG Version 2 Release 1
- Internet Explorer 11 STIG Version 1 Release 19

2022 Q1 changes - 08/02/2022 (no changes):

There were no changes for Windows component STIGS for the 2022 first quarter release.

2021 Q4 changes - 12/20/2021:

Updated STIG versions and applied STIGS for the 2021 fourth quarter release.

STIG-Build-Windows-Low version 1.5.0

- Windows Server 2019 STIG Version 2 Release 3
- Windows Server 2016 STIG Version 2 Release 3
- Windows Server 2012 R2 MS STIG Version 3 Release 3
- Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0 STIG Version 2 Release 1
- Windows Firewall STIG Version 2 Release 1
- Internet Explorer 11 STIG Version 1 Release 19

STIG-Build-Windows-Medium version 1.5.0

- Windows Server 2019 STIG Version 2 Release 3
- Windows Server 2016 STIG Version 2 Release 3
- Windows Server 2012 R2 MS STIG Version 3 Release 3
- Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0 STIG Version 2 Release 1
- Windows Firewall STIG Version 2 Release 1
- Internet Explorer 11 STIG Version 1 Release 19

STIG-Build-Windows-High version 1.5.0

- Windows Server 2019 STIG Version 2 Release 3
- Windows Server 2016 STIG Version 2 Release 3
- Windows Server 2012 R2 MS STIG Version 3 Release 3
- Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0 STIG Version 2 Release 1
- Windows Firewall STIG Version 2 Release 1
- Internet Explorer 11 STIG Version 1 Release 19

2021 Q3 changes - 09/30/2021:

Updated STIG versions and applied STIGS for the 2021 third quarter release.

STIG-Build-Windows-Low version 1.4.0

- Windows Server 2019 STIG Version 2 Release 2
- Windows Server 2016 STIG Version 2 Release 2
- Windows Server 2012 R2 MS STIG Version 3 Release 2
- Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0 STIG Version 2 Release 1
- Windows Firewall STIG Version 1 Release 7
- Internet Explorer 11 STIG Version 1 Release 19

STIG-Build-Windows-Medium version 1.4.0

- Windows Server 2019 STIG Version 2 Release 2
- Windows Server 2016 STIG Version 2 Release 2

- Windows Server 2012 R2 MS STIG Version 3 Release 2
- Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0 STIG Version 2 Release 1
- Windows Firewall STIG Version 1 Release 7
- Internet Explorer 11 STIG Version 1 Release 19

STIG-Build-Windows-High version 1.4.0

- Windows Server 2019 STIG Version 2 Release 2
- Windows Server 2016 STIG Version 2 Release 2
- Windows Server 2012 R2 MS STIG Version 3 Release 2
- Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0 STIG Version 2 Release 1
- Windows Firewall STIG Version 1 Release 7
- Internet Explorer 11 STIG Version 1 Release 19

Linux STIG settings

This section contains information about the Linux STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports, followed by a version history log. If the Linux distribution doesn't have STIG hardening settings of its own, Amazon EC2 uses RHEL settings. Supported STIG hardening settings apply to Amazon EC2 Linux AMIs and components based on the Linux distribution, as follows:

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 7 STIG settings
 - RHEL 7
 - CentOS 7
 - Amazon Linux 2 (AL2)
- RHEL 8 STIG settings
 - RHEL 8
 - CentOS 8
 - Amazon Linux 2023 (AL 2023)

Linux STIG Low (Category III)

The following list contains STIG settings that Amazon EC2 supports to your infrastructure. If a supported setting isn't applicable for your infrastructure, Amazon EC2 skips that setting, and

moves on. For example, some STIG hardening settings might not apply to standalone servers. Organization-specific policies can also affect which settings apply, such as a requirement for administrators to review document settings.

For a complete list, see the [STIGs Document Library](#). For information about how to view the complete list, see [STIG Viewing Tools](#).

RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 14

- **RHEL 7/CentOS 7**

V-204452, V-204576, and V-204605

- **AL2**

V-204452, V-204576, and V-204605

RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 13

- **RHEL 8/CentOS 8/AL 2023**

V-230241, V-244527, V-230269, V-230270, V-230285, V-230253, V-230346, V-230381, V-230395, V-230468, V-230469, V-230491, V-230485, V-230486, V-230494, V-230495, V-230496, V-230497, V-230498, V-230499, and V-230281

Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 13

V-219172, V-219173, V-219174, V-219175, V-219210, V-219164, V-219165, V-219178, V-219180, V-219301, V-219163, V-219332, V-219327, and V-219333

Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 11

V-238202, V-238234, V-238235, V-238237, V-238323, V-238373, V-238221, V-238222, V-238223, V-238224, V-238226, V-238362, V-238357, and V-238308

Linux STIG Medium (Category II)

The following list contains STIG settings that Amazon EC2 supports to your infrastructure. If a supported setting isn't applicable for your infrastructure, Amazon EC2 skips that setting, and moves on. For example, some STIG hardening settings might not apply to standalone servers. Organization-specific policies can also affect which settings apply, such as a requirement for administrators to review document settings.

For a complete list, see the [STIGs Document Library](#). For information about how to view the complete list, see [STIG Viewing Tools](#).

 **Note**

The Linux STIG Medium category includes all of the listed STIG hardening settings that apply for Linux STIG Low (Category III), in addition to the STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Category II vulnerabilities.

RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 14

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Category III (Low) vulnerabilities, plus:

- **RHEL 7/CentOS 7**

V-204585, V-204490, V-204491, V-255928, V-204405, V-204406, V-204407, V-204408, V-204409, V-204410, V-204411, V-204412, V-204413, V-204414, V-204415, V-204422, V-204423, V-204427, V-204416, V-204418, V-204426, V-204431, V-204457, V-204466, V-204417, V-204434, V-204435, V-204587, V-204588, V-204589, V-204590, V-204591, V-204592, V-204593, V-204596, V-204597, V-204598, V-204599, V-204600, V-204601, V-204602, V-204622, V-233307, V-255925, V-204578, V-204595, V-204437, V-204503, V-204507, V-204508, V-204510, V-204511, V-204512, V-204514, V-204515, V-204516, V-204517, V-204521, V-204524, V-204531, V-204536, V-204537, V-204538, V-204539, V-204540, V-204541, V-204542, V-204543, V-204544, V-204545, V-204546, V-204547, V-204548, V-204549, V-204550, V-204551, V-204552, V-204553, V-204554, V-204555, V-204556, V-204557, V-204558, V-204559, V-204560, V-204562, V-204563, V-204564, V-204565, V-204566, V-204567, V-204568, V-204572, V-204584, V-204609, V-204610, V-204611, V-204612, V-204613, V-204614, V-204615, V-204616, V-204617, V-204625, V-204630, V-255927, V-237634, V-237635, V-251703, V-204449, V-204450, V-204451, V-204619, V-204579, V-204631, V-204633, and V-256970

- **AL2:**

V-204585, V-204490, V-204491, V-255928, V-204405, V-204406, V-204407, V-204408, V-204409, V-204410, V-204411, V-204412, V-204413, V-204414, V-204415, V-204422, V-204423, V-204427, V-204416, V-204418, V-204426, V-204431, V-204457, V-204466, V-204417, V-204434, V-204435, V-204587, V-204588, V-204589, V-204590, V-204591,

V-204592, V-204593, V-204596, V-204597, V-204598, V-204599, V-204600, V-204601, V-204602, V-204622, V-233307, V-255925, V-204578, V-204595, V-204437, V-204503, V-204507, V-204508, V-204510, V-204511, V-204512, V-204514, V-204515, V-204516, V-204517, V-204521, V-204524, V-204531, V-204536, V-204537, V-204538, V-204539, V-204540, V-204541, V-204542, V-204543, V-204544, V-204545, V-204546, V-204547, V-204548, V-204549, V-204550, V-204551, V-204552, V-204553, V-204554, V-204555, V-204556, V-204557, V-204558, V-204559, V-204560, V-204562, V-204563, V-204564, V-204565, V-204566, V-204567, V-204568, V-204572, V-204584, V-204609, V-204610, V-204611, V-204612, V-204613, V-204614, V-204615, V-204616, V-204617, V-204625, V-204630, V-255927, V-237634, V-237635, V-251703, V-204449, V-204450, V-204451, V-204619, V-204579, V-204631, V-204633, and V-256970

RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 13

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Category III (Low) vulnerabilities, plus:

- **RHEL 8/CentOS 8/AL 2023**

V-230257, V-230258, V-230259, V-230550, V-230248, V-230249, V-230250, V-230245, V-230246, V-230247, V-230397, V-230399, V-230400, V-230401, V-230228, V-230298, V-230387, V-230231, V-230233, V-230324, V-230365, V-230370, V-230378, V-230383, V-230236, V-230314, V-230315, V-244523, V-230266, V-230267, V-230268, V-230280, V-230310, V-230311, V-230312, V-230502, V-230532, V-230535, V-230536, V-230537, V-230538, V-230539, V-230540, V-230541, V-230542, V-230543, V-230544, V-230545, V-230546, V-230547, V-230548, V-230549, V-244550, V-244551, V-244552, V-244553, V-244554, V-250317, V-251718, V-230237, V-230313, V-230356, V-230357, V-230358, V-230359, V-230360, V-230361, V-230362, V-230363, V-230368, V-230369, V-230375, V-230376, V-230377, V-244524, V-244533, V-251713, V-251717, V-251714, V-251715, V-251716, V-230332, V-230334, V-230336, V-230338, V-230340, V-230342, V-230344, V-230333, V-230335, V-230337, V-230339, V-230341, V-230343, V-230345, V-230240, V-230282, V-250315, V-250316, V-230255, V-230277, V-230278, V-230348, V-230353, V-230386, V-230390, V-230392, V-230394, V-230396, V-230393, V-230398, V-230402, V-230403, V-230404, V-230405, V-230406, V-230407, V-230408, V-230409, V-230410, V-230411, V-230412, V-230413, V-230418, V-230419, V-230421, V-230422, V-230423, V-230424, V-230425, V-230426, V-230427, V-230428, V-230429, V-230430, V-230431, V-230432, V-230433, V-230434, V-230435, V-230436, V-230437, V-230438, V-230439,

V-230444, V-230446, V-230447, V-230448, V-230449, V-230455, V-230456, V-230462, V-230463, V-230464, V-230465, V-230466, V-230467, V-230471, V-230472, V-230473, V-230474, V-230480, V-230483, V-244542, V-230503, V-230244, V-230286, V-230287, V-230288, V-230290, V-230291, V-230296, V-230330, V-230382, V-230526, V-230527, V-230555, V-230556, V-244526, V-244528, V-237642, V-237643, V-251711, V-230238, V-230239, V-230273, V-230275, V-230478, V-230488, V-230489, V-230559, V-230560, V-230561, V-237640, and V-256974

Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 13

V-219188, V-219190, V-219191, V-219198, V-219199, V-219200, V-219201, V-219202, V-219203, V-219204, V-219205, V-219206, V-219207, V-219208, V-219209, V-219303, V-219326, V-219328, V-219330, V-219342, V-219189, V-219192, V-219193, V-219194, V-219315, V-219195, V-219196, V-219197, V-219213, V-219214, V-219215, V-219216, V-219217, V-219218, V-219219, V-219220, V-219221, V-219222, V-219223, V-219224, V-219227, V-219228, V-219229, V-219230, V-219231, V-219232, V-219233, V-219234, V-219235, V-219236, V-219238, V-219239, V-219240, V-219241, V-219242, V-219243, V-219244, V-219250, V-219254, V-219257, V-219263, V-219264, V-219265, V-219266, V-219267, V-219268, V-219269, V-219270, V-219271, V-219272, V-219273, V-219274, V-219275, V-219276, V-219277, V-219279, V-219281, V-219287, V-219291, V-219297, V-219298, V-219299, V-219300, V-219309, V-219310, V-219311, V-219312, V-233779, V-233780, V-255906, V-219336, V-219338, V-219344, V-219181, V-219184, V-219186, V-219155, V-219156, V-219160, V-219306, V-219149, V-219166, V-219176, V-219339, V-219331, V-219337, and V-219335

Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 11

V-238205, V-238207, V-238329, V-238337, V-238339, V-238340, V-238344, V-238345, V-238346, V-238347, V-238348, V-238349, V-238350, V-238351, V-238352, V-238376, V-238377, V-238378, V-238209, V-238325, V-238330, V-238333, V-238369, V-238338, V-238341, V-238342, V-238343, V-238324, V-238353, V-238228, V-238225, V-238227, V-238299, V-238238, V-238239, V-238240, V-238241, V-238242, V-238244, V-238245, V-238246, V-238247, V-238248, V-238249, V-238250, V-238251, V-238252, V-238253, V-238254, V-238255, V-238256, V-238257, V-238258, V-238264, V-238268, V-238271, V-238277, V-238278, V-238279, V-238280, V-238281, V-238282, V-238283, V-238284, V-238285, V-238286, V-238287, V-238288, V-238289, V-238290, V-238291, V-238292, V-238293, V-238294, V-238295, V-238297, V-238300, V-238301, V-238302, V-238304, V-238309, V-238310, V-238315, V-238316, V-238317, V-238318, V-238319, V-238320,

V-251505, V-238360, V-238211, V-238212, V-238213, V-238216, V-238220, V-255912, V-238355, V-238236, V-238303, V-238358, V-238356, V-238359, V-238370, and V-238334

Linux STIG High (Category I)

The following list contains STIG settings that Amazon EC2 supports to your infrastructure. If a supported setting isn't applicable for your infrastructure, Amazon EC2 skips that setting, and moves on. For example, some STIG hardening settings might not apply to standalone servers. Organization-specific policies can also affect which settings apply, such as a requirement for administrators to review document settings.

For a complete list, see the [STIGs Document Library](#). For information about how to view the complete list, see [STIG Viewing Tools](#).

Note

The Linux STIG High category includes all of the listed STIG hardening settings that apply for Linux STIG Medium and Low categories, in addition to the STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Category I vulnerabilities.

RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 14

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Categories II and III (Medium and Low) vulnerabilities, plus:

- **RHEL 7/CentOS 7**

V-204425, V-204594, V-204455, V-204424, V-204442, V-204443, V-204447, V-204448, V-204502, V-204620, and V-204621

- **AL2:**

V-204425, V-204594, V-204455, V-204424, V-204442, V-204443, V-204447, V-204448, V-204502, V-204620, and V-204621

RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 13

Includes all STIG hardening settings that Amazon EC2 supports for Categories II and III (Medium and Low) vulnerabilities, plus:

- **RHEL 8/CentOS 8/AL 2023**

V-230265, V-230529, V-230531, V-230264, V-230487, V-230492, V-230533, and V-230558

Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 13

V-219157, V-219158, V-219177, V-219212 V-219308, V-219314, V-219316, and V-251507

Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 11

V-238218, V-238219, V-238201, V-238326, V-238327, V-238380 and V-251504

Linux STIG version history

This section logs Linux component version history for the quarterly STIG updates. To see the changes and published versions for a quarter, choose the title to expand the information.

2024 Q1 changes - 02/06/2024:

Updated STIG versions and applied STIGS for the 2024 first quarter release as follows:

STIG-Build-Linux-Low version 2024.1.x

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 14
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 13
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 13
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 11

STIG-Build-Linux-Medium version 2024.1.x

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 14
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 13
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 13
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 11

STIG-Build-Linux-High version 2024.1.x

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 14
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 13

- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 13
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 11

2023 Q4 changes - 12/07/2023:

Updated STIG versions and applied STIGS for the 2023 fourth quarter release as follows:

STIG-Build-Linux-Low version 2023.4.x

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 13
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 12
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 12
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 10

STIG-Build-Linux-Medium version 2023.4.x

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 13
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 12
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 12
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 10

STIG-Build-Linux-High version 2023.4.x

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 13
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 12
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 12
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 10

2023 Q3 changes - 10/04/2023:

Updated STIG versions and applied STIGS for the 2023 third quarter release as follows:

Linux STIG Low (Category III)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 12
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 11

- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 11
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 9

Linux STIG Medium (Category II)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 12
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 11
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 11
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 9

Linux STIG High (Category I)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 12
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 11
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 11
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 9

2023 Q2 changes - 05/03/2023:

Updated STIG versions and applied STIGS for the 2023 second quarter release as follows:

Linux STIG Low (Category III)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 11
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 10
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 11
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 8

Linux STIG Medium (Category II)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 11
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 10
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 11
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 8

Linux STIG High (Category I)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 11
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 10
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 11
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 8

2023 Q1 changes - 03/27/2023:

Updated STIG versions and applied STIGS for the 2023 first quarter release as follows:

Linux STIG Low (Category III)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 10
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 9
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 10
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 7

Linux STIG Medium (Category II)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 10
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 9
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 10
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 7

Linux STIG High (Category I)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 10
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 9
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 10
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 7

2022 Q4 changes - 02/01/2023:

Updated STIG versions and applied STIGS for the 2022 fourth quarter release as follows:

Linux STIG Low (Category III)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 9
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 8
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 9
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 6

Linux STIG Medium (Category II)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 9
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 8
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 9
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 6

Linux STIG High (Category I)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 9
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 8
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 9
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 6

2022 Q3 changes - 09/30/2022 (no changes):

There were no changes for Linux component STIGS for the 2022 third quarter release.

2022 Q2 changes - 08/02/2022:

Introduced Ubuntu support, updated STIG versions and applied STIGS for the 2022 second quarter release as follows:

Linux STIG Low (Category III)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 7
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 6
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 6 (new)

- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 4 (new)

Linux STIG Medium (Category II)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 7
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 6
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 6 (new)
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 4 (new)

Linux STIG High (Category I)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 7
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 6
- Ubuntu 18.04 STIG Version 2 Release 6 (new)
- Ubuntu 20.04 STIG Version 1 Release 4 (new)

2022 Q1 changes - 04/26/2022:

Refactored to include better support for containers. Combined the previous AL2 script with RHEL 7. Updated STIG versions and applied STIGS for the 2022 first quarter release as follows:

Linux STIG Low (Category III)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 6
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 5

Linux STIG Medium (Category II)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 6
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 5

Linux STIG High (Category I)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 6
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 5

2021 Q4 changes - 12/20/2021:

Updated STIG versions, and applied STIGS for the 2021 fourth quarter release as follows:

Linux STIG Low (Category III)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 5
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 4

Linux STIG Medium (Category II)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 5
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 4

Linux STIG High (Category I)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 5
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 4

2021 Q3 changes - 09/30/2021:

Updated STIG versions, and applied STIGS for the 2021 third quarter release as follows:

Linux STIG Low (Category III)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 4
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 3

Linux STIG Medium (Category II)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 4
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 3

Linux STIG High (Category I)

- RHEL 7 STIG Version 3 Release 4
- RHEL 8 STIG Version 1 Release 3

AWSEC2-PatchLoadBalancerInstance

Description

Upgrade and patch minor version of an Amazon EC2 instance (Windows or Linux) attached to any load balancer (classic, ALB, or NLB). The default connection draining time is applied before the instance is patched. You can override the wait time by entering your custom draining time in minutes (1-59) for the **ConnectionDrainTime** parameter.

The automation workflow is as follows:

1. The load balancer or target group to which the instance is attached is determined, and the instance is verified as healthy.
2. The instance is removed from the load balancer or target group.
3. The automation waits for the period of time specified for the connection draining time.
4. The [AWS-RunPatchBaseline](#) automation is called to patch the instance.
5. The instance is reattached to the load balancer or target group.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document Type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Prerequisites

- Verify that SSM Agent is installed on your instance. For more information, see [Working with SSM Agent on EC2 instances for Windows Server](#).

Parameters

- **InstanceId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) ID of the instance to patch that is associated with a load balancer (classic, ALB, or NLB).

- **ConnectionDrainTime**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The connection draining time of the load balancer, in minutes (1-59).

AWSEC2-SQLServerDBRestore

Description

The AWSEC2-SQLServerDBRestore runbook restores Microsoft SQL Server database backups stored in Amazon S3 to SQL Server 2017 running on an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2) Linux instance. You may provide your own EC2 instance running SQL Server 2017 Linux. If an EC2 instance is not provided, the automation launches and configures a new Ubuntu 16.04 EC2 instance with SQL Server 2017. The automation supports restoring full, differential, and transactional log backups. This automation accepts multiple database backup files and automatically restores the most recent valid backup of each database in the files provided.

To automate both backup and restore of an on-premises SQL Server database to an EC2 instance running SQL Server 2017 Linux, you can use the AWS-signed PowerShell script [MigrateSQLServerToEC2Linux](#).

 **Important**

This runbook resets the SQL Server server administrator (SA) user password every time the automation runs. After the automation is complete, you must set your own SA user password again before you connect to the SQL Server instance.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document Type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Prerequisites

To run this automation, you must meet the following prerequisites:

- The IAM user or role that runs this automation must have an inline policy attached with the permissions outlined in [Required IAM permissions](#).
- If you provide your own EC2 instance:
 - The EC2 instance that you provide must be a Linux instance running Microsoft SQL Server 2017.
 - The EC2 instance that you provide must be configured with an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) instance profile that has the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy attached. For more information, see [Create an IAM instance profile for Systems Manager](#).
 - The SSM Agent must be installed on your EC2 instance. For more information, see [Installing and configuring SSM Agent on EC2 instances for Linux](#).
 - The EC2 instance must have enough free disk space to download and restore the SQL Server backups.

Limitations

This automation does not support restoring to SQL Server running on EC2 instances for Windows Server. This automation only restores database backups that are compatible with SQL Server Linux 2017. For more information, see [Editions and Supported Features of SQL Server 2017 on Linux](#).

Parameters

This automation has the following parameters:

- **DatabaseNames**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Comma-separated list of the names of databases to restore.

- **DataDirectorySize**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Desired volume size (GiB) of the SQL Server Data directory for the new EC2 instance.

Default value: 100

- **KeyPair**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Key pair to use when creating the new EC2 instance.

- **IamInstanceProfileName**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The IAM instance profile to attach to the new EC2 instance. The IAM instance profile must have the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy attached.

- **InstanceId**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The instance running SQL Server 2017 on Linux. If no InstanceId is provided, the automation launches a new EC2 instance using the InstanceType and SQLServerEdition provided.

- **InstanceType**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The instance type of the EC2 instance to be launched.

- **IsS3PresignedUrl**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) If S3Input is a pre-signed S3 URL, indicate yes.

Default value: no

- **LogDirectorySize**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Desired volume size (GiB) of the SQL Server Log directory for the new EC2 instance.

Default value: 100

- **S3Input**

Type: String

Description: (Required) S3 bucket name, comma-separated list of S3 object keys, or comma-separated list of pre-signed S3 URLs containing the SQL backup files to be restored.

- **SQLServerEdition**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The edition of SQL Server 2017 to be installed on the newly created EC2 instance.

Valid values: Standard | Enterprise | Web | Express

- **SubnetId**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The subnet in which to launch the new EC2 instance. The subnet must have outbound connectivity to AWS services. If a value for SubnetId is not provided, the automation uses the default subnet.

- **TempDbDirectorySize**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Desired volume size (GiB) of the SQL Server TempDB directory for the new EC2 instance.

Default value: 100

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to successfully use the runbook.

```
{  
    "Version": "2012-10-17",  
    "Statement": [  
        {  
            "Effect": "Allow",  
            "Action": [  
                "ec2:CreateTags",  
                "ec2:DescribeImages",  
                "ec2:DescribeInstanceStatus",  
                "ec2:DescribeInstances",  
                "ec2:RebootInstances",  
                "ec2:RunInstances",  
                "ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation",  
                "ssm:GetAutomationExecution",  
                "ssm>ListCommandInvocations",  
                "ssm>ListCommands",  
                "ssm:SendCommand",  
                "ssm:StartAutomationExecution"  
            ],  
            "Resource": "*"  
        },  
        {  
            "Effect": "Allow",  
            "Action": "iam:PassRole",  
            "Resource": "arn:aws:iam::ACCOUNTID:role/ROLENAME"  
        }  
    ]  
}
```

Document Steps

To use this automation, follow the steps that apply to your instance type:

For new EC2 instances:

1. aws:executeAwsApi - Retrieve the AMI ID for SQL Server 2017 on Ubuntu 16.04.
2. aws:runInstances - Launch a new EC2 instance for Linux.

3. `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Wait for the newly created EC2 instance to be ready.
4. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Reboot the instance if the instance is not ready.
5. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verify that SSM Agent is installed.
6. `aws:runCommand` - Run the SQL Server restore script in PowerShell.

For existing EC2 instances:

1. `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Verify that the EC2 instance is ready.
2. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Reboot the instance if the instance is not ready.
3. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verify that SSM Agent is installed.
4. `aws:runCommand` - Run the SQL Server restore script in PowerShell.

Outputs

`getInstance.InstanceId`

`restoreToNewInstance.Output`

`restoreToExistingInstance.Output`

AWS Support - ActivateWindowsWithAmazonLicense

Description

The AWSSupport-ActivateWindowsWithAmazonLicense runbook activates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance for Windows Server with a license provided by Amazon. The automation verifies and configures required key management service operating system settings and attempts activation. This includes operating system routes to Amazon's key management servers and key management service operating system settings. Setting the `AllowOffline` parameter to true allows the automation to successfully target instances that are not managed by AWS Systems Manager, but requires a stop and start of the instance.

Note

This runbook cannot be used on Bring Your Own License (BYOL) model Windows Server instances. For information about using your own license, see [Microsoft Licensing on AWS](#).

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Windows

Parameters

- AllowOffline

Type: String

Valid values: true | false

Default: false

Description: (Optional) Set it to true if you allow an offline Windows activation remediation in case the online troubleshooting fails, or if the provided instance is not a managed instance.

Important

The offline method requires that the provided EC2 instance be stopped and then started. Data stored in instance store volumes will be lost. The public IP address will change if you are not using an Elastic IP.

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- ForceActivation

Type: String

Valid values: true | false

Default: false

Description: (Optional) Set it to true if you want to proceed even if Windows is already activated.

- `InstanceId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) ID of your managed EC2 instance for Windows Server.

- `SubnetId`

Type: String

Default: CreateNewVPC

Description: (Optional) Offline only - The subnet ID for the EC2Rescue instance used to perform the offline troubleshooting. Use `SelectedInstanceSubnet` to use the same subnet as your instance, or use `CreateNewVPC` to create a new VPC. **IMPORTANT:** The subnet must be in the same Availability Zone as `InstanceId`, and it must allow access to the SSM endpoints.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

We recommend that the EC2 instance receiving the command has an IAM role with the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** Amazon managed policy attached. You must have at least **ssm:StartAutomationExecution** and **ssm:SendCommand** to run the automation and send the command to the instance, plus **ssm:GetAutomationExecution** to be able to read the automation output. For the offline remediation, see the permissions needed by `AWSStartEC2RescueWorkflow`.

Document Steps

1. `aws :assertAwsResourceProperty` - Check the provided instance's platform is Windows.

2. `aws :assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirm the provided instance is a managed instance:
 - a. (Online activation fix) If the input instance is a managed instance, then run `aws :runCommand` to run the PowerShell script to attempt to fix Windows activation.
 - b. (Offline activation fix) If the input instance is not a managed instance:
 - i. `aws :assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the `AllowOffline` flag is set to `true`. If so, the offline fix starts; otherwise the automation ends.
 - ii. `aws :executeAutomation` - Invoke `AWSsupport-StartEC2RescueWorkflow` with the Windows activation offline fix script. The script uses either `EC2Config` or `EC2Launch`, depending on the OS version.
 - iii. `aws :executeAwsApi` - Read the result from `AWSsupport-StartEC2RescueWorkflow`.

Outputs

`activateWindows.Output`

`getActivateWindowsOfflineResult.Output`

AWSSupport-AnalyzeAWSEndpointReachabilityFromEC2

Description

The `AWSSupport-AnalyzeAWSEndpointReachabilityFromEC2` runbook analyzes connectivity from an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance or elastic network interface to an AWS service endpoint. IPv6 is not supported. The runbook uses the value that you specify for the `ServiceEndpoint` parameter to analyze connectivity to an endpoint. If an AWS PrivateLink endpoint can't be found in your VPC, the runbook uses a public IP address for the service in the current AWS Region. This automation uses Reachability Analyzer from Amazon Virtual Private Cloud. For more information, see [What is Reachability Analyzer?](#), in *Reachability Analyzer*.

This automation checks the following:

- Checks whether your virtual private cloud (VPC) is configured to use the Amazon provided DNS server.
- Checks whether an AWS PrivateLink endpoint exists in the VPC for the AWS service that you specify. If an endpoint is found, the automation verifies that the `privateDns` attribute is turned on.
- Checks if the AWS PrivateLink endpoint is using the default endpoint policy.

Considerations

- You are charged per analysis run between a source and destination. For more information, see [Amazon VPC Pricing](#).
- During the automation, a network insights path and network insights analysis are created. If the automation completes successfully, the runbook deletes these resources . If the cleanup step fails, the network insights path is not deleted by the runbook and you will need to delete it manually. If you don't delete the network insights path manually, it continues to count towards the quota for your AWS account. For more information about quotas for Reachability Analyzer, see [Quotas for Reachability Analyzer](#) in *Reachability Analyzer*.
- Operating system-level configurations such as the use of a proxy, local DNS resolver, or hosts file can affect connectivity even if the Reachability Analyzer returns PASS.
- Review the evaluation of all checks performed by the Reachability Analyzer. If any of the checks return with a status of FAIL, that might affect connectivity even if the overall reachability check returns a status of PASS.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **Source**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance or the network interface from which you want to analyze reachability.

- **ServiceEndpoint**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The hostname of the service endpoint that you want to analyze reachability to.

- **RetainVpcReachabilityAnalysis**

Type: String

Default: false

Description: (Optional) Determines whether the network insight path and related analysis created are retained. By default, the resources used for analyze reachability are deleted after successful analysis. If you choose to retain the analysis, the runbook does not delete the analysis and you can visualize it in the Amazon VPC console. A console link is available in the automation output.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ec2:CreateNetworkInsightsPath`
- `ec2:DeleteNetworkInsightsAnalysis`
- `ec2:DeleteNetworkInsightsPath`
- `ec2:DescribeAvailabilityZones`
- `ec2:DescribeCustomerGateways`
- `ec2:DescribeDhcpOptions`
- `ec2:DescribeInstances`
- `ec2:DescribeInternetGateways`

- `ec2:DescribeManagedPrefixLists`
- `ec2:DescribeNatGateways`
- `ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls`
- `ec2:DescribeNetworkInsightsAnalyses`
- `ec2:DescribeNetworkInsightsPaths`
- `ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces`
- `ec2:DescribePrefixLists`
- `ec2:DescribeRegions`
- `ec2:DescribeRouteTables`
- `ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups`
- `ec2:DescribeSubnets`
- `ec2:DescribeTransitGatewayAttachments`
- `ec2:DescribeTransitGatewayPeeringAttachments`
- `ec2:DescribeTransitGatewayConnects`
- `ec2:DescribeTransitGatewayRouteTables`
- `ec2:DescribeTransitGateways`
- `ec2:DescribeTransitGatewayVpcAttachments`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcAttribute`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcEndpoints`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcEndpointServiceConfigurations`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcPeeringConnections`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcs`
- `ec2:DescribeVpnConnections`
- `ec2:DescribeVpnGateways`
- `ec2:GetManagedPrefixListEntries`
- `ec2:GetTransitGatewayRouteTablePropagations`
- `ec2:SearchTransitGatewayRoutes`
- `ec2:StartNetworkInsightsAnalysis`
- `elasticloadbalancing:DescribeListeners`

- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancers
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeRules
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeTags
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeTargetGroups
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeTargetHealth
- tiros>CreateQuery
- tiros:GetQueryAnswer
- tiros:GetQueryExplanation

Document Steps

1. aws:executeScript: Validates the service endpoint by attempting to resolve the hostname.
2. aws:executeScript: Gathers details about the VPC and subnet.
3. aws:executeScript: Evaluates the DNS configuration of the VPC.
4. aws:executeScript: Evaluates the VPC endpoint checks.
5. aws:executeScript: Locates an internet gateway to connect to the public service endpoint.
6. aws:executeScript: Determines the destination to be used for reachability analysis.
7. aws:executeScript: Analyzes the reachability from source to the endpoint using Reachability Analyzer and cleans up the resources if the analysis is successful.
8. aws:executeScript: Generates a reachability evaluation report.
9. aws:executeScript: Generates the output in JSON.

Outputs

- generateReport.EvalReport - The results of the checks performed by the automation in text format.
- generateJsonOutput.Output - A minimal version of the results in JSON format.

AWSPremiumSupport-ChangeInstanceTypeIntelToAMD

Description

The `AWSPremiumSupport-ChangeInstanceTypeIntelToAMD` runbook automates migrations from Intel powered Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances to the equivalent AMD powered instance types. This runbook supports general purpose (M), burstable general purpose (T), compute optimized (C), and memory optimized (R) instances built on the Nitro system. This runbook can be used on instances that aren't managed by Systems Manager.

To reduce the potential risk of data loss and downtime, the runbook checks the instance's stop behavior, whether the instance is in an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group, the health of the instance, and that the equivalent AMD powered instance type is available in the same Availability Zone. By default, this runbook will not change the instance type if instance store volumes are attached, or if the instance is part of an AWS CloudFormation stack. If you want to change this behavior, specify yes for either of the `AllowInstanceStoreInstances` and `AllowCloudFormationInstances` parameters.

 **Important**

Access to `AWSPremiumSupport-*` runbooks requires either an Enterprise or Business Support Subscription. For more information, see [Compare AWS Support Plans](#).

Considerations

- We recommend backing up your instance before using this runbook.
- Changing the instance type requires the runbook to stop your instance. When an instance is stopped, any data stored in the RAM or the instance store volumes is lost, and the automatic public IPv4 address is released. For more information, see [Stop and start your instance](#).
- If you don't specify a value for the `TargetInstanceType` parameter, the runbook attempts to identify the equivalent AMD instance in terms of virtual CPUs and memory within the same instance family. The runbook ends if it is not able to identify an equivalent AMD instance type.
- By using the `DryRun` option, you can capture the equivalent AMD instance type, and validate requirements without actually changing the instance type.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Acknowledge

Type: String

Description: (Required) Enter yes to acknowledge that your target instance will be stopped if it's running.

- Instanceld

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of Amazon EC2 instance whose type you want to change.

- TargetInstanceType

Type: String

Default: automatic

Description: (Optional) The AMD instance type you want to change your instance to. The default automatic value uses the equivalent instance type in terms of virtual CPUs and memory. For example, an m5.large would be changed to m5a.large.

- AllowInstanceStoreInstances

Type: String

Valid values: no | yes

Default: no

Description: (Optional) If you specify yes, the runbook runs on instances that have instance store volumes attached.

- AllowCloudFormationInstances

Type: String

Valid values: no | yes

Default: no

Description: (Optional) If set to yes, the runbook runs on instances that are part of a AWS CloudFormation stack.

- AllowCrossGeneration

Type: String

Valid values: no | yes

Default: no

Description: (Optional) If set to yes, the runbook attempts to find the newest equivalent AMD instance type within the same instance family.

- DryRun

Type: String

Valid values: no | yes

Default: no

Description: (Optional) If set to yes, the runbook returns the equivalent AMD instance type and validates migration requirements without making changes to the instance type.

- SleepWait

Type: String

Default: PT3S

Description: (Optional) The time the runbook should wait before starting a new automation. The value you provide for this parameter must match the ISO 8601 standard. For more information about creating ISO 8601 strings, see [Formatting date and time strings for Systems Manager](#).

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:DescribeAutomationExecutions
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ec2:GetInstanceTypesFromInstanceRequirements
- ec2:DescribeInstanceAttribute
- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeInstanceStatus
- ec2:DescribeInstanceTypeOfferings
- ec2:DescribeInstanceTypes
- ec2:DescribeTags
- ec2:ModifyInstanceAttribute
- ec2:StartInstances
- ec2:StopInstances

Document Steps

1. aws:assertAwsResourceProperty: Confirms the status of the target Amazon EC2 instance is running, pending, stopped, or stopping. Otherwise, the automation ends.
2. aws:executeAwsApi: Gathers properties from the target Amazon EC2 instance.
3. aws:branch: Branches the automation based on the state of the Amazon EC2 instance.
 - a. If stopped or stopping, the automation runs aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty until the Amazon EC2 instance is fully stopped.

- b. If running or pending, the automation runs `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` until the Amazon EC2 instance passes status checks.
4. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty`: Confirms the Amazon EC2 instance is not part of an Auto Scaling group by checking if the `aws:autoscaling:groupName` tag is applied.
5. `aws:executeAwsApi`: Gathers the current instance type properties to find the equivalent AMD instance type.
6. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty`: Confirms a AWS Marketplace product code is not associated with the Amazon EC2 instance. Some products are not available on all instance types.
7. `aws:branch`: Branches the automation depending on whether you want the automation to check if the Amazon EC2 instance is part of a AWS CloudFormation stack
 - a. If the `aws:cloudformation:stack-name` tag is applied to the instance, the automation runs `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` to confirm the instance is not part of a AWS CloudFormation stack.
8. `aws:branch`: Branches the automation based on whether the instance root volume type is Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS).
9. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty`: Confirms the instance shutdown behavior is stop and not terminate.
10. `aws:executeScript`: Confirms there is only one automation of this runbook targeting the current instance. If another automation is already in progress targeting the same instance, it returns an error and ends.
11. `aws:executeAwsApi`: Returns a list of the AMD instance types with same amount of memory and vCPUs.
12. `aws:executeScript`: Checks if the current instance type is supported and returns its equivalent AMD instance type. If there is no equivalent, the automation ends.
13. `aws:executeScript`: Confirms the AMD instance type is available in the same Availability Zone, and verifies the provided IAM permissions.
14. `aws:branch`: Branches the automation based on whether the `DryRun` parameter value is yes.
15. `aws:branch`: Checks if the original and the target instance type are the same. If they're the same, the automation ends.
16. `aws:executeAwsApi`: Gets the current instance state.
17. `aws:changeInstanceState`: Stops the Amazon EC2 instance.
18. `aws:changeInstanceState`: Forces the instance to stop if it's stuck in stopping state.
19. `aws:executeAwsApi`: Changes the instance type to the target AMD instance type.

20aws :sleep: Waits 3 seconds after changing the instance type for eventual consistency.

21aws :branch: Branches the automation based on the previous instance state. If it was running, the instance is started.

- a. aws :changeInstanceState: Starts the Amazon EC2 instance if it was running before changing the instance type.
- b. aws :waitForAwsResourceProperty: Waits for the Amazon EC2 instance to pass status checks. If the instance doesn't pass status checks, the instance is changed back to its original instance type.
- i. aws :changeInstanceState: Stops the Amazon EC2 instance before changing it to its original instance type.
- ii. aws :changeInstanceState: Forces the Amazon EC2 instance to stop before changing it to its original instance type in case it gets stuck in a stopping state.
- iii. aws :executeAwsApi: Changes Amazon EC2 instance to its original type.
- iv. aws :sleep: Waits 3 seconds after changing instance type for eventual consistency.
- v. aws :changeInstanceState: Starts the Amazon EC2 instance if it was running before changing the instance type.
- vi. aws :waitForAwsResourceProperty: Waits for the Amazon EC2 instance to pass status checks.

22aws :sleep: Waits before ending the runbook.

AWSsupport -CheckXenToNitroMigrationRequirements

Description

The AWSsupport -CheckXenToNitroMigrationRequirements runbook verifies that an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance meets the prerequisites to successfully change the instance type from a Xen type instance to Nitro-based instance type. This automation checks the following:

- The root device is an Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) volume.
- The enaSupport attribute is enabled.
- The ENA module is installed on the instance.
- The NVMe module is installed on the instance. If yes, the module is installed and a script verifies that the module is loaded in the initramfs image.

- Analyzes /etc/fstab and looks for block devices being mounted using device names.
- Determines whether the operating system (OS) uses predictable network interface names by default.

This runbook supports the following operating systems:

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux
- CentOS
- Amazon Linux 2
- Amazon Linux
- Debian Server
- Ubuntu Server
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 15 SP2
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP5

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on

your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `Instanceld`

Type: String

Default: false

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance which you want to check prerequisites for before migrating to a Nitro-based instance type.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:DescribeAutomationExecutions`
- `ssm:DescribeAutomationStepExecutions`
- `ssm:DescribeAutomationStepExecutions`
- `ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation`
- `ssm:DescribeInstanceProperties`
- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetDocument`
- `ssm>ListCommands`
- `ssm>ListCommandInvocations`
- `ssm>ListDocuments`
- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:SendCommand`
- `iam>ListRoles`
- `ec2:DescribeInstances`
- `ec2:DescribeInstancesTypes`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers details about the instance.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers information about the hypervisor for the instance.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on whether the target instance is already running a Nitro-based instance type.
- `aws:branch` - Checks whether the instance's OS is supported by Nitro-based instances.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the instance you specified is managed by Systems Manager, and that the status is `Online`.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on whether the root device of the instance is an Amazon EBS volume.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on whether the ENA attribute is enabled for the instance.
- `aws:runCommand` - Checks for ENA drivers on the instance.
- `aws:runCommand` - Checks for NVMe drivers on the instance.
- `aws:runCommand` - Checks the `fstab` file for unrecognized formats.
- `aws:runCommand` - Checks for predictable interface name configuration on the instance.
- `aws:executeScript` - Generates output based on previous steps.

Outputs

`finalOutput.output` - The results of the checks performed by the automation.

AWSsupport-ConfigureEC2Metadata

Description

This runbook helps you configure instance metadata service (IMDS) options for Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances. Using this runbook, you can configure the following:

- Enforce the use of IMDSv2 for instance metadata.
- Configure the `HttpPutResponseHopLimit` value.
- Allow or deny instance metadata access.

For more information about instance metadata, see [Configuring the Instance Metadata Service](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances*.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- EnforceIMDSv2

Type: String

Valid values: required | optional

Default: optional

Description: (Optional) Enforce IMDSv2. If you choose required, the Amazon EC2 instance will only use IMDSv2. If you choose optional, you can choose between IMDSv1 and IMDSv2 for metadata access.

⚠ Important

If you enforce IMDSv2, applications that use IMDSv1 might not function correctly.

Before enforcing IMDSv2, make sure your applications that use IMDS are upgraded to a version that support IMDSv2. For information about Instance Metadata Service Version 2 (IMDSv2), see [Configuring the Instance Metadata Service](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances*.

- **HttpPutResponseHopLimit**

Type: Integer

Valid values: 0-64

Default: 0

Description: (Optional) The desired HTTP PUT response hop limit value (1-64) for instance metadata requests. This value controls the number of hops that the PUT response can traverse. To prevent the response from traveling outside of the instance, specify 1 for the parameter value.

- **Instanceld**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance whose metadata settings you want to configure.

- **MetadataAccess**

Type: String

Valid values: enabled | disabled

Default: enabled

Description: (Optional) Allow or deny instance metadata access in the Amazon EC2 instance. If you specify disabled, all other parameters will be ignored and the metadata access will be denied for the instance.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- **ec2:DescribeInstances**
- **ec2:ModifyInstanceMetadataOptions**
- **ssm:GetAutomationExecution**
- **ssm:StartAutomationExecution**

Document Steps

1. `branchOnMetadataAccess` - Branches automation based on the value of `MetadataAccess` parameter.
2. `disableMetadataAccess` - Calls the `ModifyInstanceStateMetadataOptions` API action to disable metadata endpoint access.
3. `branchOnHttpPutResponseHopLimit` - Branches automation based on the value of `HttpPutResponseHopLimit` parameter.
4. `maintainHopLimitAndConfigureIMDSVersion` - If `HttpPutResponseHopLimit` is 0, maintains current hop limit and changes other metadata options.
5. `waitBeforeAssertingIMDSv2State` - Waits 30 seconds before asserting IMDSv2 status.
6. `setHopLimitAndConfigureIMDSVersion` - If `HttpPutResponseHopLimit` is greater than 0, configures the metadata options using the given input parameters.
7. `waitBeforeAssertingHopLimit` - Waits 30 seconds before asserting metadata options.
8. `assertHopLimit` - Asserts the `HttpPutResponseHopLimit` property is set to the value you specified.
9. `branchVerificationOnIMDSv2Option` - Branches verification based on the value of `EnforceIMDSv2` parameter.
10. `assertIMDSv2IsOptional` - Asserts `HttpTokens` value set to optional.
11. `assertIMDSv2IsEnforced` - Asserts `HttpTokens` value set to required.
12. `waitBeforeAssertingMetadataState` - Waits 30 seconds before asserting the metadata state is disabled.
13. `assertMetadataIsDisabled` - Asserts metadata is disabled.
14. `describeMetadataOptions` - Gets the metadata options after the changes you've specified have been applied.

Outputs

`describeMetadataOptions.State`

`describeMetadataOptions.MetadataAccess`

`describeMetadataOptions.IMDSv2`

`describeMetadataOptions.HttpPutResponseHopLimit`

AWSsupport-CopyEC2Instance

Description

The AWSsupport-CopyEC2Instance runbook provides an automated solution for the procedure outlined in the Knowledge Center article [How do I move my EC2 instance to another subnet, Availability Zone, or VPC?](#) The automation branches depending on the values you specify for the Region and SubnetId parameters.

If you specify a value for the SubnetId parameter but not a value for the Region parameter, the automation creates an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) of the target instance and launches a new instance from the AMI in the subnet you specified.

If you specify a value for the SubnetId parameter and the Region parameter, the automation creates an AMI of the target instance, copies the AMI to the AWS Region you specified, and launches a new instance from the AMI in the subnet you specified.

If you specify a value for the Region parameter but not a value for the SubnetId parameter, the automation creates an AMI of the target instance, copies the AMI to the Region you specified, and launches a new instance from the AMI in the default subnet of your virtual private cloud (VPC) in the destination Region.

If no value is specified for either the Region or SubnetId parameters, the automation creates an AMI of the target instance, and launches a new instance from the AMI in the default subnet of your VPC.

To copy an AMI to a different Region, you must provide a value for the AutomationAssumeRole parameter. If the automation times out during the waitForAvailableDestinationAmi step, the AMI might still be copying. If this is the case, you can wait for the copy to complete and launch the instance manually.

Before running this automation, note the following:

- AMIs are based on Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) snapshots. For large file systems without a previous snapshot, AMI creation can take several hours. To decrease the AMI creation time, create an Amazon EBS snapshot before you create the AMI.
- Creating an AMI doesn't create a snapshot for instance store volumes on the instance. For information about backing up instance store volumes to Amazon EBS, see [How do I back up an instance store volume on my Amazon EC2 instance to Amazon EBS?](#)

- The new Amazon EC2 instance has a different private IPv4 or public IPv6 IP address. You must update all references to the old IP addresses (for example, in DNS entries) with the new IP addresses that are assigned to the new instance. If you're using an Elastic IP address on your source instance, be sure to attach it to the new instance.
- Domain security identifier (SID) conflict issues can occur when the copy launches and tries to contact the domain. Before you capture the AMI, use Sysprep or remove the domain-joined instance from the domain to prevent conflict issues. For more information, see [How can I use Sysprep to create and install custom reusable Windows AMIs?](#)

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Important

We do not recommend using this runbook to copy Microsoft Active Directory Domain Controller instances.

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- InstanceId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the instance that you want to copy.

- KeyPair

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The key pair you want to associate with the new copied instance. If you're copying the instance to a different Region, make sure the key pair exists in the specified Region.

- Region

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Region you want to copy the instance to. If you specify a value for this parameter, but do not specify values for the SubnetId and SecurityGroupIds parameters, the automation attempts to launch the instance in the default VPC with the default security group. If EC2-Classic is enabled in the destination Region, the launch will fail.

- SubnetId

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ID of the subnet you want to copy the instance to. If EC2-Classic is enabled in the destination Region, you must provide a value for this parameter.

- InstanceType

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The instance type the copied instance should be launched as. If you do not specify a value for this parameter, the source instance type is used. If the source instance type is not supported in the Region the instance is being copied to, the automation fails.

- SecurityGroupIds

Type: String

Description: (Optional) A comma-separated list of security group IDs you want to associate with the copied instance. If you do not specify a value for this parameter, and the instance is not being copied to a different Region, the security groups associated with the source instance

are used. If you're copying the instance to a different Region, the default security group for the default VPC in the destination Region is used.

- **KeepImageSourceRegion**

Type: Boolean

Valid values: true | false

Default: true

Description: (Optional) If you specify `true` for this parameter, the automation does not delete the AMI of the source instance. If you specify `false` for this parameter, the automation deregisters the AMI and deletes the associated snapshots.

- **KeepImageDestinationRegion**

Type: Boolean

Valid values: true | false

Default: true

Description: (Optional) If you specify `true` for this parameter, the automation does not delete the AMI that is copied to the Region you specified. If you specify `false` for this parameter, the automation deregisters the AMI and deletes the associated snapshots.

- **NoRebootInstanceBeforeTakingImage**

Type: Boolean

Valid values: true | false

Default: false

Description: (Optional) If you specify `true` for this parameter, the source instance will not be restarted before creating the AMI. When this option is used, file system integrity on the created image can't be guaranteed.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:CreateImage
- ec2>DeleteSnapshot
- ec2:DeregisterImage
- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeImages
- ec2:RunInstances

If you're copying the instance to a different Region, you will also need the following permissions.

- ec2:CopyImage

Document Steps

- describeOriginalInstanceDetails - Gathers details from the instance to be copied.
- assertRootVolumeIsEbs - Checks if the root volume device type is ebs, and if not, ends the automation.
- evalInputParameters - Evaluates the values provided for the input parameters.
- createLocalAmi - Creates an AMI of the source instance.
- tagLocalAmi - Tags the AMI created in the previous step.
- branchAssertRegionIsSame - Branches based on whether the instance is being copied within the same Region or to a different Region.
- branchAssertSameRegionWithKeyPair - Branches based on whether a value was provided for the KeyPair parameter for an instance that's being copied within the same Region.
- sameRegionLaunchInstanceWithKeyPair - Launches an Amazon EC2 instance from the AMI of the source instance in the same subnet or the subnet you specify using the key pair that you specified.
- sameRegionLaunchInstanceWithoutKeyPair - Launches an Amazon EC2 instance from the AMI of the source instance in the same subnet or the subnet you specify without a key pair.
- copyAmiToRegion - Copies the AMI to the destination Region.
- waitForAvailableDestinationAmi - Waits for the copied AMI state to become available.
- destinationRegionLaunchInstance - Launches an Amazon EC2 Instance using the copied AMI.
- branchAssertDestinationAmiToDelete - Branches based on the value you provided for the KeepImageDestinationRegion parameter.

- `deregisterDestinationAmiAndDeleteSnapshots` - Deregisters the copied AMI and deletes associated snapshots.
- `branchAssertSourceAmiToDelete` - Branches based on the value you provided for the `KeepImageSourceRegion` parameter.
- `deregisterSourceAmiAndDeleteSnapshots` - Deregisters the AMI created from the source instance and deletes associated snapshots.
- `sleep` - Sleeps the automation for 2 seconds. This is a terminal step.

Outputs

`sameRegionLaunchInstanceWithKeyPair.InstanceIds`

`sameRegionLaunchInstanceWithoutKeyPair.InstanceIds`

`destinationRegionLaunchInstance.DestinationInstanceId`

AWSSupport-EnableWindowsEC2SerialConsole

Description

The runbook `AWSSupport-EnableWindowsEC2SerialConsole` helps you enable Amazon EC2 Serial Console, Special Admin Console (SAC), and boot menu on your Amazon EC2 Windows instance. With Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Serial Console feature, you have access to your Amazon EC2 instance's serial port to troubleshoot boot, network configuration, and other issues. The runbook automates the steps required to enable the feature on instances in running state and managed by AWS Systems Manager, as well as ones in stopped state or not managed by AWS Systems Manager.

How does it work?

The `AWSSupport-EnableWindowsEC2SerialConsole` automation runbook helps to enable SAC and boot menu on Amazon EC2 instances running Microsoft Windows Server. For instances in running state and managed by AWS Systems Manager, the runbook runs an AWS Systems Manager Run Command PowerShell script to enable SAC and boot menu. For instances in stopped state or not managed by AWS Systems Manager, the runbook uses the [AWSSupport-StartEC2RescueWorkflow](#) to create a temporary Amazon EC2 instance to perform the required changes offline.

For more information see [Amazon EC2 Serial Console for Windows instances](#).

Important

- If you enable SAC on an instance, the Amazon EC2 services that rely on password retrieval will not work from the Amazon EC2 console. For more information, see [Use SAC to troubleshoot your Windows instance](#).
- To configure access to the serial console, you must grant serial console access at the account level and then configure AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policies to grant access to your users. You must also configure a password-based user on every instance so that your users can use the serial console for troubleshooting. For more information see [Configure access to the Amazon EC2 Serial Console](#).
- To see if the serial console is enabled on your account see [View account access status to the serial console](#).
- Serial console access is only supported on virtualized instances built on the [Nitro System](#).

For more information, see the Amazon EC2 Serial Console [Prerequisites](#).

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Windows

Parameters

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

```
{  
    "Version": "2012-10-17",  
    "Statement": [  
        {
```

```
        "Effect": "Allow",
        "Action": [
            "autoscaling:DescribeAutoScalingInstances",
            "ec2:GetSerialConsoleAccessStatus",
            "ec2:Describe*",
            "ec2:createTags",
            "ec2:createImage",
            "ssm:DescribeAutomationExecutions",
            "ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation",
            "ssm:GetAutomationExecution",
            "ssm>ListCommandInvocations",
            "ssm>ListCommands"
        ],
        "Resource": "*"
    },
    {
        "Effect": "Allow",
        "Action": [
            "ec2:AttachVolume",
            "ec2:DetachVolume",
            "ec2:ModifyInstanceAttribute",
            "ec2:RebootInstances",
            "ec2:StartInstances",
            "ec2:StopInstances",
            "iam:GetInstanceProfile",
            "ssm:GetParameters",
            "ssm:SendCommand",
            "ssm:StartAutomationExecution"
        ],
        "Resource": [
            "arn:${Partition}:ec2:${Region}:${AccountId}:instance/${InstanceId}",
            "arn:${Partition}:ec2:${Region}:${AccountId}:volume/${VolumeId}",
            "arn:${Partition}:iam::${AccountId}:instance-profile/${InstanceProfileName}",
            "arn:${Partition}:ssm:${Region}::parameter/aws/service/*",
            "arn:${Partition}:ssm:${Region}::automation-definition/AWSSupport-StartEC2RescueWorkflow:*",
            "arn:${Partition}:ssm:${Region}::document/AWS-ConfigureAWSPackage",
            "arn:${Partition}:ssm:${Region}::document/AWS-RunPowerShellScript"
        ]
    }
]
```

```
},
{
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": [
        "cloudformation>CreateStack"
    ],
    "Resource": "*",
    "Condition": {
        "StringLike": {
            "aws:RequestTag/Name": "AWSSupport-EC2Rescue: *"
        },
        "ForAllValues:StringEquals": {
            "aws:TagKeys": [
                "AWSSupport-EC2Rescue-AutomationExecution",
                "Name"
            ]
        }
    }
},
{
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": [
        "cloudformation>DeleteStack",
        "cloudformation>DescribeStackEvents",
        "cloudformation>DescribeStackResource",
        "cloudformation>DescribeStacks",
        "ec2:AttachVolume",
        "ec2:DetachVolume",
        "ec2:RebootInstances",
        "ec2:StopInstances",
        "ec2:TerminateInstances",
        "ssm:SendCommand"
    ],
    "Resource": "*",
    "Condition": {
        "StringLike": {
            "aws:ResourceTag/Name": "AWSSupport-EC2Rescue: *"
        }
    }
},
{
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": [
        "ec2>CreateLaunchTemplate",
        "ec2:CreateSnapshot"
    ],
    "Resource": "*",
    "Condition": {
        "StringLike": {
            "aws:ResourceTag/Name": "AWSSupport-EC2Rescue: *"
        }
    }
}
```

```
        "ec2:DeleteLaunchTemplate",
        "ec2:RunInstances"
    ],
    "Resource": "*",
    "Condition": {
        "ForAnyValue:StringEquals": {
            "aws:CalledVia": [
                "cloudformation.amazonaws.com"
            ]
        }
    }
},
{
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": [
        "iam:PassRole"
    ],
    "Resource": "*",
    "Condition": {
        "StringLikeIfExists": {
            "iam:PassedToService": [
                "ssm.amazonaws.com",
                "ec2.amazonaws.com"
            ]
        }
    }
}
]
```

Instructions

Follow these steps to configure the automation:

1. Navigate to the `AWSSupport-EnableWindowsEC2SerialConsole` in the AWS Systems Manager console.
2. Select Execute automation.
3. For the input parameters, enter the following:
 - **InstanceId: (Required)**

The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance that you want to enable Amazon EC2 serial console, (SAC), and boot menu.

- **AutomationAssumeRole: (Optional)**

The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the IAM role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user who starts this runbook.

- **HelperInstanceType: (Conditional)**

The type of Amazon EC2 instance that the runbook provisions to configure Amazon EC2 serial console for an offline instance.

- **HelperInstanceProfileName: (Conditional)**

The name of an existing IAM instance profile for the helper instance. If you are enabling SAC and boot menu on an instance that is in stopped state or not managed by AWS Systems Manager, this is required. If an IAM instance profile is not specified, the automation creates one on your behalf.

- **SubnetId: (Conditional)**

The subnet ID for a helper instance. By default, it uses the same subnet where the provided instance resides.

 **Important**

If you provide a custom subnet, it must be in the same Availability Zone as InstanceId, and it must allow access to the Systems Manager endpoints. This is only required if the target instance is in stopped state or is not managed by AWS Systems Manager.

- **CreateInstanceBackupBeforeScriptExecution: (Optional)**

Specify True to create an Amazon Machine Images (AMI) backup of the Amazon EC2 instance before enabling SAC and boot menu. The AMI will persist after the automation completes. It is your responsibility to secure access to the AMI or delete it.

- **BackupAmazonMachineImagePrefix: (Conditional)**

A prefix for the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) that is created if the CreateInstanceBackupBeforeScriptExecution parameter is set to True.

Input parameters

InstanceId (Required) The ID of Amazon EC2 instance that you want to enable EC2 serial console, Special Admin Console (SAC), and boot menu. <input checked="" type="radio"/> Show interactive instance picker <input type="text" value="i-01234567890abcdef0"/>	HelperInstanceType (Conditional) The type of Amazon EC2 instance that the runbook provisions to configure EC2 serial console for an offline instance. <input type="text" value="t3.medium"/>
AutomationAssumeRole (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook. <input type="text" value="EC2SerialConsole-MinimumRole-AutomationAssumeRole-7nqDf7gFLLT"/>	HelperInstanceProfileName (Conditional) The name of an existing IAM instance profile for the helper instance. If you are enabling SAC and boot menu on an instance that is in "stopped" state or not managed by AWS Systems Manager, this is required. If an IAM instance profile is not specified, the automation creates one on your behalf. <input type="text" value="String"/>
SubnetId (Conditional) The subnet ID for a helper instance. By default, the same subnet where the provided instance resides is used. Important: If you provide a custom subnet, it must be in the same Availability Zone as the instance, and it must allow access to the Systems Manager endpoints. This is only required if the target instance is in "stopped" state or is not managed by AWS Systems Manager. <input type="text" value="SelectedInstanceSubnet"/>	BackupAmazonMachineImagePrefix (Conditional) A prefix for the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) that is created if the "CreateInstanceBackupBeforeScriptExecution" parameter is set to "True". <input type="text" value="AWSupport"/>
CreateInstanceBackupBeforeScriptExecution (Optional) Specify "True" to create an Amazon Machine Images (AMI) backup of the EC2 instance before enabling SAC and boot menu. The AMI will persist after the automation completes. It is your responsibility to secure access to the AMI, or to delete it. <input type="checkbox"/> True	

4. Select Execute.

5. The automation initiates.

6. The document performs the following steps:

- **CheckIfEc2SerialConsoleAccessEnabled:**

Checks if Amazon EC2 Serial Console access is enabled at the account level. Note: Access to the serial console is not available by default. For more information see [Configure access to the Amazon EC2 Serial Console](#).

- **CheckIfEc2InstancesWindows:**

Asserts if the target instance platform is Windows.

- **GetInstanceType:**

Retrieves the instance type of the target instance.

- **CheckIfInstanceTypeIsNitro:**

Checks if the instance type hypervisor is Nitro-based. Serial Console Access is only supported on virtualized instances built on the Nitro System.

- **CheckIfInstancesInAutoScalingGroup:**

Checks if the Amazon EC2 instance is part of an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group by calling the `DescribeAutoScalingInstances` API. If the instance is part of an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group, it ensures that the Porting Assistant for .NET instance is in Standby lifecycle state.

- **WaitForEc2InstanceStateStabilized:**

Waits for the instance to be in running or stopped state.

- **GetEc2InstanceState:**

Gets the current state of the instance.

- **BranchOnEc2InstanceState:**

Branches based on the instance state retrieved in the previous step. If that instance state is running, it goes to the CheckIfEc2InstanceIsManagedBySSM step and if not, it goes to the CheckIfHelperInstanceProfileIsProvided step.

- **CheckIfEc2InstancesManagedBySSM:**

Checks if the instance is managed by AWS Systems Manager. If managed, the runbook enables SAC and boot menu using a PowerShell Run Command.

- **BranchOnPreEC2RescueBackup:**

Branches based on the CreateInstanceBackupBeforeScriptExecution input parameter.

- **CreateAmazonMachineImageBackup:**

Creates an AMI backup of the instance.

- **EnableSACAndBootMenu:**

Enables SAC and boot menu by running a PowerShell Run Command script.

- **RebootInstance:**

Reboots the Amazon EC2 instance to apply the configuration. This is the final step if the instance is online and is managed by AWS Systems Manager.

- **CheckIfHelperInstanceProfileIsProvided:**

Checks if the HelperInstanceProfileName specified exists before enabling SAC and boot menu offline using a temporary Amazon EC2 instance.

- **RunAutomationToInjectOfflineScriptForEnablingSACAndBootMenu:**

Runs the AWSSupport-StartEC2RescueWorkflow to enable SAC and boot menu when the instance is in stopped state or not managed by AWS Systems Manager.

- **GetExecutionDetails:**

Retrieves Image ID of backup and offline script output.

7. After completed, review the Outputs section for the detailed results of the execution:

- **EnableSACAndBootMenu.Output:**

Output of the command execution in the EnableSACAndBootMenu step.

- **GetExecutionDetails.OfflineScriptOutput:**

Output of the offline script executed in the RunAutomationToInjectOfflineScriptForEnablingSACAndBootMenu step.

- **GetExecutionDetails.BackupBeforeScriptExecution:**

Image ID of the AMI backup taken if CreateInstanceBackupBeforeScriptExecution input parameter is True.

Output of execution on an instance that is running and managed by AWS Systems Manager

Outputs
<pre>GetExecutionDetails.BackupBeforeScriptExecution No output available yet because the step is not successfully executed EnableSACAndBootMenu.Output The operation completed successfully. The operation completed successfully. The operation completed successfully. The operation completed successfully. The operation completed successfully.</pre>

Output of execution on an instance that is stopped or not managed by AWS Systems Manager

Outputs
<pre>EnableSACAndBootMenu.Output No output available yet because the step is not successfully executed GetExecutionDetails.OfflineScriptOutput D:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe OFFLINE Windows Installation found in directory D:\Windows Windows Server 2016 Datacenter (10.0.14393.6522) BCD Store found in directory D:\Boot\BCD Detecting installed drivers EC2Rescue variables set EC2Rescue script variables set The operation completed successfully. Volume successfully set offline</pre>

References

Systems Manager Automation

- [Run this Automation \(console\)](#)
- [Run an automation](#)
- [Setting up an Automation](#)
- [Support Automation Workflows landing page](#)

AWS Support - ExecuteEC2Rescue

Description

This runbook uses the EC2Rescue tool to troubleshoot and, where possible, repair common connectivity issues with the specified Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance for Linux or Windows Server. Instances with encrypted root volumes are not supported.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- EC2RescueInstanceType

Type: String

Valid values: t2.small | t2.medium | t2.large

Default: t2.small

Description: (Required) The EC2 instance type for the EC2Rescue instance. Recommended size: t2.small

- LogDestination

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Amazon S3 bucket name in your account where you want to upload the troubleshooting logs. Make sure the bucket policy does not grant unnecessary read/write permissions to parties that do not need access to the collected logs.

- SubnetId

Type: String

Default: CreateNewVPC

Description: (Optional) The subnet ID for the EC2Rescue instance. By default, AWS Systems Manager Automation creates a new VPC. Alternatively, use SelectedInstanceSubnet to use the same subnet as your instance, or specify a custom subnet ID.

⚠️ Important

The subnet must be in the same Availability Zone as UnreachableInstanceId, and it must allow access to the SSM endpoints.

- UnreachableInstanceId

Type: String

Description: (Required) ID of your unreachable EC2 instance.

⚠️ Important

Systems Manager Automation stops this instance, and creates an AMI before attempting any operations. Data stored in instance store volumes will be lost. The public IP address will change if you are not using an Elastic IP address.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

You must have at least ssm:StartAutomationExecution and ssm:GetAutomationExecution to be able to read the automation output. For more information about the required permissions, see [AWSSupport-StartEC2RescueWorkflow](#).

Document Steps

1. aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Asserts if the provided instance is Windows Server:

a. (EC2Rescue for Windows Server) If the provided instance is a Windows Server instance:

- i. aws:executeAutomation - Invokes AWSSupport-StartEC2RescueWorkflow with the EC2Rescue for Windows Server offline script.
 - ii. aws:executeAwsApi - Retrieves the backup AMI ID from the nested automation.
 - iii. aws:executeAwsApi - Retrieves the EC2Rescue summary from the nested automation.
- b. (EC2Rescue for Linux) If the provided instance is a Linux instance:
- i. aws:executeAutomation - Invokes AWSSupport-StartEC2RescueWorkflow with the EC2Rescue for Linux offline scripts
 - ii. aws:executeAwsApi - Retrieves the backup AMI ID from the nested automation.
 - iii. aws:executeAwsApi - Retrieves the EC2Rescue summary from the nested automation.

Outputs

getEC2RescueForWindowsResult.Output

getWindowsBackupAmi.ImageId

getEC2RescueForLinuxResult.Output

getLinuxBackupAmi.ImageId

AWSSupport-ListEC2Resources

Description

The AWSSupport-ListEC2Resources runbook returns information about Amazon EC2 instances and related resources like Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) volumes, Elastic IP addresses, and Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling groups from the AWS Regions you specify. By default, the information is gathered from all Regions and is displayed in the output of the automation. Optionally, you can specify an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket for the information to be uploaded to as a comma-separated values (.csv) file.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Bucket

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The name of the S3 bucket where the information gathered is uploaded to.

- DisplayResourceDeletionDocumentation

Type: String

Default: true

Description: (Optional) If set to true, the automation creates links in the output to documentation related to deleting your resources.

- RegionsToQuery

Type: String

Default: All

Description: (Optional) The Regions you want to gather Amazon EC2 related information from.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `autoscaling:DescribeAutoScalingGroups`
- `ec2:DescribeAddresses`
- `ec2:DescribeImages`
- `ec2:DescribeInstances`
- `ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces`
- `ec2:DescribeRegions`
- `ec2:DescribeVolumes`
- `ec2:DescribeSnapshots`
- `elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancers`

Additionally, to successfully upload the information gathered to the S3 bucket you specify, the `AutomationAssumeRole` requires the following actions:

- `s3:GetBucketAcl`
- `s3:GetBucketPolicyStatus`
- `s3:PutObject`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the Regions enabled for the account.
- `aws:executeScript` - Confirms the Regions enabled for the account support the Regions specified in the `RegionsToQuery` parameter.
- `aws:branch` - If no Regions are enabled for the account, the automation ends.
- `aws:executeScript` - Lists all EC2 instances for the account and Regions you specify.
- `aws:executeScript` - Lists all Amazon Machine Images (AMI) for the account and Regions you specify.
- `aws:executeScript` - Lists all EBS volumes for the account and Regions you specify.
- `aws:executeScript` - Lists all Elastic IP addresses for the account and Regions you specify.
- `aws:executeScript` - Lists all elastic network interfaces for the account and Regions you specify.
- `aws:executeScript` - Lists all Auto Scaling groups for the account and Regions you specify.

- `aws:executeScript` - Lists all load balancers for the account and Regions you specify.
- `aws:executeScript` - Uploads the information gathered to the S3 bucket specified if you provide a value for the Bucket parameter.

AWSSupport-ManageRDPSettings

Description

The AWSSupport-ManageRDPSettings runbook allows the user to manage common Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP) settings, such as the RDP port and Network Layer Authentication (NLA). By default, the runbook reads and outputs the values of the settings.

Important

Changes to the RDP settings should be carefully reviewed before running this runbook.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on

your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **Instanceld**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the managed instance to manage the RDP settings of.

- **NLASettingAction**

Type: String

Valid values: Check | Enable | Disable

Default: Check

Description: (Required) An action to perform on the NLA setting: Check, Enable, Disable.

- **RDPPort**

Type: String

Default: 3389

Description: (Optional) Specify the new RDP port. Used only when the action is set to Modify. The port number must be between 1025-65535. Note: After the port is changed, the RDP service is restarted.

- **RDPPortAction**

Type: String

Valid values: Check | Modify

Default: Check

Description: (Required) An action to apply to the RDP port.

- **RemoteConnections**

Type: String

Valid values: Check | Enable | Disable

Default: Check

Description: (Required) An action to perform on the fDenyTSConnections setting.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

The EC2 instance receiving the command must have an IAM role with the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** Amazon managed policy attached. The user must have at least **ssm:SendCommand** to send the command to the instance, plus **ssm:GetCommandInvocation** to be able to read the command output.

Document Steps

`aws:runCommand` - Run the PowerShell script to change or check the RDP settings on the target instance.

Outputs

`manageRDPSettings.Output`

AWSSupport - ManageWindowsService

Description

The AWSSupport - ManageWindowsService runbook enables you to stop, start, restart, pause, or disable any Windows service on the target instance.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Instanceld

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the managed instance to manage the services of.

- ServiceAction

Type: String

Valid values: Check | Restart | Force-Restart | Start | Stop | Force-Stop | Pause

Default: Check

Description: (Required) An action to apply to the Windows service. Note that Force-Restart and Force-Stop can be used to restart and to stop a service that has dependent services.

- StartupType

Type: String

Valid values: Check | Auto | Demand | Disabled | DelayedAutoStart

Default: Check

Description: (Required) A startup type to apply to the Windows service.

- WindowsServiceName

Type: String

Description: (Required) A valid Windows service name.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

It is recommended that the EC2 instance receiving the command has an IAM role with the `AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore` Amazon managed policy attached. The user must have at least `ssm:StartAutomationExecution` and `ssm:SendCommand` to run the automation and send the command to the instance, plus `ssm:GetAutomationExecution` to be able to read the automation output.

Document Steps

`aws:runCommand` - Run the PowerShell script to apply the desired configuration to the Windows service on the target instance.

Outputs

`manageWindowsService.Output`

AWSSupport-MigrateEC2ClassicToVPC

Description

The `AWSSupport-MigrateEC2ClassicToVPC` runbook migrates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance from EC2-Classic to a virtual private cloud (VPC). This runbook supports migrating Amazon EC2 instances of the hardware virtual machine (HVM) virtualization type with Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) root volumes.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- **ApproverIAM**

Type: StringList

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Names (ARNs) of IAM users who can approve or deny the action. This parameter only applies if you specify the CutOver value for the MigrationType parameter.

- **DestinationSecurityGroupId**

Type: StringList

Description: (Optional) The ID of the security group that you want to associate with the Amazon EC2 instance that is launched in your VPC. If you don't specify a value for this parameter, the automation creates a security group in your VPC and copies the rules from the security group in EC2-Classic. If the rules fail to copy to the new security group, the default security group of your VPC is associated with the Amazon EC2 instance.

- **DestinationSubnetId**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ID of the subnet that you want to migrate your Amazon EC2 instance to. If you do not specify a value for this parameter, the automation randomly chooses a subnet from your VPC.

- **InstanceId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance that you want to migrate.

- **MigrationType**

Type: String

Valid values: CutOver | Test

Description: (Required) The type of migration that you want to perform.

The CutOver option requires approval to stop your Amazon EC2 instance that's running in EC2-Classic. After this action is approved, the Amazon EC2 instance is stopped and the automation creates an Amazon Machine Image (AMI). When the AMI status is available, a new Amazon EC2 instance is launched from this AMI in the DestinationSubnetId you specify in your VPC. If your Amazon EC2 instance that's running in EC2-Classic has an Elastic IP address attached, the instance will be moved to the newly created Amazon EC2 instance in your VPC. If the Amazon EC2 instance launching in your VPC fails to create for any reason, it is terminated and approval is requested to start your Amazon EC2 instance in EC2-Classic.

The Test option creates an AMI of your Amazon EC2 instance that's running in EC2-Classic without rebooting. Because the Amazon EC2 instance does not reboot, we can't guarantee the file system integrity of the created image. When the AMI status is available, a new Amazon EC2 instance is launched from this AMI in the DestinationSubnetId that you specify in your VPC. If your Amazon EC2 instance that's running in EC2-Classic has an Elastic IP address attached, the automation verifies that the DestinationSubnetId you specify is public. If the Amazon EC2 instance launching in your VPC fails to create for any reason, it is terminated and the automation ends.

- SNSNotificationARNforApproval

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN of the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic that you want to send approval requests to. This parameter only applies if you specify the CutOver value for the MigrationType parameter.

- TargetInstanceType

Type: String

Default: t2.2xlarge

Description: (Optional) The type of Amazon EC2 instance that you want to launch in your VPC. Only Xen-based instance types, such as T2, M4, or C4, are supported.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:GetDocument
- ssm>ListDocumentVersions
- ssm>ListDocuments
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- sns:GetTopicAttributes
- sns>ListSubscriptions
- sns>ListTopics
- sns:Publish
- ec2:AssociateAddress
- ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
- ec2>CreateImage
- ec2>CreateSecurityGroup
- ec2>DeleteSecurityGroup
- ec2:MoveAddressToVpc
- ec2:RunInstances
- ec2:StopInstances
- ec2>CreateTags
- ec2:DescribeAddresses
- ec2:DescribeInstanceAttribute
- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeInstanceState
- ec2:DescribeRouteTables
- ec2:DescribeSecurityGroupReferences
- ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups
- ec2:DescribeSubnets
- ec2:DescribeTags

- `ec2:DescribeVpcs`
- `ec2:DescribeInstanceTypes`
- `ec2:DescribeImages`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers details about the Amazon EC2 instance that you specify in the `InstanceId` parameter.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the instance type that you specify in the `TargetInstanceType` parameter is Xen-based.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the Amazon EC2 instance that you specify in the `InstanceId` parameter is of the HVM virtualization type.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the Amazon EC2 instance that you specify in the `InstanceId` parameter has an Amazon EBS root volume.
- `aws:executeScript` - Creates a security group as needed depending on the value that you specify for the `DestinationSecurityGroupId` parameter.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value that you specify in the `DestinationSubnetId` parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Identifies the default VPC in the AWS Region where you run this automation.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Randomly chooses the ID of a subnet located in the default VPC.
- `aws:createImage` - Creates an AMI without rebooting the Amazon EC2 instance.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value that you specify for the `MigrationType` parameter.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value that you specify for the `DestinationSubnetId` parameter.
- `aws:runInstances` - Launches a new instance from the AMI created without rebooting the Amazon EC2 instance in EC2-Classic.
- `aws:changeInstanceState` - Terminates the newly launched Amazon EC2 instance if the previous step fails for any reason.
- `aws:runInstances` - Launches a new instance from the AMI created without rebooting the Amazon EC2 instance in EC2-Classic in the `DestinationSubnetId` if provided.
- `aws:changeInstanceState` - Terminates the newly launched Amazon EC2 instance if the previous step fails for any reason.

- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the stop behavior for the Amazon EC2 instance running in EC2-Classic.
- `aws:approve` - Waits for approval to stop the Amazon EC2 instance.
- `aws:changeInstanceState` - Stops the Amazon EC2 instance running in EC2-Classic.
- `aws:changeInstanceState` - Force stops the Amazon EC2 instance running in EC2-Classic if needed.
- `aws:createImage` - Creates an AMI of the Amazon EC2 instance after it has stopped.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value specified for the `DestinationSubnetId` parameter.
- `aws:runInstances` - Launches a new instance from the AMI created of the stopped Amazon EC2 instance in EC2-Classic.
- `aws:approve` - Waits for approval to terminate the newly launched instance and starts the Amazon EC2 instance in EC2-Classic if the previous step fails for any reason.
- `aws:changeInstanceState` - Terminates the newly launched Amazon EC2 instance.
- `aws:runInstances` - Launches a new instance from the AMI created of the stopped Amazon EC2 instance in EC2-Classic from the `DestinationSubnetId` parameter.
- `aws:approve` - Waits for approval to terminate the newly launched instance and starts the Amazon EC2 instance in EC2-Classic if the previous step fails for any reason.
- `aws:changeInstanceState` - Terminates the newly launched Amazon EC2 instance.
- `aws:changeInstanceState` - Starts the Amazon EC2 instance that was stopped in EC2-Classic.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on whether the Amazon EC2 instance has a public IP address.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Verifies whether the public IP address is an Elastic IP address.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value that you specify in the `MigrationType` parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Moves the Elastic IP address to your VPC.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the allocation ID of the Elastic IP address that was moved to your VPC.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on which subnet the Amazon EC2 instance running in your VPC was launched.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Attaches the Elastic IP address to the newly launched instance in your VPC.
- `aws:executeScript` - Confirms the subnet your newly launched Amazon EC2 instance running in your VPC is public.

Outputs

`getInstanceProperties.virtualizationType` - The virtualization type of the Amazon EC2 instance running in EC2-Classic.

`getInstanceProperties.rootDeviceType` - The root device type of the Amazon EC2 instance running in EC2-Classic.

`createAMIWithoutReboot.ImageId` - The ID of the AMI created without rebooting the Amazon EC2 instance running in EC2-Classic.

`getDefaultVPC.VpcId` - The ID of the default VPC where the new Amazon EC2 instance is launched if a value for the `DestinationSubnetId` parameter is not provided.

`getSubnetIdinDefaultVPC.subnetIdFromDefaultVpc` - The ID of the subnet in the default VPC where the new Amazon EC2 instance is launched if a value for the `DestinationSubnetId` parameter is not provided.

`launchTestInstanceDefaultVPC.InstanceIds` - The ID of the newly launched Amazon EC2 instance in your default VPC during the Test migration type.

`launchTestInstanceProvidedSubnet.InstanceIds` - The ID of the newly launched Amazon EC2 instance in the `DestinationSubnetId` that you specified during the Test migration type.

`createAMIAfterStoppingInstance.ImageId` - The ID of the AMI created after stopping the Amazon EC2 instance running in EC2-Classic.

`launchCutOverInstanceProvidedSubnet.InstanceIds` - The ID of the newly launched Amazon EC2 instance in the `DestinationSubnetId` that you specified during the CutOver migration type.

`launchCutOverInstanceDefaultVPC.InstanceIds` - The ID of the newly launched Amazon EC2 instance in your default VPC during the CutOver migration type.

`verifySubnetIsPublicTestDefaultVPC.IsSubnetPublic` - Whether the subnet chosen by the automation in your default VPC is public.

`verifySubnetIsPublicTestProvidedSubnet.IsSubnetPublic` - Whether the subnet you specified in the `DestinationSubnetId` is public.

AWSsupport-MigrateXenToNitroLinux

Description

The AWSsupport-MigrateXenToNitroLinux runbook clones, prepares, and migrates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Linux Xen instance to a [Nitro instance type](#). This runbook provide two options for operation types:

- **Clone&Migrate** – This option's workflow consists of the **Preliminary Checks**, **Testing**, and **Clone&Migrate** phases. The workflow is run using the AWSsupport-CloneXenEC2InstanceAndMigrateToNitro runbook.
- **FullMigration** – This option runs the **Clone&Migrate** workflow and then performs the additional step of **Replace root Amazon EBS volumes**.

Important

Using this runbook incurs costs to your account for the running time of Amazon EC2 instances, creation of Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) volumes, and AMIs. For more details, see [Amazon EC2 Pricing](#) and [Amazon EBS Pricing](#).

Preliminary checks

The automation performs the following preliminary checks before continuing with the migration. If any of the checks fail, the automation ends. This phase is only part of the **Clone&Migrate** workflow.

- Checks if the target instance is already a Nitro instance type.
- Checks if the Spot Instances purchasing option was used for the target instance.
- Checks if instance store volumes are attached to the target instance.
- Verifies the target instance operating system (OS) is Linux.
- Checks if the target instance is a part of an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group. If it is part of an Auto Scaling group, the automation verifies that the instance is in the standby state.
- Verifies that the instance is managed by AWS Systems Manager.

Testing

The automation creates an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) from the target instance and launches a test instance from the newly created AMI. This phase is part of only the Clone&Migrate workflow.

If the test instance passes all status checks, the automation pauses and approval from the designated principals is requested through Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) notification. If approval is provided, the automation terminates the test instance, stops the target instance, and continues with the migration, while the newly created AMI is deregistered at the end of the Clone&Migrate workflow.

 **Note**

Before providing approval, we recommend verifying that all applications running on the target instance have been closed gracefully.

Clone and Migrate

The automation creates another AMI from the target instance, and launches a new instance to change to a Nitro instance type. The automation completes the following prerequisites before continuing with the migration. If any of the checks fail, the automation ends. This phase is also only part of the Clone&Migrate workflow.

- Turns on the enhanced networking (ENA) attribute.
- Installs the latest version of ENA drivers if they're not already installed, or updates the ENA drivers version to the latest version. To ensure maximum network performance, updating to the latest ENA driver version is required if the Nitro instance type is the 6th generation.
- Verifies that the NVMe module is installed. If the module is installed, the automation verifies that the module is loaded in `initramfs`.
- Analyzes `/etc/fstab` and replaces entries with block device names (`/dev/sd*` or `/dev/xvd*`) with their respective UUIDs. Before modifying the configuration, the automation creates a backup of the file at the path `/etc/fstab*`.
- Turns off predictable interface naming by adding the `net.ifnames=0` option to the `GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX` line in the `/etc/default/grub` file if it exists, or to the kernel in `/boot/grub/menu.lst`.
- Removes the `/etc/udev/rules.d/70-persistent-net.rules` file if it exists. Before removing the file, the automation creates a backup of the file at the path `/etc/udev/rules.d/`.

After verifying all requirements, the instance type is changed to the Nitro instance type that you specify. The automation waits for the newly created instance to pass all status checks after starting as a Nitro instance type. The automation then waits for approval from the designated principals to create an AMI of the successfully launched Nitro instance. If approval is denied, the automation ends, leaving the newly created instance running, and the target instance remains stopped.

Replace root Amazon EBS Volume

If you choose `FullMigration` as the `OperationType`, the automation migrates the target Amazon EC2 instance to the Nitro instance type that you specify. Automation requests approval from designated principals to replace the root Amazon EBS volume of the target Amazon EC2 instance with the cloned Amazon EC2 instance's root volume. After the migration is successful, the cloned Amazon EC2 instance is terminated. If the automation fails, the original Amazon EBS root volume is attached to the target Amazon EC2 instance. If the root Amazon EBS volume attached to the target Amazon EC2 instance has tags with the `aws:` prefix applied, the `FullMigration` operation isn't supported.

Before you begin

The target instance must have outbound internet access. This is to access repositories for drivers and dependencies like `kernel-devel`, `gcc`, `patch`, `rpm-build`, `wget`, `dracut`, `make`, `linux-headers`, and `unzip`. Package manager is used if needed.

An Amazon SNS topic is required to send notifications for approvals and updates. For more information about creating an Amazon SNS topic, see [Creating an Amazon SNS topic](#) in the *Amazon Simple Notification Service Developer Guide*.

This runbook supports the following operating systems:

- RHEL 7.x - 8.5
- Amazon Linux (2018.03), Amazon Linux 2
- Debian Server
- Ubuntu Server 18.04 LTS, 20.04 LTS, and 20.10 STR
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SUSE12SP5, SUSE15SP2)

Run this Automation (console)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Acknowledgement

Type: String

Description: (Required) Read the complete details of the actions performed by this automation runbook, and enter **Yes, I understand and acknowledge** to proceed with using the runbook.

- ApproverIAM

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARNs of IAM roles, users, or user names who can provide approvals to the automation. You can specify a maximum of 10 approvers.

- DeleteResourcesOnFailure

Type: Boolean

Description: (Optional) Determines whether the newly created instance and AMI for the migration are deleted if the automation fails.

Valid values: True | False

Default: True

- MinimumRequiredApprovals

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The minimum number of approvals required to continue running the automation when approvals are requested.

Valid values: 1-10

Default: 1

- NitroInstanceType

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Nitro instance type that you want to change the instance to. Supported instance types include M5, M6, C5, C6, R5, R6, and T3.

Default: m5.xlarge

- OperationType

Type: String

Description: (Required) The operation that you want to perform. The FullMigration option performs the same tasks as Clone&Migrate and additionally replaces the root volume of your target instance. The root volume of the target instance is replaced with the root volume from the newly created instance following the migration process. The FullMigration operation does not support root volumes defined by Logical Volume Manager (LVM).

Valid values: Clone&Migrate | FullMigration

- SNSTopicArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the Amazon SNS topic for approval notification. The Amazon SNS topic is used to send required approval notifications during the automation.

- TargetInstanceld

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instances to migrate.

Clone&Migrate workflow

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:DescribeAutomationExecutions
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation
- ssm:DescribeAutomationStepExecutions
- ssm:SendCommand
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm>ListCommands
- ssm>ListCommandInvocations
- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeInstanceTypeOfferings
- ec2:DescribeInstanceTypes
- ec2:DescribeImages
- ec2>CreateImage
- ec2:RunInstances
- ec2:DescribeInstanceStatus
- ec2:DeregisterImage
- ec2>DeleteSnapshot
- ec2:TerminateInstances
- ec2:StartInstances
- ec2:DescribeKeyPairs
- ec2:StopInstances
- kms>CreateGrant*
- kms:ReEncrypt

- `ec2:ModifyInstanceAttribute`
- `autoscaling:DescribeAutoScalingInstances`
- `iam:passRole`
- `iam>ListRoles`

Document Steps

- `startOfPreliminaryChecksBranch` - Branches to the Preliminary checks workflow.
- `getTargetInstanceProperties` - Gathers details from the target instance.
- `checkIfNitroInstanceTypeIsSupportedInAZ` - Determines if the target Amazon EC2 instance type is supported in the same Availability Zone as the target instance.
- `getXenInstanceTypeDetails` - Gathers details about the source instance type.
- `checkIfInstanceHypervisorIsNitroAlready` - Checks if the target instance is already running as a Nitro instance type.
- `checkIfTargetInstanceLifecycleIsSpot` - Checks if the purchasing option of the target instance is Spot.
- `checkIfOperatingSystemIsLinux` - Checks if the target instance OS is Linux.
- `verifySSMConnectivityForTargetInstance` - Verifies that the target instance is managed by Systems Manager.
- `checkIfEphemeralVolumeAreSupported` - Checks if the current instance type of the target instance supports instance store volumes.
- `verifyIfTargetInstanceHasEphemeralVolumesAttached` - Checks if the target instance has instance store volumes attached.
- `checkIfRootVolumeIsEBS` - Checks if the target instance's root volume type is EBS.
- `checkIfTargetInstanceIsInASG` - Checks if the target instance is a part of an Auto Scaling group.
- `endOfPreliminaryChecksBranch` - End of the Preliminary checks branch.
- `startOfTestBranch` - Branches to the Testing workflow.
- `createTestImage` - Creates a test AMI of the target instance.
- `launchTestInstanceInSameSubnet` - Launches a test instance from the test AMI using the same configuration as target instance.
- `cleanupTestInstance` - Terminates the test instance.

- `endOfTestBranch` - End of the Testing branch.
- `checkIfTestingBranchSucceeded` - Checks the status of the Testing branch.
- `approvalToStopTargetInstance` - Waits for approval from the designated principals to stop the target instance.
- `stopTargetEC2Instance` - Stops the target instance.
- `forceStopTargetEC2Instance` - Force stops the target instance only if the previous step fails to stop the instance.
- `startOfCloneAndMigrateBranch` - Branches to the Clone&Migrate workflow.
- `createBackupImage` - Creates an AMI of the target instance to serve as a backup.
- `launchInstanceInSameSubnet` - Launches a new instance from the backup AMI using the same configuration as the source instance.
- `waitForClonedInstanceToPassStatusChecks` - Waits for the newly created instance to pass all status checks.
- `verifySSMConnectivityForClonedInstance` - Verifies that the newly created instance is managed by Systems Manager.
- `checkAndInstallENADrivers` - Checks if ENA drivers are installed on the newly created instance, and installs the drivers if needed.
- `checkAndAddNVMEDrivers` - Checks if NVMe drivers are installed on the newly created instance, and installs the drivers if needed.
- `checkAndModifyFSTABEntries` - Checks if device names are used in /etc/fstab and replaces them with UUIDs if needed.
- `stopClonedInstance` - Stops the newly created instance.
- `forceStopClonedInstance` - Force stops the newly created instance only if the previous step fails to stop the instance.
- `checkENAAtributeForClonedInstance` - Checks if the enhanced networking attribute is turned on for the newly created instance.
- `setNitroInstanceTypeForClonedInstance` - Changes the instance type for the newly created instance to the Nitro instance type that you specify.
- `startClonedInstance` - Starts the newly created instance whose instance type you changed.
- `approvalForCreatingImageAfterDriversInstallation` - If the instance successfully starts as a Nitro instance type, the automation waits for approval from the required principals. If approval is provided, an AMI is created to be used as a Golden AMI.

- `createImageAfterDriversInstallation` - Creates an AMI to be used as a Golden AMI.
- `endOfCloneAndMigrateBranch` - End of Clone&Migrate branch.
- `cleanupTestImage` - Deregisters the AMI created for testing.
- `failureHandling` - Checks if you chose to terminate resources on failure.
- `onFailureTerminateClonedInstance` - Terminates the newly created instance if the automation fails.
- `onFailurecleanupTestImage` - Deregisters the AMI created for testing.
- `onFailureApprovalToStartTargetInstance` - If the automation fails, waits for approval from the designated principals to start the target instance.
- `onFailureStartTargetInstance` - If the automation fails, starts the target instance.

FullMigration workflow

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:DescribeAutomationExecutions`
- `ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation`
- `ssm:DescribeAutomationStepExecutions`
- `ssm:SendCommand`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ssm>ListCommands`
- `ssm>ListCommandInvocations`
- `ec2:DescribeInstances`
- `ec2:DescribeInstanceTypeOfferings`
- `ec2:DescribeInstanceTypes`
- `ec2:DescribeImages`
- `ec2>CreateImage`
- `ec2:RunInstances`
- `ec2:DescribeInstanceStatus`

- `ec2:DeregisterImage`
- `ec2>DeleteSnapshot`
- `ec2:TerminateInstances`
- `ec2:StartInstances`
- `ec2:DescribeKeyPairs`
- `ec2:StopInstances`
- `kms>CreateGrant*`
- `kms:ReEncrypt`
- `ec2:ModifyInstanceAttribute`
- `ec2:DetachVolume`
- `ec2:AttachVolume`
- `ec2:DescribeVolumes`
- `autoscaling:DescribeAutoScalingInstances`
- `iam:PassRole`
- `ec2>CreateTags`
- `cloudformation:DescribeStackResources`

Document Steps

The `FullMigration` workflow runs the same steps as the `Clone&Migrate` workflow and additionally performs the following steps:

- `checkConcurrency` - Verifies that there is only one automation of this runbook targeting the Amazon EC2 instance that you specify. If the runbook finds another automation in progress targeting the same instance, the automation ends.
- `getTargetInstanceProperties` - Gathers details from the target instance.
- `checkRootVolumeTags` - Determines if the root volume of the target Amazon EC2 instance contains any AWS reserved tags.
- `cloneTargetInstanceAndMigrateToNitro` - Starts a child automation using the `AWS-CloneXenInstanceToNitro` runbook.
- `branchOnTheOperationType` - Branches on the value that you specify for the `OperationType` parameter.

- `getClonedInstanceId` - Retrieves the ID of the newly launched instance from the child automation.
- `checkIfRootVolumeIsBasedOnLVM` - Determines if the root partition is managed by LVM.
- `branchOnTheRootVolumeLVMStatus` - If the minimum required approvals are received from the principals, the automation proceeds with the root volume replacement.
- `manualInstructionsInCaseOfLVM` - If the root volume is managed by LVM, the automation sends output containing instructions for how to manually replace the root volumes.
- `startOfReplaceRootEBSSVolumeBranch` - Starts the Replace Root EBS Volume branch workflow.
- `checkIfTargetInstanceIsManagedByCFN` - Determines if the target instance is managed by an AWS CloudFormation stack.
- `branchOnCFNStackStatus` - Branches based on the status of the CloudFormation stack.
- `approvalForRootVolumesReplacement(WithCFN)` - If the target instance was launched by CloudFormation, the automation waits for approval after the newly launched instance successfully starts as a Nitro instance type. When approvals are provided, the Amazon EBS volumes of the target instance are replaced with the root volumes from the newly launched instance.
- `approvalForRootVolumesReplacement` - Waits for approval after the newly launched instance successfully starts as a Nitro instance type. When approvals are provided, the Amazon EBS volumes of the target instance are replaced with the root volumes from the newly launched instance.
- `assertIfTargetEC2InstanceIsStillStopped` - Verifies that the target instance is in a stopped state before replacing the root volume.
- `stopTargetInstanceForRootVolumeReplacement` - If the target instance is running, the automation stops the instance before replacing the root volume.
- `forceStopTargetInstanceForRootVolumeReplacement` - Force stops the target instance if the previous step fails.
- `stopClonedInstanceForRootVolumeReplacement` - Stops the newly created instance before replacing the Amazon EBS volumes.
- `forceStopClonedInstanceForRootVolumeReplacement` - Force stops the newly created instance if the previous step fails.
- `getBlockDeviceMappings` - Retrieves the block device mappings for both the target and newly created instances.

- `replaceRootEbsVolumes` - Replaces the root volume of the target instance with the root volume of the newly created instance.
- `EndOfReplaceRootEBSSVolumeBranch` - End of Replace Root EBS Volume branch workflow.
- `checkENAAtributeForTargetInstance` - Checks if the enhanced networking (ENA) attribute is turned on for the target Amazon EC2 instance.
- `enableENAAtributeForTargetInstance` - Turns on the ENA attribute for the target Amazon EC2 instance if needed.
- `setNitroInstanceTypeForTargetInstance` - Changes the target instance to the Nitro instance type that you specify.
- `replicateRootVolumeTags` - Replicates the tags on the root Amazon EBS volume from the target Amazon EC2 instance.
- `startTargetInstance` - Starts the target Amazon EC2 instance after changing the instance type.
- `onFailureStopTargetEC2Instance` - Stops the target Amazon EC2 instance if it fails to start as a Nitro instance type.
- `onFailureForceStopTargetEC2Instance` - Force stops the target Amazon EC2 instance if the previous step fails.
- `OnFailureRevert0riginalInstanceType` - Reverts the target Amazon EC2 instance to the original instance type if the target instance fails to start as a Nitro instance type.
- `onFailureRollbackRootVolumeReplacement` - Reverts all the changes made by the `replaceRootEbsVolumes` step if needed.
- `onFailureApprovalToStartTargetInstance` - Waits for designated principal's approval to start the target Amazon EC2 instance after rolling back the previous changes.
- `onFailureStartTargetInstance` - Starts the target Amazon EC2 instance.
- `terminateClonedEC2Instance` - Terminates the cloned Amazon EC2 instance after replacing the root Amazon EBS volume.

AWSsupport-ResetAccess

Description

This runbook will use the EC2Rescue tool on the specified EC2 instance to re-enable password decryption using the EC2 Console (Windows) or to generate and add a new SSH key pair (Linux).

If you lost your key pair, this automation will create a password-enabled AMI that you can use to launch a new EC2 instance with a key pair you own (Windows).

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- EC2RescueInstanceType

Type: String

Valid values: t2.small | t2.medium | t2.large

Default: t2.small

Description: (Required) The EC2 instance type for the EC2Rescue instance. Recommended size: t2.small.

- Instanceld

Type: String

Description: (Required) ID of the EC2 instance you want to reset access for.

⚠️ Important

Systems Manager Automation stops this instance, and creates an AMI before attempting any operations. Data stored in instance store volumes will be lost. The public IP address will change if you are not using an Elastic IP.

- SubnetId

Type: String

Default: CreateNewVPC

Description: (Optional) The subnet ID for the EC2Rescue instance. By default, Systems Manager Automation creates a new VPC. Alternatively, Use SelectedInstanceSubnet to use the same subnet as your instance, or specify a custom subnet ID.

⚠️ Important

The subnet must be in the same Availability Zone as InstanceId, and it must allow access to the SSM endpoints.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

You must have at least **ssm:StartAutomationExecution**, **ssm:GetParameter** (to retrieve the SSH key parameter name) and **ssm:GetAutomationExecution** to be able to read the automation output. For more information about the required permissions, see [AWSSupport-StartEC2RescueWorkflow](#).

Document Steps

1. aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Assert if the provided instance is Windows.
 - a. (EC2Rescue for Windows) If the provided instance is Windows:
 - i. aws:executeAutomation - Invoke AWSSupport-StartEC2RescueWorkflow with the EC2Rescue for Windows offline password reset script

- ii. aws:executeAwsApi - Retrieve the backup AMI ID from the nested automation
 - iii. aws:executeAwsApi - Retrieve the password-enabled AMI ID from the nested automation
 - iv. aws:executeAwsApi - Retrieve the EC2Rescue summary from the nested automation
- b. (EC2Rescue for Linux) If the provided instance is Linux:
- i. aws:executeAutomation - Invoke AWSSupport-StartEC2RescueWorkflow with the EC2Rescue for Linux offline SSH key injection script
 - ii. aws:executeAwsApi - Retrieve the backup AMI ID from the nested automation
 - iii. aws:executeAwsApi - Retrieve the SSM parameter name for the injected SSH key
 - iv. aws:executeAwsApi - Retrieve the EC2Rescue summary from the nested automation

Outputs

getEC2RescueForWindowsResult.Output

getWindowsBackupAmi.ImageId

getWindowsPasswordEnabledAmi.ImageId

getEC2RescueForLinuxResult.Output

getLinuxBackupAmi.ImageId

getLinuxSSHKeyParameter.Name

AWSSupport-ResetLinuxUserPassword

Description

The AWSSupport-ResetLinuxUserPassword runbook helps you reset the password of a local operating system (OS) user. This runbook is especially helpful for users who need to access their Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances using the serial console. The runbook creates a temporary Amazon EC2 instance in your AWS account and an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role with permissions to retrieve an AWS Secrets Manager secret value containing the password.

The runbook stops your target Amazon EC2 instance, detaches the root Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) volume, and attaches it to the temporary Amazon EC2 instance. Using Run

Command, a script runs on the temporary instance to set the password of the OS user that you specify. Then, the root Amazon EBS volume is reattached to your target instance. The runbook also provides an option to create a snapshot of the root volume at the beginning of the automation.

Before you begin

Create an Secrets Manager secret with the value of the password that you want to assign to your OS user. The value must be in plain text. For more information, see [Create an AWS Secrets Manager secret](#) in the *AWS Secrets Manager User Guide*.

Considerations

- We recommend backing up your instance before using this runbook. Consider setting the value of the CreateSnapshot parameter as **Yes**.
- Changing the local user password requires the runbook to stop your instance. When an instance is stopped, any data stored in memory or on instance store volumes is lost. Also, any automatically assigned public IPv4 addresses are released. For more information about what happens when you stop an instance, see [Stop and start your instance](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances*.
- If the Amazon EBS volumes attached to your target Amazon EC2 instance are encrypted with a customer managed AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key, make sure the AWS KMS key is not deleted or disabled or your instance will fail to start.

Run this Automation (console)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- InstanceId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 Linux instance that contains the OS user password that you want to reset.

- LinuxUserName

Type: String

Default: ec2-user

Description: (Optional) The OS user account whose password you want to reset.

- SecretArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of your Secrets Manager secret containing the new password.

- SecurityGroupId

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ID of the security group to attach to the temporary Amazon EC2 instance. If you don't provide a value for this parameter, the default Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC) security group is used.

- SubnetId

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ID of the subnet that you want to launch the Amazon EC2 temporary instance in to. By default, the automation chooses the same subnet as your target instance. If you choose to provide a different subnet, it must be in the same Availability Zone as the target instance and have access to Systems Manager endpoints.

- **CreateSnapshot**

Type: String

Valid values: Yes | No

Default: Yes

Description: (Optional) Determines whether a snapshot of the root volume of your target Amazon EC2 instance is created before the automation runs.

- **StopConsent**

Type: String

Valid values: Yes | No

Default: No

Description: Enter **Yes** to acknowledge that your target Amazon EC2 instance will be stopped during this automation. When the Amazon EC2 instance is stopped, any data stored in memory or instance store volumes is lost, and the automatic public IPv4 address is released. For more information, see [Stop and start your instance](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances*.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation`
- `ssm>ListTagsForResource`
- `ssm:SendCommand`
- `ec2:AttachVolume`
- `ec2>CreateSnapshot`
- `ec2>CreateSnapshots`
- `ec2>CreateVolume`
- `ec2:DescribeImages`
- `ec2:DescribeInstances`

- ec2:DescribeInstanceStatus
- ec2:DescribeSnapshotAttribute
- ec2:DescribeSnapshots
- ec2:DescribeSnapshotTierStatus
- ec2:DescribeVolumes
- ec2:DescribeVolumeStatus
- ec2:DetachVolume
- ec2:RunInstances
- ec2:StartInstances
- ec2:StopInstances
- ec2:TerminateInstances
- cloudformation>CreateStack
- cloudformation>DeleteStack
- cloudformation>DescribeStackResource
- cloudformation>DescribeStacks
- cloudformation>ListStacks
- logs>CreateLogDelivery
- logs>CreateLogGroup
- logs>DeleteLogDelivery
- logs>DeleteLogGroup
- logs>DescribeLogGroups
- logs>DescribeLogStreams
- logs>PutLogEvents

Document Steps

1. aws:branch – Branches based on whether you have provided consent to stopping the target Amazon EC2 instance.
2. aws:assertAwsResourceProperty Ensures the Amazon EC2 instance status is in a running or stopped state. Otherwise, the automation ends.

3. `aws:executeAwsApi` Gets the Amazon EC2 instance properties.
4. `aws:executeAwsApi` Gets the root volume properties.
5. `aws:branch` Branches the automation depending on whether a subnet ID for the temporary Amazon EC2 instance was provided.
6. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` Ensures the subnet that you specify in SubnetId parameter is in the same Availability Zone as the target Amazon EC2 instance.
7. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` Ensures the target Amazon EC2 instance root volume is an Amazon EBS volume.
8. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` Ensures the Amazon EC2 instance architecture is arm64 or x86_64.
9. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` Ensures the Amazon EC2 instance shutdown behavior is stop and not terminate.
10. `aws:branch` Ensures the Amazon EC2 instance is not a Spot Instance. Otherwise, the automation ends.
11. `aws:executeScript` Ensures the Amazon EC2 instance is not part of an auto scaling group. If the instance is part of an auto scaling group, the automation confirms the Amazon EC2 instance is in a Standby lifecycle state.
12. `aws:createStack` Creates a temporary Amazon EC2 instance that is used to reset the password for the OS user that you specify.
13. `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` Waits until the newly launched temporary Amazon EC2 instance is running.
14. `aws:executeAwsApi` Gets the ID of the temporary Amazon EC2 instance.
15. `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` Waits for the temporary Amazon EC2 instance to report as managed by Systems Manager.
16. `aws:changeInstanceState` Stops the target Amazon EC2 instance.
17. `aws:changeInstanceState` Forces the target Amazon EC2 instance to stop in case it gets stuck in a stopping state.
18. `aws:branch` Branches the automation depending on whether a snapshot of the root volume of the target Amazon EC2 instance was requested.
19. `aws:executeAwsApi` Creates a snapshot of the target Amazon EC2 instance root Amazon EBS volume.
20. `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` Waits for the snapshot to be in a completed state.

- 21aws:executeAwsApi Detaches the Amazon EBS root volume from the target Amazon EC2 instance.
- 22aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty Waits for the Amazon EBS root volume to be detached from the target Amazon EC2 instance.
- 23aws:executeAwsApi Attaches the root Amazon EBS volume to the temporary Amazon EC2 instance.
- 24aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty Waits for the Amazon EBS root volume to be attached to the temporary Amazon EC2 instance.
- 25aws:runCommand Resets the target user password by running a shell script using Run Command on the temporary Amazon EC2 instance.
- 26aws:executeAwsApi Detaches the Amazon EBS root volume from the temporary Amazon EC2 instance.
- 27aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty Waits for the Amazon EBS root volume to be detached from the temporary Amazon EC2 instance.
- 28aws:executeAwsApi Detaches the Amazon EBS root volume from the temporary Amazon EC2 instance after an error.
- 29aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty Waits for the Amazon EBS root volume to be detached from the temporary Amazon EC2 instance after an error.
- 30aws:branch Branches the automation depending on whether a snapshot of the root volume was requested to determine the recovery path in case of an error.
- 31aws:executeAwsApi Reattaches the root Amazon EBS volume to the target Amazon EC2 instance.
- 32aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty Waits for the Amazon EBS root volume to be attached to the Amazon EC2 instance.
- 33aws:executeAwsApi Creates a new Amazon EBS volume from the target Amazon EC2 instance root volume snapshot.
- 34aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty Waits until the new Amazon EBS volume is in an available state.
- 35aws:executeAwsApi Attaches the new Amazon EBS volume to the target instance as the root volume.
- 36aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty Waits for the Amazon EBS volume to be in an attached state.

37aws :executeAwsApi Describes the AWS CloudFormation stack events if the runbooks fails to create or update the AWS CloudFormation stack.

38aws :branch Branches the automation depending on the previous Amazon EC2 instance state. If the state was running, the instance is started. If it was in a stopped state, the automation continues.

39aws :changeInstanceState Starts the Amazon EC2 instance if needed.

40aws :waitForAwsResourceProperty Waits until the AWS CloudFormation stack is in a terminal status before deleting.

41aws :executeAwsApi Deletes the AWS CloudFormation stack including the temporary Amazon EC2 instance.

AWSPremiumSupport-ResizeNitroInstance

Description

The AWSPremiumSupport-ResizeNitroInstance runbook provides an automated solution for resizing Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances built on the Nitro System.

To reduce the potential risk of data loss and downtime, the runbook verifies the following:

- Instance stop behavior.
- If the instance is part of an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group, and in standby mode.
- Instance state and tenancy.
- The instance type you want to change to supports the number of network interfaces currently attached to your instance.
- The processor architecture and virtualization type for both the current and target instance type are the same.
- If the instance is running, that it's passing all status checks.
- The instance type you want to change to is available in the same Availability Zone.

If the Amazon EC2 does not pass status checks after changing the instance type, the runbook automatically rolls back to the previous instance type.

By default, this runbook will not change the instance type if it is running and instance store volumes are attached. The runbook will also not change the instance type if the instance is part of

an AWS CloudFormation stack. If you want to change either of these behaviors, specify yes for the AllowInstanceStoreInstances and AllowCloudFormationInstances parameters.

The runbook provides two different ways to specify the instance type you want to change to:

- For simple automations targeting a single instance, specify the instance type you want to change to using the TargetInstanceTypeFromParameter parameter.
- For running automations at scale to change the instance type of several instances, specify the instance type using the TargetInstanceTypeFromTagValue parameter. For information about running automations at scale, see [Run automations at scale](#).

If you don't specify a value for either parameter, the automation fails.

 **Important**

Access to AWSPremiumSupport-* runbooks requires either an Enterprise or Business Support Subscription. For more information, see [Compare AWS Support Plans](#).

Considerations

- We recommend backing up your instance before using this runbook.
- For information about compatibility for changing instance types, see [Compatibility for changing the instance type](#).
- If the automation fails and rolls back to the original instance type, see [Troubleshoot changing the instance type](#).
- Changing the instance type requires the runbook to stop your instance. When an instance is stopped, any data stored in memory or on instance store volumes is lost. Also, any automatically assigned public IPv4 addresses are released. For more information about what happens when you stop an instance, see [Stop and start your instance](#).
- By using the SkipInstancesWithTagKey parameter, you can skip instances that have a specific Amazon EC2 tag key applied.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Acknowledge

Type: String

Description: (Required) Enter **yes** to acknowledge that your instance will be stopped if it's currently running.

- AllowInstanceStoreInstances

Type: String

Valid values: no | yes

Default: no

Description: (Optional) If you specify yes, you allow the runbook to run on instances that have instance store volumes attached.

- AllowCloudFormationInstances

Type: String

Valid values: no | yes

Default: no

Description: (Optional) If you specify yes, the runbook runs on instances that are part of an AWS CloudFormation stack.

- DryRun

Type: String

Valid values: no | yes

Default: no

Description: (Optional) If you specify yes, the runbook validates resizing requirements without making changes to the instance type.

- Instanceld

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance whose type you want to change.

- SkipInstancesWithTagKey

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The automation skips a target instance if the tag key you specify is applied to the instance.

- SleepTime

Type: String

Default: 3

Description: (Optional) The number of seconds this runbook should sleep after completion.

- TagInstance

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Tag the instances with the key and value of your choice using the following format: *Key=ChangingType, Value=True*. This option allows you to track instances that have been targeted by this runbook. Tag keys and values are case sensitive.

- `TargetInstanceTypeFromParameter`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The instance type you want to change your instance to. Leave this parameter empty if you want to use the value of the tag key provided in the `TargetInstanceTypeFromTagValue` parameter.

- `TargetInstanceTypeFromTagValue`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The tag key applied to your target instances whose value contains the instance type you want to change to. If you specify a value for the `TargetInstanceTypeFromParameter` parameter, it overrides any value you specify for this parameter.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `autoscaling:DescribeAutoScalingInstances`
- `cloudformation:DescribeStackResources`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:DescribeAutomationExecutions`
- `ec2:DescribeInstanceAttribute`
- `ec2:DescribeInstances`
- `ec2:DescribeInstanceStatus`
- `ec2:DescribeInstanceTypeOfferings`
- `ec2:DescribeInstanceTypes`
- `ec2:DescribeTags`
- `ec2:ModifyInstanceAttribute`
- `ec2:StartInstances`
- `ec2:StopInstances`

Document Steps

1. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty`: Ensures the Amazon EC2 instance is not tagged with the resource tag key specified in the `SkipInstancesWithTagKey` parameter. If the tag key is found applied to the instance, the step fails and the automation ends.
2. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty`: Confirms the status of the target Amazon EC2 instance is running, pending, stopped, or stopping. Otherwise, the automation ends.
3. `aws:executeAwsApi`: Gathers properties from the Amazon EC2 instance.
4. `aws:executeAwsApi`: Gathers details about the current Amazon EC2 instance type.
5. `aws:branch`: Checks if the current instance type and the instance type specified in the `TargetInstanceTypeFromParameter` parameter are the same. If they are, the automation ends.
6. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty`: Ensures the instance is running on the Nitro System.
7. `aws:branch`: Ensures the Amazon EC2 instance root volume type is an Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) volume.
8. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty`: Confirms the instance shutdown behavior is stop and not terminate.
9. `aws:branch`: Ensures the Amazon EC2 instance is not a Spot instance.
10. `aws:branch`: Ensures the Amazon EC2 instance tenancy is default and not dedicated host, or dedicated instance.
11. `aws:executeScript`: Confirms there is only one automation of this runbook targeting the current instance ID. If another automation is already in progress targeting the same instance, the automation returns an error and ends.
12. `aws:branch`: Branches the automation based on the state of the Amazon EC2 instance.
 - a. If stopped or stopping, the automation runs `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` until the Amazon EC2 instance is fully stopped.
 - b. If running or pending, the automation runs `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` until the Amazon EC2 instance passes status checks.
13. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty`: Confirms that the Amazon EC2 instance is not part of an Auto Scaling group by calling the `DescribeAutoScalingInstances` API operation. If the instance is part of an Auto Scaling group, ensures the Amazon EC2 instance is in standby mode.
14. `aws:branch`: Branches the automation depending on whether you want the automation to check if the Amazon EC2 instance is part of an AWS CloudFormation stack:

- a. aws:executeScript Ensures the Amazon EC2 instance is not part of an AWS CloudFormation stack by calling the `DescribeStackResources` API operation.
- 15aws:executeAwsApi: Returns a list of instance types with the same processor architecture type, virtualization type, and that supports the number of network interfaces currently attached to the target instance.
- 16aws:executeAwsApi: Gets the target instance type value from the tag key specified in the `TargetInstanceTypeFromTagValue` parameter.
- 17aws:executeScript: Confirms that the current and target instances types are compatible. Ensures that the target instance type is available in the same subnet. Verifies the principal who started the runbook has permissions to change the instance type, and stop and start the instance if it was running.
- 18aws:branch: Branches the automation based on whether the `DryRun` parameter value is set to yes. If yes, the automation ends.
- 19aws:branch: Checks if the original and the target instance type are the same. If they're the same, the automation ends.
- 20aws:executeAwsApi: Gets the current instance state.
- 21aws:changeInstanceState: Stops the Amazon EC2 instance.
- 22aws:changeInstanceState: Forces the instance to stop if it's stuck in the stopping state.
- 23aws:executeAwsApi: Changes the instance type to the target instance type.
- 24aws:sleep: Waits 3 seconds after changing the instance type for eventual consistency.
- 25aws:branch: Branches the automation based on the previous instance state. If it was running, the instance is started.
- a. aws:changeInstanceState: Starts the Amazon EC2 instance if it was running before changing the instance type.
 - b. aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty: Waits for the Amazon EC2 instance to pass status checks. If the instance doesn't pass status checks, the instance is changed back to its original instance type.
 - i. aws:changeInstanceState: Stops the Amazon EC2 instance before changing it to its original instance type.
 - ii. aws:changeInstanceState: Forces the Amazon EC2 instance to stop before changing it to its original instance type in case it gets stuck in a stopping state.
 - iii. aws:executeAwsApi: Changes the Amazon EC2 instance to its original type.
 - iv. aws:sleep: Waits 3 seconds after changing the instance type for eventual consistency.

- v. aws:changeInstanceState: Starts the Amazon EC2 instance if it was running before changing the instance type.
- vi. aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty: Waits for the Amazon EC2 instance to pass status checks.

26aws:sleep: Waits before ending the runbook.

AWSsupport-RestoreEC2InstanceFromSnapshot

Description

The AWSsupport-RestoreEC2InstanceFromSnapshot runbook helps you identify and restore an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance from a working Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) snapshot of the root volume.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- EndDate

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The last date you want the automation to look for a snapshot.

- InplaceSwap

Type: Boolean

Valid values: true | false

Description: (Optional) If the value for this parameter is set to true, the newly created volume from the snapshot replaces the existing root volume attached to your instance.

- InstanceId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the instance you want to restore from a snapshot.

- LookForInstanceStateCheck

Type: Boolean

Valid values: true | false

Default: true

Description: (Optional) If the value for this parameter is set to true, the automation checks whether instance status checks fail on the test instances launched from the snapshots.

- SkipSnapshotsBy

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The interval at which snapshots are skipped when searching for snapshots to restore your instance. For example, if there are 100 snapshots available, and you specify a value of 2 for this parameter, then every third snapshot is reviewed.

Default: 0

- SnapshotId

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ID of a snapshot you want to restore the instance from.

- **StartDate**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The first date you want the automation to look for a snapshot.

- **TotalSnapshotsToLook**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The number of snapshots the automation reviews.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation
- ec2:AttachVolume
- ec2>CreateImage
- ec2>CreateTags
- ec2>CreateVolume
- ec2>DeleteTags
- ec2:DeregisterImage
- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeInstanceState
- ec2:DescribeImages
- ec2:DescribeSnapshots
- ec2:DescribeVolumes
- ec2:DetachVolume
- ec2:RunInstances
- ec2:StartInstances
- ec2:StopInstances

- ec2:TerminateInstances
- cloudwatch:GetMetricData

Document Steps

1. aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers details about the target instance.
2. aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Verifies the target instance exists.
3. aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Verifies the root volume is an Amazon EBS volume.
4. aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Verifies that another automation isn't already running that targets this instance.
5. aws:executeAwsApi - Tags the target instance.
6. aws:executeAwsApi - Creates an AMI of the instance.
7. aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers details about the AMI created in the previous step.
8. aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for the AMI state to become available before proceeding.
9. aws:executeScript - Launches a new instance from the newly created AMI.
- 10aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Verifies the instance state is available.
- 11aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers details about the newly launched instance.
- 12aws:branch - Branches based on whether you provided a value for the SnapshotId parameter.
- 13aws:executeScript - Returns a list of snapshots within the time period specified.
- 14aws:executeAwsApi - Stops the instance.
- 15aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for the volume state to be available.
- 16aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for the instance state to be stopped.
- 17aws:executeAwsApi - Detaches the root volume.
- 18aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for the root volume to be detached.
- 19aws:executeAwsApi - Attaches the new root volume.
- 20aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for the new volume to be attached.
- 21aws:executeAwsApi - Starts the instance.
- 22aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for the instance state to be available.

23aws :waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for system and instance status checks to pass for the instance.

24aws :executeScript - Runs a script to find a snapshot that can be used to successfully create a volume.

25aws :executeScript - Runs a script to recover the instance using the newly created volume from the snapshot identified by the automation, or using the volume created from the snapshot you specified in the SnapshotId parameter.

26aws :executeScript - Deletes resources created by the automation.

Outputs

launchCloneInstance.InstanceIds

ListSnapshotByDate.finalSnapshots

ListSnapshotByDate.remainingSnapshotToBeCheckedInSameDateRange

findWorkingSnapshot.workingSnapshot

InstanceRecovery.result

AWS Support - SendLogBundleToS3Bucket

Description

The AWS Support - SendLogBundleToS3Bucket runbook uploads a log bundle generated by the EC2Rescue tool from the target instance to the specified S3 bucket. The runbook installs the platform specific version of EC2Rescue based on the platform of the target instance. EC2Rescue is then used to collect all the available operating system (OS) logs.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Instanceld

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Windows or Linux managed instance you want to collect logs from.

- S3BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Required) S3 bucket to upload the logs to.

- S3Path

Type: String

Default: AWSSupport-SendLogBundleToS3Bucket/

Description: (Optional) S3 path for the collected logs.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

It is recommended that the EC2 instance receiving the command has an IAM role with the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** Amazon managed policy attached. The user must have at least **ssm:StartAutomationExecution** and **ssm:SendCommand** to run the automation and send the

command to the instance, plus **ssm:GetAutomationExecution** to be able to read the automation output.

Document Steps

1. aws:runCommand - Install EC2Rescue via AWS-ConfigureAWSPackage.
2. aws:runCommand - Run the PowerShell script to collect Windows troubleshooting logs with EC2Rescue.
3. aws:runCommand - Run the bash script to collect Linux troubleshooting logs with EC2Rescue.

Outputs

collectAndUploadWindowsLogBundle.Output

collectAndUploadLinuxLogBundle.Output

AWS Support - StartEC2RescueWorkflow

Description

The AWSSupport-StartEC2RescueWorkflow runbook runs the provided base64 encoded script (Bash or Powershell) on a helper instance created to rescue your instance. The root volume of your instance is attached and mounted to the helper instance, also known as the EC2Rescue instance. If your instance is Windows, provide a Powershell script. Otherwise, use Bash. The runbook sets some environment variables which you can use in your script. The environment variables contain information about the input you provided, as well as information about the offline root volume. The offline volume is already mounted and ready to use. For example, you can save a Desired State Configuration file to an offline Windows root volume, or chroot to an offline Linux root volume and perform an offline remediation.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Important

Amazon EC2 instances created from Marketplace Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) are not supported by this automation.

Additional Information

To base64 encode a script, you can use either Powershell or Bash. Powershell:

```
[System.Convert]::ToBase64String([System.Text.Encoding]::Unicode.GetBytes([System.IO.File]::ReadAllText($env:EC2RESCUE_SCRIPT)))
```

Bash:

```
base64 PATH_TO_FILE
```

Here is a list of environment variables you can use in your offline scripts, depending on the target OS

Windows:

Variable	Description	Example value
\$env:EC2RESCUE_ACCOUNT_ID	{{ global:ACCOUNT_ID }}	123456789012
\$env:EC2RESCUE_DATE	{{ global:DATE }}	2018-09-07
\$env:EC2RESCUE_DATE_TIME	{{ global:DATE_TIME }}	2018-09-07_18.09.59
\$env:EC2RESCUE_EC2RW_DIR	EC2Rescue for Windows installation path	C:\Program Files\Amazon\EC2Rescue
\$env:EC2RESCUE_EC2RW_DIR	EC2Rescue for Windows installation path	C:\Program Files\Amazon\EC2Rescue
\$env:EC2RESCUE_EXECUTION_ID	{{ automation:EXECUTION_ID }}	7ef8008e-219b-4aca-8bb5-65e2e898e20b
\$env:EC2RESCUE_OFFLINE_CURRENT_CONTROLLER_SET	Offline Windows Current Control Set path	HKLM:\AWSTempSystem\ControlSet001
\$env:EC2RESCUE_OFFLINE_DRIVE	Offline Windows drive letter	D:\
\$env:EC2RESCUE_OFFLINE_EBS_DEVICE	Offline root volume EBS device	xvdf

Variable	Description	Example value
\$env:EC2RESCUE_OFFLINE_KERNEL_VER	Offline Windows Kernel version	6.1.7601.24214
\$env:EC2RESCUE_OFFLINE_OS_ARCHITECTURE	Offline Windows architecture	AMD64
\$env:EC2RESCUE_OFFLINE_OS_CAPTION	Offline Windows caption	Windows Server 2008 R2 Datacenter
\$env:EC2RESCUE_OFFLINE_OS_TYPE	Offline Windows OS type	Server
\$env:EC2RESCUE_OFFLINE_PROGRAM_FILES_DIR	Offline Windows Program files directory path	D:\Program Files
\$env:EC2RESCUE_OFFLINE_PROGRAM_FILES_X86_DIR	Offline Windows Program files x86 directory path	D:\Program Files (x86)
\$env:EC2RESCUE_OFFLINE_REGISTRY_DIR	Offline Windows registry directory path	D:\Windows\System32\config
\$env:EC2RESCUE_OFFLINE_SYSTEM_ROOT	Offline Windows system root directory path	D:\Windows
\$env:EC2RESCUE_REGION	{{ global:REGION }}	us-west-1
\$env:EC2RESCUE_S3_BUCKET	{{ S3BucketName }}	mybucket
\$env:EC2RESCUE_S3_PREFIX	{{ S3Prefix }}	myprefix/
\$env:EC2RESCUE_SOURCE_INSTANCE	{{ InstanceId }}	i-abcdefg123456789
\$script:EC2RESCUE_OFFLINE_WINDOWS_INSTALL	Offline Windows Installation metadata	Customer Powershell Object

Linux:

Variable	Description	Example value
EC2RESCUE_ACCOUNT_ID	<code>{{ global:ACCOUNT_ID }}</code>	123456789012
EC2RESCUE_DATE	<code>{{ global:DATE }}</code>	2018-09-07
EC2RESCUE_DATE_TIME	<code>{{ global:DATE_TIME }}</code>	2018-09-07_18.09.59
EC2RESCUE_EC2RL_DIR	EC2Rescue for Linux installation path	/usr/local/ec2rl-1.1.3
EC2RESCUE_EXECUTION_ID	<code>{{ automation:EXECUTION_ID }}</code>	7ef8008e-219b-4aca-8bb5-65e2e898e20b
EC2RESCUE_OFFLINE_DEVICE	Offline device name	/dev/xvdf1
EC2RESCUE_OFFLINE_EBS_DEVICE	Offline root volume EBS device	/dev/sdf
EC2RESCUE_OFFLINE_SYSTEM_ROOT	Offline root volume mount point	/mnt/mount
EC2RESCUE_PYTHON	Python version	python2.7
EC2RESCUE_REGION	<code>{{ global:REGION }}</code>	us-west-1
EC2RESCUE_S3_BUCKET	<code>{{ S3BucketName }}</code>	mybucket
EC2RESCUE_S3_PREFIX	<code>{{ S3Prefix }}</code>	myprefix/
EC2RESCUE_SOURCE_INSTANCE	<code>{{ InstanceId }}</code>	i-abcdefgh123456789

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AMIPrefix

Type: String

Default: AWSSupport-EC2Rescue

Description: (Optional) A prefix for the backup AMI name.

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- CreatePostEC2RescueBackup

Type: String

Valid values: true | false

Default: false

Description: (Optional) Set it to true to create an AMI of InstanceId after running the script, before starting it. The AMI will persist after the automation completes. It is your responsibility to secure access to the AMI, or to delete it.

- CreatePreEC2RescueBackup

Type: String

Valid values: true | false

Default: false

Description: (Optional) Set it to `true` to create an AMI of `InstanceId` before running the script. The AMI will persist after the automation completes. It is your responsibility to secure access to the AMI, or to delete it.

- `EC2RescueInstanceType`

Type: String

Valid values: `t2.small` | `t2.medium` | `t2.large`

Default: `t2.small`

Description: (Optional) The EC2 instance type for the `EC2Rescue` instance.

- `InstanceId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) ID of your EC2 instance. IMPORTANT: AWS Systems Manager Automation stops this instance. Data stored in instance store volumes will be lost. The public IP address will change if you are not using an Elastic IP.

- `OfflineScript`

Type: String

Description: (Required) Base64 encoded script to run against the helper instance. Use Bash if your source instance is Linux, and PowerShell if it is Windows.

- `S3BucketName`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) S3 bucket name in your account where you want to upload the troubleshooting logs. Make sure the bucket policy does not grant unnecessary read/write permissions to parties that do not need access to the collected logs.

- `S3Prefix`

Type: String

Default: `AWSSupport-EC2Rescue`

Description: (Optional) A prefix for the S3 logs.

- SubnetId

Type: String

Default: SelectedInstanceSubnet

Description: (Optional) The subnet ID for the EC2Rescue instance. By default, the same subnet where the provided instance resides is used. **IMPORTANT:** If you provide a custom subnet, it must be in the same Availability Zone as InstanceId, and it must allow access to the SSM endpoints.

- UniqueId

Type: String

Default: {{ automation:EXECUTION_ID }}

Description: (Optional) A unique identifier for the automation.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

It is recommended the user who runs the automation have the **AmazonSSMAutomationRole** IAM managed policy attached. In addition to that policy, the user must have:

```
{  
    "Version": "2012-10-17",  
    "Statement": [  
        {  
            "Action": [  
                "lambda:InvokeFunction",  
                "lambda>DeleteFunction",  
                "lambda:GetFunction"  
            ],  
            "Resource": "arn:aws:lambda:*:An-AWS-Account-  
ID:function:AWSSupport-EC2Rescue-*",  
            "Effect": "Allow"  
        },  
        {  
            "Action": [  
                "s3:GetObject",  
                "s3:GetObjectVersion"  
            ]  
        }  
    ]  
}
```

```
        ],
        "Resource": [
            "arn:aws:s3:::awssupport-ssm.*/*.{template}",
            "arn:aws:s3:::awssupport-ssm.*/*.{zip}"
        ],
        "Effect": "Allow"
    },
    {
        "Action": [
            "iam:CreateRole",
            "iam:CreateInstanceProfile",
            "iam:GetRole",
            "iam:GetInstanceProfile",
            "iam:PutRolePolicy",
            "iam:DetachRolePolicy",
            "iam:AttachRolePolicy",
            "iam:PassRole",
            "iam:AddRoleToInstanceProfile",
            "iam:RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfile",
            "iam:DeleteRole",
            "iam:DeleteRolePolicy",
            "iam:DeleteInstanceProfile"
        ],
        "Resource": [
            "arn:aws:iam::An-AWS-Account-ID:role/AWSSupport-EC2Rescue-*",
            "arn:aws:iam::An-AWS-Account-ID:instance-profile/AWSSupport-
EC2Rescue-*"
        ],
        "Effect": "Allow"
    },
    {
        "Action": [
            "lambda>CreateFunction",
            "ec2>CreateVpc",
            "ec2>ModifyVpcAttribute",
            "ec2>DeleteVpc",
            "ec2>CreateInternetGateway",
            "ec2>AttachInternetGateway",
            "ec2>DetachInternetGateway",
            "ec2>DeleteInternetGateway",
            "ec2>CreateSubnet",
            "ec2>DeleteSubnet",
            "ec2>CreateRoute",
            "ec2>DeleteRoute",
            "ec2>AssociateRouteTable",
            "ec2>DisassociateRouteTable",
            "ec2>GetRouteTables"
        ],
        "Resource": [
            "arn:aws:ec2::route-table/*"
        ],
        "Effect": "Allow"
    }
]
```

```
        "ec2:CreateRouteTable",
        "ec2:AssociateRouteTable",
        "ec2:DisassociateRouteTable",
        "ec2>DeleteRouteTable",
        "ec2>CreateVpcEndpoint",
        "ec2>DeleteVpcEndpoints",
        "ec2:ModifyVpcEndpoint",
        "ec2:Describe*"
    ],
    "Resource": "*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
}
]
}
```

Document Steps

1. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Describe the provided instance
2. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Describe the provided instance's root volume
3. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Check the root volume device type is EBS
4. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Check the root volume is not encrypted
5. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Check the provide subnet ID
 - a. (Use current instance subnet) - If *SubnetId = SelectedInstanceSubnet* then run `aws:createStack` to deploy the EC2Rescue CloudFormation stack
 - b. (Create new VPC) - If *SubnetId = CreateNewVPC* then run `aws:createStack` to deploy the EC2Rescue CloudFormation stack
 - c. (Use custom subnet) - In all other cases:

`aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Check the provided subnet is in the same Availability Zone as the provided instance

`aws:createStack` - Deploy the EC2Rescue CloudFormation stack
6. `aws:invokeLambdaFunction` - Perform additional input validation
7. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Update the EC2Rescue CloudFormation stack to create the EC2Rescue helper instance
8. `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Wait for the EC2Rescue CloudFormation stack update to complete

9. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Describe the EC2Rescue CloudFormation stack output to obtain the EC2Rescue helper instance ID
- 10 `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Wait for the EC2Rescue helper instance to become a managed instance
- 11 `aws:changeInstanceState` - Stop the provided instance
- 12 `aws:changeInstanceState` - Stop the provided instance
- 13 `aws:changeInstanceState` - Force stop the provided instance
- 14 `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Check the CreatePreEC2RescueBackup input value
 - a. (Create pre-EC2Rescue backup) - If *CreatePreEC2RescueBackup = true*
 - b. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Create an AMI backup of the provided instance
 - c. `aws:createTags` - Tag the AMI backup
- 15 `aws:runCommand` - Install EC2Rescue on the EC2Rescue helper instance
- 16 `aws:executeAwsApi` - Detach the root volume from the provided instance
- 17 `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Check the provided instance platform
 - a. (Instance is Windows):
 - `aws:executeAwsApi` - Attach the root volume to the EC2Rescue helper instance as *xvdf*
 - `aws:sleep` - Sleep 10 seconds
 - `aws:runCommand` - Run the provided offline script in Powershell
 - b. (Instance is Linux):
 - `aws:executeAwsApi` - Attach the root volume to the EC2Rescue helper instance as */dev/sdf*
 - `aws:sleep` - Sleep 10 seconds
 - `aws:runCommand` - Run the provided offline script in Bash
- 18 `aws:changeInstanceState` - Stop the EC2Rescue helper instance
- 19 `aws:changeInstanceState` - Force stop the EC2Rescue helper instance
- 20 `aws:executeAwsApi` - Detach the root volume from the EC2Rescue helper instance
- 21 `aws:executeAwsApi` - Attach the root volume back to the provided instance
- 22 `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Check the CreatePostEC2RescueBackup input value

- a. (Create post-EC2Rescue backup) - If *CreatePostEC2RescueBackup = true*
- b. aws:executeAwsApi - Create an AMI backup of the provided instance
- c. aws:createTags - Tag the AMI backup

23aws:executeAwsApi - Restore the initial delete on termination state for the root volume of the provided instance

24aws:changeInstanceState - Restore the initial state of the provided instance (running/stopped)

25aws:deleteStack - Delete the EC2Rescue CloudFormation stack

Outputs

runScriptForLinux.Output

runScriptForWindows.Output

preScriptBackup.ImageId

postScriptBackup.ImageId

AWSPremiumSupport-TroubleshootEC2DiskUsage

Description

The AWSPremiumSupport-TroubleshootEC2DiskUsage runbook helps you investigate and potentially remediate issues with Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance root and non-root disk usage. If possible, the runbook attempts to remediate issues by extending the volume and its file system. To perform these tasks, this runbook orchestrates the execution of several runbooks based on the operating system of the affected instance.

The first runbook, AWSPremiumSupport-DiagnoseDiskUsageOnWindows or AWSPremiumSupport-DiagnoseDiskUsageOnLinux, determines if disk issues can be mitigated by expanding the volume.

The second runbook, AWSPremiumSupport-ExtendVolumesOnWindows or AWSPremiumSupport-ExtendVolumesOnLinux, uses the output of the first runbook to run Python code that modifies the volume. After the volume has been modified, the runbook extends the partition and file system of the affected volumes.

⚠ Important

Access to AwSPremiumSupport-* runbooks requires an Enterprise or Business Support Subscription. For more information, see [Compare AWS Support Plans](#).

This document was built in collaboration with AWS Managed Services (AMS). AMS helps you manage your AWS infrastructure more efficiently and securely. AMS also provides operational flexibility, enhanced security and compliance, capacity optimization, and cost-savings identification. For more information, see [AWS Managed Services](#).

Run this Automation (console)**Document type**

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, Windows

Parameters

- InstanceId

Type: String

Allowed values: ^i-[a-zA-Z0-9]{8,17}\$

Description: (Required) ID of your Amazon EC2 instance.

- VolumeExpansionEnabled

Type: Boolean

Description: (Optional) Flag to control whether the document will extend the volumes and partitions affected.

Default: true

- **VolumeExpansionUsageTrigger**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Minimum usage of partition space required to trigger extension (in percentage).

Allowed values: ^[0-9]{1,2}\$

Default: 85

- **VolumeExpansionCapSize**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Maximum size that the Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) volume will be increased to (in GiB).

Allowed values: ^[0-9]{1,4}\$

Default: 2048

- **VolumeExpansionGibIncrease**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Increase in GiB of the volume. The biggest net increase between VolumeExpansionGibIncrease and VolumeExpansionPercentagelIncrease will be used.

Allowed values: ^[0-9]{1,4}\$

Default: 20

- **VolumeExpansionPercentagelIncrease**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Increase in percentage of the volume. The biggest net increase between VolumeExpansionGibIncrease and VolumeExpansionPercentagelIncrease will be used.

Allowed values: ^[0-9]{1,2}\$

Default: 20

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:DescribeVolumes
- ec2:DescribeVolumesModifications
- ec2:ModifyVolume
- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2>CreateImage
- ec2:DescribeImages
- ec2:DescribeTags
- ec2:CreateTags
- ec2:DeleteTags
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:DescribeAutomationStepExecutions
- ssm:DescribeAutomationExecutions
- ssm:SendCommand
- ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation
- ssm>ListCommands
- ssm>ListCommandInvocations

Document Steps

1. aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Check if the instance is managed by Systems Manager

2. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Describes the instance to get the platform.
3. `aws:branch` - Branches automation based on the instance's platform.
 - a. If the instance is Windows:
 - i. `aws:executeAutomation` - Run the `AWSPremiumSupport-DiagnoseDiskUsageOnWindows` runbook in order to diagnose disk usage issues on the instance.
 - ii. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets the output of the previous automation.
 - iii. `aws:branch` - Branches based on the output of the diagnostics, and if there are volumes that can be expanded to mitigate the alert.
 - A. There are no volumes that need to be expanded: End the automation.
 - B. There are volumes that need to be expanded:
 - I. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Create an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) of the instance.
 - II. `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the AMI state to be available.
 - III. `aws:executeAutomation` - Run the `AWSPremiumSupport-ExtendVolumesOnWindows` runbook in order to perform the volume modification as well as the required steps in the operating system (OS) to make the new space available.
 - b. (Platform is not windows) If the input instance is not Windows:
 - i. `aws:executeAutomation` - Run the `AWSPremiumSupport-DiagnoseDiskUsageOnLinux` runbook in order to diagnose disk usage issues on the instance.
 - ii. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets the output of the previous automation.
 - iii. `aws:branch` - Branches based on the output of the diagnostics, and if there are volumes that can be expanded to mitigate the alert.
 - A. There are no volumes that need to be expanded: End the automation.
 - B. There are volumes that need to be expanded:
 - I. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Create an AMI of the instance.
 - II. `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for AMI state to be available.
 - III. `aws:executeAutomation` - Run the `AWSPremiumSupport-ExtendVolumesOnLinux` runbook in order to perform the volume modification as well as the required steps in the OS to make the new space available.

Outputs

diagnoseDiskUsageAlertOnWindows.Output

extendVolumesOnWindows.Output

diagnoseDiskUsageAlertOnLinux.Output

extendVolumesOnLinux.Output

BackupAMILinux.ImageId

BackupAMIWindows.ImageId

AWSSupport-TroubleshootEC2InstanceConnect

Description

AWSSupport-TroubleshootEC2InstanceConnect automation helps analyze and detect errors preventing the connection to an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance using [Amazon EC2 Instance Connect](#). It identifies issues caused by an unsupported Amazon Machine Image (AMI), missing OS-level package installation or configuration, missing AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) permissions, or network configuration issues.

How does it work?

The runbook takes the Amazon EC2 instance ID, username, connection mode, source IP CIDR, SSH port, and Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the IAM role or user experiencing issues with Amazon EC2 Instance Connect. It then checks the [prerequisites](#) for connecting to an Amazon EC2 instance using Amazon EC2 Instance Connect:

- The instance is running and in a healthy state.
- The instance is located in an AWS region supported by Amazon EC2 Instance Connect.
- AMI of the instance is supported by Amazon EC2 Instance Connect.
- The instance can reach the Instance Metadata Service (IMDSv2).
- Amazon EC2 Instance Connect package is properly installed and configured at the OS level.
- The network configuration (security groups, network ACL, and route table rules) allows connection to the instance through Amazon EC2 Instance Connect.
- The IAM role or user that's used to leverage Amazon EC2 Instance Connect has access to push keys to the Amazon EC2 instance.

Important

- To check the instance AMI, IMDSv2 reachability, and Amazon EC2 Instance Connect package installation, the instance must be SSM managed. Otherwise, it skips those steps. For more information, see [Why is my Amazon EC2 instance not displaying as a managed node.](#)
- The network check will only detect if security group and network ACL rules block traffic when SourceIpCIDR is provided as an input parameter. Otherwise, it will only display SSH-related rules.
- Connections using [Amazon EC2 Instance Connect Endpoint](#) are not validated in this runbook.
- For private connections, the automation does not check if the SSH client is installed on the source machine and if it can reach the instance's private IP address.

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Parameters

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups
- ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls
- ec2:DescribeRouteTables
- ec2:DescribeInternetGateways

- `iam:SimulatePrincipalPolicy`
- `ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation`
- `ssm>ListCommands`
- `ssm>ListCommandInvocations`
- `ssm:SendCommand`

Instructions

Follow these steps to configure the automation:

1. Navigate to the [AWSSupport-TroubleshootEC2InstanceConnect](#) in the AWS Systems Manager console.
2. Select Execute automation.
3. For the input parameters, enter the following:

- **InstanceId (Required):**

The ID of the target Amazon EC2 instance that you could not connect to using Amazon EC2 Instance Connect.

- **AutomationAssumeRole (Optional):**

The ARN of the IAM role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user who starts this runbook.

- **Username (Required):**

The username used to connect to the Amazon EC2 instance using Amazon EC2 Instance Connect. It is used to evaluate if IAM access is granted for this particular user.

- **EC2InstanceConnectRoleOrUser (Required):**

The ARN of the IAM role or user that is leveraging Amazon EC2 Instance Connect to push keys to the instance.

- **SSHPort (Optional):**

The SSH port configured on the Amazon EC2 instance. Default value is 22. The port number must be between 1-65535.

- **SourceNetworkType (Optional):**

The network access method to the Amazon EC2 instance:

- **Browser:** You connect from the AWS Management Console.
- **Public:** You connect to the instance located in a public subnet over the internet (for example, your local computer).
- **Private:** You connect through the instance's private IP address.
- **SourceIpCIDR (Optional):**

The source CIDR that includes the IP address of the device (such as your local computer) you will log from using Amazon EC2 Instance Connect. Example: 172.31.48.6/32. If no value is provided with public or private access mode, the runbook will not evaluate if the Amazon EC2 instance security group and network ACL rules allow SSH traffic. It will display SSH-related rules instead.

Input parameters

InstanceId (Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance you want to troubleshoot EC2 Instance Connect. <input checked="" type="radio"/> Show interactive instance picker AWS::EC2::Instance::Id	Username (Required) The username used to connect to the EC2 instance using EC2 Instance Connect. It is used to evaluate if IAM access is granted for this particular user. String
AutomationAssumeRole (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook. EC2InstanceConnectRoleOrUser	SSHPort (Optional) The SSH port configured on the EC2 instance. Default value is '22'. The port number must be between '1-65535'. 22
SourceNetworkType (Optional) The network access method to the EC2 instance: **Browser**: you are connecting to the EC2 instance using your browser by clicking the connect button from the console. **Public**: you are accessing the EC2 instance located in a public subnet over the Internet (example: from your local computer). **Private**: you are connecting to your instance through its private IP address. Browser	SourceIpCIDR (Optional) The source CIDR that includes the IP address of the device you will be logging from using EC2 Instance Connect (such as your local computer). Example: 172.31.48.0/20. None

4. Select Execute.

5. The automation initiates.

6. The document performs the following steps:

- **AssertInitialState:**

Ensures that the Amazon EC2 instance status is running. Otherwise, the automation ends.

- **GetInstanceProperties:**

Gets the current Amazon EC2 instance properties (PlatformDetails, PublicIpAddress, VpcId, SubnetId and MetadataHttpEndpoint).

- **GatherInstanceInformationFromSSM:**

Gets the Systems Manager instance's ping status and operating system details if the instance is SSM managed.

- **CheckIfAWSRegionSupported:**

Checks if the Amazon EC2 instance is located in an Amazon EC2 Instance Connect supported AWS region.

- **BranchOnIfAWSRegionSupported:**

Continues the execution if the AWS Region is supported by Amazon EC2 Instance Connect. Otherwise, it creates the output and exits the automation.

- **CheckIfInstanceAMIIsSupported:**

Checks if the AMI associated with the instance is supported by Amazon EC2 Instance Connect.

- **BranchOnIfInstanceAMIIsSupported:**

If the instance AMI is supported, it performs the OS-level checks, like metadata reachability and Amazon EC2 Instance Connect package installation and configuration. Otherwise, it checks if HTTP metadata is enabled using AWS API, then advances to the network check step.

- **CheckIMDSReachabilityFromOs:**

Runs a Bash script on the target Amazon EC2 Linux instance to check if it is able to reach the IMDSv2.

- **CheckEICPackageInstallation:**

Runs a Bash script on the target Amazon EC2 Linux instance to check if the Amazon EC2 Instance Connect package is properly installed and configured.

- **CheckSSHConfigFromOs:**

Runs a Bash script on the target Amazon EC2 Linux instance to check if the configured SSH port matches the input parameter `SSHPort`.

- **CheckMetadataHTTPEndpointIsEnabled:**

Checks if the instance metadata service HTTP endpoint is enabled.

- **CheckEICNetworkAccess:**

Checks if the network configuration (security groups, network ACL, and route table rules) allows connection to the instance through Amazon EC2 Instance Connect.

- **CheckIAMRoleOrUserPermissions:**

Checks if the IAM role or user used to leverage Amazon EC2 Instance Connect has access to push keys to the Amazon EC2 instance using the provided username.

- **MakeFinalOutput:**

Consolidates the output of all previous steps.

7. After completed, review the **Outputs** section for the detailed results of the execution:

Execution where the target instance has all required prerequisites:

```
▼ Outputs

MakeFinalOutput.ExecutionLogs
Starting the check of EC2 Instance Connect pre-requisites for the instance 'i-[REDACTED]'.

### Checking if the AWS region is supported by EC2 Instance Connect #####
SUCCESS: The EC2 instance is located in the AWS region 'eu-west-1' which is one of EC2 Instance Connect supported regions

### Checking if the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) associated to the EC2 instance is supported #####
SUCCESS: The instance AMI 'Ubuntu 22.04' is supported by EC2 Instance Connect

### Checking if Instance Metadata service (IMDSv2) is reachable #####
SUCCESS: Instance metadata is reachable.

### Checking if EC2 Instance Connect package is installed and configured on the instance: https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/ec2-instance-connect-set-up.html #####
SUCCESS: 'ec2-instance-connect' package is installed
SUCCESS: 'ec2-instance-connect' is properly configured

|
### Checking SSH configuration at the OS-level #####
WARNING: If you configured a firewall in the EC2 instance make sure that it allows SSH traffic from the source ip CIDR
INFO: SSH is configured to listen on port 22.
SUCCESS: The configured SSH port (22) matches the provided input port (22).

### Checking Network configuration requirements to access the instance through EC2 Instance Connect using 'Browser' access mode and port '22' #####
SUCCESS: The instance has a public IPv4 address.
SUCCESS: Subnet where the instance is public.
SUCCESS: SSH access is allowed by security group id 'sg-[REDACTED]'.
SUCCESS: 'Inbound' NACL allows connection through EC2 instance connect, using the rule: '100'.
SUCCESS: 'Outbound' NACL allows connection through EC2 instance connect, using the rule: '100'.
SUCCESS: Network requirements to connect to the instance 'i-[REDACTED]' using EC2 instance connect are satisfied

### Checking if the required permissions are granted to the IAM identity 'arn:aws:iam:[REDACTED]:role/Admin' used to connect to the instance 'i-[REDACTED]' through EC2 Instance Connect with the username 'ubuntu' #####
SUCCESS: The IAM identity 'arn:aws:iam:[REDACTED]:role/Admin' includes the 'ec2:DescribeInstances' access permission
SUCCESS: The IAM identity 'arn:aws:iam:[REDACTED]:role/Admin' includes the 'ec2:SendSSHPublicKey' access permission
```

Execution where the AMI of the target instance is not supported:

```
▼ Outputs

MakeFinalOutput.ExecutionLogs
Starting the check of EC2 Instance Connect pre-requisites for the instance 'i-[REDACTED]'.

### Checking if the AWS region is supported by EC2 Instance Connect #####
SUCCESS: The EC2 instance is located in the AWS region 'eu-west-1' which is one of EC2 Instance Connect supported regions

### Checking if the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) associated to the EC2 instance is supported #####
ERROR: The instance AMI 'SLES 15.5' is not supported by EC2 Instance Connect. Please make sure to use one of the AMIs listed here: https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/ec2-instance-connect-prerequisites.html#eic-prereqs-ami
```

References

Systems Manager Automation

- [Run this Automation \(console\)](#)
- [Run an automation](#)
- [Setting up an Automation](#)
- [Support Automation Workflows landing page](#)

AWS service documentation

- [How do I troubleshoot issues connecting to my Amazon EC2 instance using Amazon EC2 Instance Connect?](#)

AWSSupport-TroubleshootRDP

Description

The AWSSupport-TroubleshootRDP runbook allows the user to check or modify common settings on the target instance which may impact Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP) connections, such as the RDP port, Network Layer Authentication (NLA) and Windows Firewall profiles. Optionally, changes can be applied offline by stopping and starting the instance, if the user explicitly allows for offline remediation. By default, the runbook reads and outputs the values of the settings.

Important

Changes to the RDP settings, RDP service and Windows Firewall profiles should be carefully reviewed before using this runbook.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Windows

Parameters

- Action

Type: String

Valid values: CheckAll | FixAll | Custom

Default: Custom

Description: (Optional) [Custom] Use the values from Firewall, RDPServiceStartupType, RDPServiceAction, RDPPortAction, NLASettingAction and RemoteConnections to manage the settings. [CheckAll] Read the values of the settings without changing them. [FixAll] Restore RDP default settings, and disable the Windows Firewall.

- AllowOffline

Type: String

Valid values: true | false

Default: false

Description: (Optional) Fix only - Set it to true if you allow an offline RDP remediation in case the online troubleshooting fails, or the provided instance is not a managed instance. Note: For the offline remediation, SSM Automation stops the instance, and creates an AMI before attempting any operations.

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Firewall

Type: String

Valid values: Check | Disable

Default: Check

Description: (Optional) Check or disable the Windows firewall (all profiles).

- **InstanceId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the instance to troubleshoot the RDP settings of.

- **NLASettingAction**

Type: String

Valid values: Check | Disable

Default: Check

Description: (Optional) Check or disable Network Layer Authentication (NLA).

- **RDPPortAction**

Type: String

Valid values: Check | Modify

Default: Check

Description: (Optional) Check the current port used for RDP connections, or modify the RDP port back to 3389 and restart the service.

- **RDPServiceAction**

Type: String

Valid values: Check | Start | Restart | Force-Restart

Default: Check

Description: (Optional) Check, start, restart, or force-restart the RDP service (TermService).

- **RDPServiceStartupType**

Type: String

Valid values: Check | Auto

Default: Check

Description: (Optional) Check or set the RDP service to automatically start when Windows boots.

- **RemoteConnections**

Type: String

Valid values: Check | Enable

Default: Check

Description: (Optional) An action to perform on the fDenyTSConnections setting: Check, Enable.

- **S3BucketName**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Offline only - S3 bucket name in your account where you want to upload the troubleshooting logs. Make sure the bucket policy does not grant unnecessary read/write permissions to parties that do not need access to the collected logs.

- **SubnetId**

Type: String

Default: SelectedInstanceSubnet

Description: (Optional) Offline only - The subnet ID for the EC2Rescue instance used to perform the offline troubleshooting. If no subnet ID is specified, AWS Systems Manager Automation will create a new VPC. **IMPORTANT:** The subnet must be in the same Availability Zone as Instanceld, and it must allow access to the SSM endpoints.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

It is recommended that the EC2 instance receiving the command has an IAM role with the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** Amazon managed policy attached. For the online remediation, the user must have at least **ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation**, **ssm:StartAutomationExecution** and **ssm:SendCommand** to run the automation and send the command to the instance, plus **ssm:GetAutomationExecution** to be able to read the automation output. For the offline remediation, the user must have at least **ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation**, **ssm:StartAutomationExecution**, **ec2:DescribeInstances**, plus **ssm:GetAutomationExecution** to be able to read the automation output. AWSSupport-TroubleshootRDP calls AWSSupport-

ExecuteEC2Rescue to perform the offline remediation - please review the permissions for AWSSupport-ExecuteEC2Rescue to ensure you can run the automation successfully.

Document Steps

1. aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Check if the instance is a Windows Server instance
2. aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Check if the instance is a managed instance
3. (Online troubleshooting) If the instance is a managed instance, then:
 - a. aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Check the provided Action value
 - b. (Online check) If the **Action = CheckAll**, then:

aws:runPowerShellScript - Runs the PowerShell script to get the Windows Firewall profiles status.

aws:executeAutomation - Calls AWSSupport-ManageWindowsService to get the RDP service status.

aws:executeAutomation - Calls AWSSupport-ManageRDPSettings to get the RDP settings.

- c. (Online fix) If the **Action = FixAll**, then:

aws:runPowerShellScript - Runs the PowerShell script to disable all Windows Firewall profiles.

aws:executeAutomation - Calls AWSSupport-ManageWindowsService to start the RDP service.

aws:executeAutomation - Calls AWSSupport-ManageRDPSettings to enable remote connections and disable NLA.

- d. (Online management) If the **Action = Custom**, then:

aws:runPowerShellScript - Runs the PowerShell script to manage the Windows Firewall profiles.

aws:executeAutomation - Calls AWSSupport-ManageWindowsService to manage the RDP service.

aws:executeAutomation - Calls AWSSupport-ManageRDPSettings to manage the RDP settings.

4. (Offline remediation) If the instance is not a managed instance then:

- a. aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Assert **AllowOffline = true**
- b. aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Assert **Action = FixAll**
- c. aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Assert the value of SubnetId

(Use the provided instance's subnet) If SubnetId is SELECTED_INSTANCE_SUBNET

aws:executeAwsApi - Retrieve the current instance's subnet.

aws:executeAutomation - Run AWSSupport-ExecuteEC2Rescue with provided instance's subnet.

- d. (Use the provided custom subnet) If SubnetId is not SELECTED_INSTANCE_SUBNET

aws:executeAutomation - Run AWSSupport-ExecuteEC2Rescue with provided SubnetId value.

Outputs

manageFirewallProfiles.Output

manageRDPServiceSettings.Output

manageRDPSettings.Output

checkFirewallProfiles.Output

checkRDPServiceSettings.Output

checkRDPSettings.Output

disableFirewallProfiles.Output

restoreDefaultRDPServiceSettings.Output

restoreDefaultRDPSettings.Output

troubleshootRDPOffline.Output

troubleshootRDPOfflineWithSubnetId.Output

AWSsupport-TroubleshootSSH

Description

The AWSsupport-TroubleshootSSH runbook installs the Amazon EC2Rescue tool for Linux, and then uses the EC2Rescue tool to check or attempt to fix common issues that prevent a remote connection to the Linux machine via SSH. Optionally, changes can be applied offline by stopping and starting the instance, if the user explicitly allows for offline remediation. By default, the runbook operates in read-only mode.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

For information about working with the AWSsupport-TroubleshootSSH runbook, see this [AWSsupport-TroubleshootSSH troubleshooting topic](#) from AWS Premium Support.

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Parameters

- Action

Type: String

Valid values: CheckAll | FixAll

Default: CheckAll

Description: (Required) Specify whether to check for issues without fixing them or to check and automatically fix any discovered issues.

- AllowOffline

Type: String

Valid values: true | false

Default: false

Description: (Optional) Fix only - Set it to true if you allow an offline SSH remediation in case the online troubleshooting fails, or the provided instance is not a managed instance. Note: For the offline remediation, SSM Automation stops the instance, and creates an AMI before attempting any operations.

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **Instanceld**

Type: String

Description: (Required) ID of your EC2 instance for Linux.

- **S3BucketName**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Offline only - S3 bucket name in your account where you want to upload the troubleshooting logs. Make sure the bucket policy does not grant unnecessary read/write permissions to parties that do not need access to the collected logs.

- **SubnetId**

Type: String

Default: SelectedInstanceSubnet

Description: (Optional) Offline only - The subnet ID for the EC2Rescue instance used to perform the offline troubleshooting. If no subnet ID is specified, AWS Systems Manager Automation will create a new VPC.

Important

The subnet must be in the same Availability Zone as `InstanceId`, and it must allow access to the SSM endpoints.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

It is recommended that the EC2 instance receiving the command has an IAM role with the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** Amazon managed policy attached. For the online remediation, the user must have at least **ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation**, **ssm:StartAutomationExecution** and **ssm:SendCommand** to run the automation and send the command to the instance, plus **ssm:GetAutomationExecution** to be able to read the automation output. For the offline remediation, the user must have at least **ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation**, **ssm:StartAutomationExecution**, **ec2:DescribeInstances**, plus **ssm:GetAutomationExecution** to be able to read the automation output. AWSSupport-TroubleshootSSH calls AWSSupport-ExecuteEC2Rescue to perform the offline remediation - please review the permissions for AWSSupport-ExecuteEC2Rescue to ensure you can run the automation successfully.

Document Steps

1. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Check if the instance is a managed instance
 - a. (Online remediation) If the instance is a managed instance, then:
 - i. `aws:configurePackage` - Install EC2Rescue for Linux via AWS-ConfigureAWSPackage.
 - ii. `aws:runCommand` - Run the bash script to run EC2Rescue for Linux.
 - b. (Offline remediation) If the instance is not a managed instance then:
 - i. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Assert **AllowOffline = true**
 - ii. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Assert **Action = FixAll**
 - iii. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Assert the value of `SubnetId`
 - iv. (Use the provided instance's subnet) If `SubnetId` is `SelectedInstanceId` us
`aws:executeAutomation` to run AWSSupport-ExecuteEC2Rescue with provided instance's subnet.

- v. (Use the provided custom subnet) If SubnetId is not SelectedInstanceSubnet use aws : executeAutomation to run AWSSupport-ExecuteEC2Rescue with provided SubnetId value.

Outputs

troubleshootSSH.Output

troubleshootSSHOFFLINE.Output

troubleshootSSHOFFLINEWithSubnetId.Output

AWSSupport - TroubleshootSUSERegistration

Description

The AWSSupport - TroubleshootSUSERegistration runbook helps you to identify why registering an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) SUSE Linux Enterprise Server instance with SUSE Update Infrastructure failed. The automation output provides steps to resolve, or helps you troubleshoot, the issue. If the instance passes all checks during the automation, the instance is registered with SUSE Update Infrastructure.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `Instanceld`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance you want to troubleshoot.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:DescribeInstanceProperties`
- `ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation`
- `ssm>ListCommandInvocations`
- `ssm:SendCommand`
- `ssm>ListCommands`

Document Steps

- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Checks if the Amazon EC2 instance is managed by AWS Systems Manager.
- `aws:runCommand` - Checks if the Amazon EC2 instance platform is SLES.
- `aws:runCommand` - Checks if the package `cloud-regionsrv-client` version is greater than or equal to the required version 9.0.10.
- `aws:runCommand` - Checks if the symbolic link for base product is broken, and fixes the link if it is broken.
- `aws:runCommand` - Checks if the hosts file (`/etc/hosts`) contains records for `smt-ec2-suscloud.net`. The automation removes any duplicate entries.
- `aws:runCommand` - Checks if the `curl` command is installed.

- `aws:runCommand` - Checks if the Amazon EC2 instance can access the Instance Metadata Service (IMDS) address 169.254.169.254.
- `aws:runCommand` - Checks if the Amazon EC2 instance has a billing code or AWS Marketplace product code.
- `aws:runCommand` - Checks if the Amazon EC2 instance can reach at least 1 regional server over HTTPS.
- `aws:runCommand` - Checks if the Amazon EC2 instance can reach the Subscription Management Tool (SMT) servers over HTTP.
- `aws:runCommand` - Checks if the Amazon EC2 instance can reach the Subscription Management Tool (SMT) servers over HTTPS.
- `aws:runCommand` - Checks if the Amazon EC2 instance can reach the `smt-ec2.susecloud.net` address over HTTPS.
- `aws:runCommand` - Registers the Amazon EC2 instance with SUSE Update Infrastructure.
- `aws:executeScript` - Gathers and outputs the output of all the previous steps.

AWSsupport-UpgradeWindowsAWSDrivers

Description

The `AWSsupport-UpgradeWindowsAWSDrivers` runbook upgrades or repairs storage and network AWS drivers on the specified EC2 instance. The runbook attempts to install the latest versions of AWS drivers online by calling SSM Agent. If SSM Agent is not contactable, the runbook can perform an offline installation of the AWS drivers if explicitly requested.

Note

Both the online and offline upgrade will create an AMI before attempting any operations, which will persist after the automation completes. It is your responsibility to secure access to the AMI, or to delete it. The online method restarts the instance as part of the upgrade process, while the offline method requires the provided EC2 instance be stopped and then started.

⚠ Important

If your instances connect to AWS Systems Manager using VPC endpoints, this runbook will fail unless used in the us-east-1 Region. This runbook will also fail on a domain controller. To update AWS PV drivers on a domain controller, see [Upgrade a Domain Controller \(AWS PV Upgrade\)](#).

Run this Automation (console)**Document type**

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AllowOffline

Type: String

Valid values: true | false

Default: false

Description: (Optional) Set it to true if you allow an offline drivers upgrade in case the online installation cannot be performed. Note: The offline method requires the provided EC2 instance be stopped and then started. Data stored in instance store volumes will be lost. The public IP address will change if you are not using an Elastic IP.

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on

your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- ForceUpgrade

Type: String

Valid values: true | false

Default: false

Description: (Optional) Offline only - Set it to true if you allow the offline drivers upgrade to proceed even though your instance already has the latest drivers installed.

- Instanceld

Type: String

Description: (Required) ID of your EC2 instance for Windows Server.

- SubnetId

Type: String

Default: SelectedInstanceSubnet

Description: (Optional) Offline only - The subnet ID for the EC2Rescue instance used to perform the offline drivers upgrade. If no subnet ID is specified, Systems Manager Automation will create a new VPC.

 **Important**

The subnet must be in the same Availability Zone as Instanceld, and it must allow access to the SSM endpoints.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

The EC2 instance receiving the command must at minimum have an IAM role that includes permissions for **ssm:StartAutomationExecution** and **ssm:SendCommand** to run the automation

and send the command to the instance, plus **ssm:GetAutomationExecution** to be able to read the automation output. You can attach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore Amazon managed policy to your IAM role to provide these permissions. We recommend, however, using the Automation IAM role AmazonSSMAutomationRole for this purpose. For more information, see [Use IAM to configure roles for Automation](#).

If you are performing an offline upgrade, see the permissions required by [AwSSupport-StartEC2RescueWorkflow](#).

Document Steps

1. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the input instance is Windows.
2. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the input instance is a managed instance. If so, the online upgrade starts, otherwise the offline upgrade is evaluated.
 - a. (Online upgrade) If the input instance is a managed instance:
 - i. `aws:createImage` - Creates an AMI backup.
 - ii. `aws:createTags` - Tags the AMI backup.
 - iii. `aws:runCommand` - Installs ENA network driver via AWS-ConfigureAWSPackage.
 - iv. `aws:runCommand` - Installs NVMe driver via AWS-ConfigureAWSPackage.
 - v. `aws:runCommand` - Installs AWS PV driver via AWS-ConfigureAWSPackage.
 - b. (Offline upgrade) If the input instance is not a managed instance:
 - i. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the AllowOffline flag is set to true. If so, the offline upgrade starts, otherwise the automation ends.
 - ii. `aws:changeInstanceState` - Stop the source instance.
 - iii. `aws:changeInstanceState` - Force-stop the source instance.
 - iv. `aws:createImage` - Create an AMI backup of the source instance.
 - v. `aws:createTags` - Tag the AMI backup of the source instance.
 - vi. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enable ENA for the instance
 - vii. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Assert the ForceUpgrade flag.
 - viii. (Force offline upgrade) If **ForceUpgrade = true** then run `aws:executeAutomation` to invoke AwSSupport-StartEC2RescueWorkflow with the drivers force upgrade script. This installs the drivers regardless of the current version that is installed
 - ix. (Offline upgrade) If **ForceUpgrade = false** then run `aws:executeAutomation` to invoke AwSSupport-StartEC2RescueWorkflow with the drivers upgrade script.

Outputs

```
preUpgradeBackup.ImageId  
preOfflineUpgradeBackup.ImageId  
installAwsEnaNetworkDriverOnInstance.Output  
installAWSNVMeOnInstance.Output  
installAWSPVDriverOnInstance.Output  
upgradeDriversOffline.Output  
forceUpgradeDriversOffline.Output
```

Amazon ECS

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon Elastic Container Service. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSSupport-CollectECSInstanceLogs](#)
- [AWS-InstallAmazonECSAgent](#)
- [AWS-ECSRUnTask](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootECSContainerInstance](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootECSTaskFailedToStart](#)
- [AWS-UpdateAmazonECSAgent](#)

AWSSupport-CollectECSInstanceLogs

Description

The AWSSupport-CollectECSInstanceLogs runbook collects operating system and Amazon Elastic Container Service (Amazon ECS) related log files from an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance to help you troubleshoot common Amazon ECS issues. While the automation is collecting the associated log files, changes are made to the file system. These

changes include the creation of temporary directories and a log directory, the copying of log files to these directories, and compressing the log files into an archive.

If you specify a value for the LogDestination parameter, the automation evaluates the policy status of the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket you specify. To help with the security of the logs gathered from your Amazon EC2 instance, if the policy status `isPublic` is set to `true`, or if the access control list (ACL) grants `READ|WRITE` permissions to the `All Users` Amazon S3 predefined group, the logs are not uploaded. Additionally, if the provided bucket is not available in your account, the logs are not uploaded. For more information about Amazon S3 predefined groups, see [Amazon S3 predefined groups](#) in the *Amazon Simple Storage Service User Guide*.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `ECSInstanceld`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the instance you want to collect logs from. The instance you specify must be managed by Systems Manager.

- **LogDestination**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon S3 bucket in your AWS account to upload the archived logs to.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm>ListCommandInvocations`
- `ssm>ListCommands`
- `ssm:SendCommand`
- `ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation`

We recommend that the Amazon EC2 instance you specify in the ECSInstanceId parameter has an IAM role with the `AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore` Amazon managed policy attached. To upload the log archive to the Amazon S3 bucket you specify in the LogDestination parameter, you must add following permissions:

- `s3:PutObject`
- `s3>ListBucket`
- `s3:GetBucketPolicyStatus`
- `s3:GetBucketAcl`

Document Steps

- `assertInstanceIsManaged` - Verifies whether the instance you specify in the `ECSInstanceId` parameter is managed by Systems Manager.
- `getInstancePlatform` - Gets information about the operating system (OS) platform of the instance specified in the `ECSInstanceId` parameter.
- `verifyInstancePlatform` - Branches the automation based on the OS platform.
- `runLogCollectionScriptOnLinux` - Gathers operating system and Amazon ECS related log files on Linux instances and creates an archive file in the `/var/log/collectECSlogs` directory.

- `runLogCollectionScriptOnWindows` - Gathers operating system and Amazon ECS related log files on Windows instances and creates an archive file in the `C:\ProgramData\collectECSlogs` directory.
- `verifyIfS3BucketProvided` - Verifies whether a value was specified for the `LogDestination` parameter.
- `runUploadScript` - Branches the automation step based on the OS platform.
- `runUploadScriptOnLinux` - Uploads the log archive to the Amazon S3 bucket specified in the `LogDestination` parameter and deletes the archived log file from OS.
- `runUploadScriptOnWindows` - Uploads the log archive to the Amazon S3 bucket specified in the `LogDestination` parameter and deletes the archived log file from OS.

AWS-InstallAmazonECSAgent

Description

The AWS-InstallAmazonECSAgent runbook installs the Amazon Elastic Container Service (Amazon ECS) agent on the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance you specify. This runbook only supports Amazon Linux and Amazon Linux 2 instances.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- InstanceIds

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) The IDs of the Amazon EC2 instances you want to install the Amazon ECS agent on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetCommandInvocation
- ec2:DescribeImages
- ec2:DescribeInstanceAttribute
- ec2:DescribeInstances

Document Steps

`aws:executeScript` - Installs the Amazon ECS agent on the Amazon EC2 instances you specify in the InstanceIds parameter.

Outputs

`InstallAmazonECSAgent.SuccessfulInstances` - The ID of the instance where installation of the Amazon ECS agent succeeded.

`InstallAmazonECSAgent.FailedInstances` - The ID of the instance where installation of the Amazon ECS agent failed.

`InstallAmazonECSAgent.InProgressInstances` - The ID of the instance where installation of the Amazon ECS agent is in progress.

AWS-ECSRunTask

Description

The AWS-ECSRunTask runbook runs the Amazon Elastic Container Service (Amazon ECS) task that you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- capacityProviderStrategy

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The capacity provider strategy to use for the task.

- cluster

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The short name or ARN of the cluster to run your task on. If you do not specify a cluster, the default cluster is used.

- count

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The number of instantiations of the specified task to place on your cluster. You can specify up to 10 tasks for each request.

- enableECSManagedTags

Type: Boolean

Description: (Optional) Specifies whether to use Amazon ECS managed tags for the task. For more information, see [Tagging your Amazon ECS resources](#) in the *Amazon Elastic Container Service Developer Guide*.

- enableExecuteCommand

Type: Boolean

Description: (Optional) Determines whether to activate the execute command functionality for the containers in this task. If true, this activates execute command functionality on all containers in the task.

- group

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The name of the task group to associate with the task. The default value is the family name of the task definition. For example, family:my-family-name.

- launchType

Type: String

Valid values: EC2 | FARGATE | EXTERNAL

Description: (Optional) The infrastructure to run your standalone task on.

- networkConfiguration

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The network configuration for the task. This parameter is required for task definitions that use the awsvpc network mode to receive their own elastic network interface, and it isn't supported for other network modes.

- overrides

Type: String

Description: (Optional) A list of container overrides in JSON format that specify the name of a container in the specified task definition and the overrides it should receive. You can override the default command for a container that's specified in the task definition or Docker image with a command override. You can also override existing environment variables that are specified in the task definition or Docker image on a container. Additionally, you can add new environment variables with an environment override.

- placementConstraints

Type: String

Description: (Optional) An array of placement constraint objects to use for the task. You can specify up to 10 constraints for each task including constraints in the task definition and those specified at runtime.

- placementStrategy

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The placement strategy objects to use for the task. You can specify a maximum of 5 strategy rules for each task.

- platformVersion

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The platform version that the task uses. A platform version is only specified for tasks hosted on Fargate. If a platform version isn't specified, the LATEST platform version is used.

- propagateTags

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Determines whether tags propagate from the task definition to the task. If no value is specified, the tags aren't propagated. Tags can only be propagated to the task during task creation.

- referenceld

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The reference ID to use for the task. The reference ID can have a maximum length of 1024 characters.

- `startedBy`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) An optional tag specified when a task is started. This helps you identify which tasks belong to a specific job by filtering the results of a `ListTasks` API operation. Up to 36 letters (uppercase and lowercase), numbers, hyphens (-), and underscores (_) are allowed.

- `tags`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Metadata that you want to apply to the task to help you categorize and organize tasks. Each tag consists of a user-defined key and value.

- `taskDefinition`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The family and revision (`family:revision`) or full ARN of the task definition to run. If a revision isn't specified, the latest ACTIVE revision is used.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ecs:RunTask`

Document Steps

`aws:executeScript` - Runs the Amazon ECS task based on the values that you specify for the runbook input parameters.

AWSsupport-TroubleshootECSContainerInstance

Description

The `AWSSupport-TroubleshootECSContainerInstance` runbook helps you troubleshoot an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance that fails to register with an Amazon ECS cluster. This automation reviews whether the user data for the instance contains the correct cluster information, whether the instance profile contains the required permissions, and network configuration issues.

⚠️ Important

To successfully run this automation, the state of your Amazon EC2 instance must be running , and the Amazon ECS cluster state must be ACTIVE .

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `ClusterName`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon ECS cluster that the instance failed to register with.

- **InstanceId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance you want to troubleshoot.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- ec2:DescribeInstanceAttribute
- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls
- ec2:DescribeRouteTables
- ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups
- ec2:DescribeSubnets
- ec2:DescribeVpcEndpoints
- ec2:DescribeVpcs
- iam:GetInstanceProfile
- iam:GetRole
- iam:SimulateCustomPolicy
- iam:SimulatePrincipalPolicy

Document Steps

aws:executeScript: Reviews whether the Amazon EC2 instance meets the prerequisites needed to register with an Amazon ECS cluster.

AWSsupport-TroubleshootECSTaskFailedToStart

Description

The AWSsupport-TroubleshootECSTaskFailedToStart runbook helps you troubleshoot why an Amazon Elastic Container Service (Amazon ECS) task in an Amazon ECS cluster failed to start.

You must run this runbook in the same AWS Region as your task that failed to start. The runbook analyzes the following common issues that can prevent a task from starting:

- Network connectivity to the configured container registry
- Missing IAM permissions required by the task execution role
- VPC endpoint connectivity
- Security group rule configuration
- AWS Secrets Manager secrets references
- Logging configuration

 **Note**

If the analysis determines that network connectivity needs to be tested, a Lambda function and requisite IAM role are created in your account. These resources are used to simulate the network connectivity of your failed task. The automation deletes these resources when they're no longer required. However, if the automation fails to delete the resources, you must do so manually.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- ClusterName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon ECS cluster where the task failed to start.

- CloudwatchRetentionPeriod

Type: Integer

Description: (Optional) The retention period, in days, for the Lambda function logs to be stored in Amazon CloudWatch Logs. This is only necessary if the analysis determines network connectivity needs to be tested.

Valid values: 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 14 | 30 | 60 | 90

Default: 30

- TaskId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the failed task. Use the most recently failed task.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- cloudtrail:LookupEvents
- ec2:DeleteNetworkInterface
- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeInstanceAttribute
- ec2:DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups

- ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls
- ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces
- ec2:DescribeRouteTables
- ec2:DescribeSubnets
- ec2:DescribeVpcEndpoints
- ec2:DescribeVpcs
- ecr:DescribeImages
- ecr:GetRepositoryPolicy
- ecs:DescribeContainerInstances
- ecs:DescribeServices
- ecs:DescribeTaskDefinition
- ecs:DescribeTasks
- iam:AttachRolePolicy
- iam>CreateRole
- iam>DeleteRole
- iam:DetachRolePolicy
- iam:GetInstanceProfile
- iam:GetRole
- iam>ListRoles
- iam:PassRole
- iam:SimulateCustomPolicy
- iam:SimulatePrincipalPolicy
- kms:DescribeKey
- lambda>CreateFunction
- lambda>DeleteFunction
- lambda:GetFunctionConfiguration
- lambda:InvokeFunction
- lambda:TagResource

- logs:DescribeLogGroups
- logs:PutRetentionPolicy
- secretsmanager:DescribeSecret
- ssm:DescribeParameters
- sts:GetCallerIdentity

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Verifies that the user or role who started the automation has the required IAM permissions. If you don't have sufficient permissions to use this runbook, the missing required permissions are included in the output of the automation.
- aws:branch - Branches based on whether you have permissions to all required actions for the runbook.
- aws:executeScript - Creates a Lambda function in your VPC if the analysis determines network connectivity needs to be tested.
- aws:branch - Branches based on the results of the previous step.
- aws:executeScript - Analyzes possible causes for the failure to start your task.
- aws:executeScript - Deletes resources created by this automation.
- aws:executeScript - Formats the output of the automation to return the results of the analysis to the console. You can review the analysis after this step before the automation completes.
- aws:branch - Branches based on whether the Lambda function and associated resources were created and need to be deleted.
- aws:sleep - Sleeps for 30 minutes so the elastic network interface for the Lambda function can be deleted.
- aws:executeScript - Deletes the Lambda function network interface.
- aws:executeScript - Formats the output of the Lambda function network interface deletion step.

AWS-UpdateAmazonECSAgent

Description

The AWS-UpdateAmazonECSAgent runbook updates the Amazon Elastic Container Service (Amazon ECS) agent on the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance you specify. This runbook only supports Amazon Linux and Amazon Linux 2 instances.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- ClusterARN

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the Amazon ECS cluster your container instances is registered with.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`

- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetCommandInvocation`
- `ec2:DescribeImages`
- `ec2:DescribeInstanceAttribute`
- `ec2:DescribeImage`
- `ec2:DescribeInstance`
- `ec2:DescribeInstanceAttribute`
- `ecs:DescribeContainerInstances`
- `ecs:DescribeClusters`
- `ecs>ListContainerInstances`
- `ecs:UpdateContainerAgent`

Document Steps

`aws:executeScript` - Updates the Amazon ECS agent on the Amazon ECS cluster you specify in the `ClusterARN` parameters.

Outputs

`UpdateAmazonECSAgent.UpdatedContainers` - The ID of the instance where the update of the Amazon ECS agent succeeded.

`UpdateAmazonECSAgent.FailedContainers` - The ID of the instance where the update of the Amazon ECS agent failed.

`UpdateAmazonECSAgent.InProgressContainers` - The ID of the instance where the update of the Amazon ECS agent is in progress.

Amazon EFS

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon Elastic File System. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSSupport-CheckAndMountEFS](#)

AWSSupport -CheckAndMountEFS

Description

The AWSSupport -CheckAndMountEFS runbook verifies the prerequisites to mount your Amazon Elastic File System (Amazon EFS) file system and mounts the file system on the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance you specify. This runbook supports mounting your Amazon EFS file system with the DNS name, or using the mount target's IP address.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Action

Type: String

Valid values: Check | CheckAndMount

Description: (Required) Determines whether the runbook verifies prerequisites, or verifies prerequisites and mounts the file system.

- EfsId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the file system you want to mount.

- Instanceld

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance on which you want to mount the file system.

- MountOptions

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The options supported by the Amazon EFS mount helper that you want to use when mounting the file system. If you specify the `tls` option, verify stunnel has been upgraded on the target instance.

- MountPoint

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The directory where you want to mount the file system. If you specify the `Check` value for the `Action` parameter, this parameter should not be specified.

- MountTargetIP

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The mount target's IP address. Mounting by IP address works in environments where DNS is disabled, such as virtual private clouds (VPCs) with DNS hostnames disabled. Also, you can use this option if your environment uses a DNS provider other than Amazon Route 53 (Route 53).

- Region

Type: String

Description: (Required) The AWS Region where the Amazon EC2 instance and file system are located.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:DescribeAutomationExecutions`
- `ssm:DescribeAutomationStepExecutions`
- `ssm:DescribeAutomationStepExecutions`
- `ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation`
- `ssm:DescribeInstanceProperties`
- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetDocument`
- `ssm>ListCommands`
- `ssm>ListCommandInvocations`
- `ssm>ListDocuments`
- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `iam>ListRoles`
- `ec2:DescribeInstances`
- `ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups`
- `elasticfilesystem:DescribeFileSystemPolicy`
- `elasticfilesystem:DescribeMountTargets`
- `elasticfilesystem:DescribeMountTargetSecurityGroups`
- `resource-groups:*`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Gathers details about the Amazon EC2 instance you specify in the `InstanceId` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Gathers details about the file system you specify in the `EfsId` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies the security group associated with the file system allows traffic on port 2049 from the Amazon EC2 instance you specify in the `InstanceId` parameter.

- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the Amazon EC2 instance you specify in the `InstanceId` parameter is managed by Systems Manager and that the status is `Online`.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value you specify for the `Action` parameter.
- `aws:runCommand` - Verifies prerequisites for mounting the file system you specify in the `EfsId` parameter.
- `aws:runCommand` - Verifies prerequisites for mounting the file system you specify in the `EfsId` parameter, and mounts the file system on the Amazon EC2 instance you specify in the `InstanceId` parameter.

Amazon EKS

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSSupport-CollectEKSIstanceLogs](#)
- [AWS-CreateEKSClusterWithFargateProfile](#)
- [AWS-CreateEKSClusterWithNodegroup](#)
- [AWS-DeleteEKSCluster](#)
- [AWS-MigrateToNewEKSSelfManagedNodeGroup](#)
- [AWSPremiumSupport-TroubleshootEKSCluster](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootEKSWorkerNode](#)
- [AWS-UpdateEKSCluster](#)
- [AWS-UpdateEKSMangedNodeGroup](#)
- [AWS-UpdateEKSSelfManagedLinuxNodeGroups](#)

AWSSupport-CollectEKSIstanceLogs

Description

The AWSSupport-CollectEKSIstanceLogs runbook gathers operating system and Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service (Amazon EKS) related log files from an Amazon Elastic Compute

Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance to help you troubleshoot common issues. While the automation is gathering the associated log files, changes are made to the file system structure including the creation of temporary directories, the copying of log files to the temporary directories, and compressing the log files into an archive. This activity can result in increased CPUUtilization on the EC2 instance. For more information about CPUUtilization , see [Instance metrics](#) in the *Amazon CloudWatch User Guide* .

If you specify a value for the LogDestination parameter, the automation evaluates the policy status of the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket you specify. To help with the security of the logs gathered from your EC2 instance, if the policy status isPublic is set to true , or if the access control list (ACL) grants READ | WRITE permissions to the All Users Amazon S3 predefined group, the logs are not uploaded. For more information about Amazon S3 predefined groups, see [Amazon S3 predefined groups](#) in the *Amazon Simple Storage Service User Guide* .

 **Note**

This automation requires at least 10 percent of available disk space on the root Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) volume attached to your EC2 instance. If there is not enough available disk space on the root volume, the automation stops.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- EKSIInstanceld

Type: String

Description: (Required) ID of the Amazon EKS EC2 instance you want to collect logs from.

- LogDestination

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The S3 bucket in your account to upload the archived logs to.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:SendCommand

We recommend that the EC2 instance receiving the command has an IAM role with the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** Amazon managed policy attached. To upload the log archive to the S3 bucket you specify in the LogDestination parameter, you must add the s3:PutObject permission.

Document Steps

- aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Confirms the operating system of the value specified in the EKSIInstanceld parameter is Linux.
- aws:runCommand - Gathers operating system and Amazon EKS related log files, compressing them into an archive in the /var/log directory.
- aws:branch - Confirms whether a value was specified for the LogDestination parameter.

- `aws:runCommand` - Uploads the log archive to the S3 bucket you specify in the `LogDestination` parameter.

AWS-CreateEKSClusterWithFargateProfile

Description

The `AWS-CreateEKSClusterWithFargateProfile` runbook creates an Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service (Amazon EKS) cluster using an AWS Fargate.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `ClusterName`

Type: String

Description: (Required) A unique name for the cluster.

- `ClusterRoleArn`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the IAM role that provides permissions for the Kubernetes control plane to make calls to AWS API operations on your behalf.

- FargateProfileName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Fargate profile.

- FargateProfileRoleArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the Amazon EKS Pod execution IAM role.

- FargateProfileSelectors

Type: String

Description: (Required) The selectors to match pods to the Fargate profile.

- SubnetIds

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) The IDs of the subnets you want to use for your Amazon EKS cluster. Amazon EKS creates elastic network interfaces in these subnets for communication between your nodes and the Kubernetes control plane. You must specify at least two subnet IDs.

- EKSEndpointPrivateAccess

Type: Boolean

Default: True

Description: (Optional) Set this value to True to allow private access for your cluster's Kubernetes API server endpoint. If you enable private access, Kubernetes API requests from within your cluster's VPC use the private VPC endpoint. If you disable private access and you have nodes or AWS Fargate pods in the cluster, then ensure that publicAccessCidrs include the necessary CIDR blocks for communication with the nodes or Fargate pods.

- EKSEndpointPublicAccess

Type: Boolean

Default: False

Description: (Optional) Set this value to `False` to disable public access to your cluster's Kubernetes API server endpoint. If you disable public access, your cluster's Kubernetes API server can only receive requests from within the VPC where it was launched.

- `PublicAccessCIDRs`

Type: StringList

Description: (Optional) The CIDR blocks that are allowed access to your cluster's public Kubernetes API server endpoint. Communication to the endpoint from addresses outside of the CIDR blocks that you specify is denied. If you've disabled private endpoint access and you have nodes or Fargate pods in the cluster, then ensure that you specify the necessary CIDR blocks.

- `SecurityGroupIds`

Type: StringList

Description: (Optional) Specify one or more security groups to associate with the elastic network interfaces created in your account by Amazon EKS.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ec2:DescribeRouteTables`
- `ec2:DescribeSubnets`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcs`
- `eks>CreateCluster`
- `eks>CreateFargateProfile`
- `eks:DescribeCluster`
- `eks:DescribeFargateProfile`

- `iam:CreateServiceLinkedRole`
- `iam:GetRole`
- `iam>ListAttachedRolePolicies`
- `iam:PassRole`

Document Steps

- `CreateEKSCluster (aws:executeAwsApi)` - Creates an Amazon EKS cluster.
- `VerifyEKSClusterIsActive (aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty)` - Verifies the cluster state is ACTIVE.
- `CreateFargateProfile (aws:executeAwsApi)` - Creates a Fargate for the cluster.
- `VerifyFargateProfileIsActive (aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty)` - Verifies the Fargate profile state is ACTIVE.

Outputs

`CreateEKSCluster.CreateClusterResponse`

Description: Response received from the `CreateCluster` API call.

`CreateFargateProfile.CreateFargateProfileResponse`

Description: Response received from the `CreateFargateProfile` API call.

AWS-CreateEKSClusterWithNodegroup

Description

The `AWS-CreateEKSClusterWithNodegroup` runbook creates an Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service (Amazon EKS) cluster using a node group for capacity.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- ClusterName

Type: String

Description: (Required) A unique name for the cluster.

- ClusterRoleArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the IAM role that provides permissions for the Kubernetes control plane to make calls to AWS API operations on your behalf.

- NodegroupName

Type: String

Description: (Required) A unique name for the node group.

- NodegroupRoleArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the IAM role to associate with your node group. The Amazon EKS worker node kubelet daemon makes calls to AWS APIs on your behalf. Nodes receive permissions for these API calls through an IAM instance profile and associated policies. Before you can launch nodes and register them into a cluster, you must create an IAM role for those nodes to use when they are launched.

- SubnetIds

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) The IDs of the subnets you want to use for your Amazon EKS cluster. Amazon EKS creates elastic network interfaces in these subnets for communication between your nodes and the Kubernetes control plane. You must specify at least two subnet IDs.

- EKSEndpointPrivateAccess

Type: Boolean

Default: True

Description: (Optional) Set this value to True to allow private access for your cluster's Kubernetes API server endpoint. If you enable private access, Kubernetes API requests from within your cluster's VPC use the private VPC endpoint. If you disable private access and you have nodes or AWS Fargate pods in the cluster, then ensure that publicAccessCidrs include the necessary CIDR blocks for communication with the nodes or Fargate pods.

- EKSEndpointPublicAccess

Type: Boolean

Default: False

Description: (Optional) Set this value to False to disable public access to your cluster's Kubernetes API server endpoint. If you disable public access, your cluster's Kubernetes API server can only receive requests from within the VPC where it was launched.

- PublicAccessCIDRs

Type: StringList

Description: (Optional) The CIDR blocks that are allowed access to your cluster's public Kubernetes API server endpoint. Communication to the endpoint from addresses outside of the CIDR blocks that you specify is denied. If you've disabled private endpoint access and you have nodes or Fargate pods in the cluster, then ensure that you specify the necessary CIDR blocks.

- SecurityGroupIds

Type: StringList

Description: (Optional) Specify one or more security groups to associate with the elastic network interfaces created in your account by Amazon EKS.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ec2:DescribeSubnets
- eks>CreateCluster
- eks>CreateNodegroup
- eks:DescribeCluster
- eks:DescribeNodegroup
- iam:CreateServiceLinkedRole
- iam:GetRole
- iam>ListAttachedRolePolicies
- iam:PassRole

Document Steps

- CreateEKSCluster (aws:executeAwsApi) - Creates an Amazon EKS cluster.
- VerifyEKSClusterIsActive (aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty) - Verifies the cluster state is ACTIVE.
- CreateNodegroup (aws:executeAwsApi) - Creates a node group for the cluster.
- VerifyNodegroupIsActive (aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty) - Verifies the node group state is ACTIVE.

Outputs

- CreateEKSCluster.CreateClusterResponse: Response received from the CreateCluster API call.

- `CreateNodegroup.CreateNodegroupResponse`: Response received from the `CreateNodegroup` API call.

AWS-DeleteEKSCluster

Description

This runbook deletes the resources associated with an Amazon EKS cluster, including node groups and Fargate profiles. Optionally, you can choose to delete all self-managed nodes, the AWS CloudFormation stacks used to create the nodes, and the VPC CloudFormation stack for your cluster. For more information about deleting a cluster, see [Deleting a cluster](#) in the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

Note

If you have active services in your cluster that are associated with a load balancer, you must delete those services before deleting the cluster. If you don't, the system can't delete the load balancers. Use the following procedure to find and delete services before you run the AWS-DeleteEKSCluster runbook.

To locate and delete services in your cluster

1. Install the Kubernetes command line utility, `kubectl`. For more information, see [Installing kubectl](#) in the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.
2. Run the following command to list all services running in your cluster.

```
kubectl get svc --all-namespaces
```

3. Run the following command to delete any services that have an associated EXTERNAL-IP value. These services are fronted by a load balancer, and you must delete them in Kubernetes to allow the load balancer and associated resources to be properly released.

```
kubectl delete svc  
service-name
```

You can now run the `AWS-DeleteEKSCluster` runbook.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `EKSClusterName`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon EKS Cluster to be deleted.

- `VPCCloudFormationStack`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) AWS CloudFormation stack name for VPC for the EKS cluster being deleted. This deletes the AWS CloudFormation stack for VPC and any resources created by the stack.

- `VPCCloudFormationStackRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN of an IAM role that AWS CloudFormation assumes to delete the VPC CloudFormation stack. AWS CloudFormation uses the role's credentials to make calls on your behalf.

- SelfManagedNodeStacks

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Comma-separated list of AWS CloudFormation stack names for self-managed nodes, This will delete the AWS CloudFormation stacks for self-managed nodes.

- SelfManagedNodeStacksRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN of an IAM role that AWS CloudFormation assumes to delete the Self-managed Node Stacks. AWS CloudFormation uses the role's credentials to make calls on your behalf.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- sts:AssumeRole
- eks:ListNodegroups
- eks:DeleteNodegroup
- eks>ListFargateProfiles
- eks:DeleteFargateProfile
- eks:DeleteCluster
- cfn:DescribeStacks
- cfn:DeleteStack

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - DeleteNodeGroups: Find and delete all node groups in the EKS cluster.

- `aws:executeScript - DeleteFargateProfiles`: Find and delete all Fargate profiles in the EKS cluster.
- `aws:executeScript - DeleteSelfManagedNodes`: Delete all self-managed nodes and the CloudFormation stacks used to create the nodes.
- `aws:executeScript - DeleteEKSCluster`: Delete EKS cluster.
- `aws:executeScript - DeleteVPCCloudFormationStack`: Delete the VPC CloudFormation stack.

AWS-MigrateToNewEKSSelfManagedNodeGroup

Description

The AWS-MigrateToNewEKSSelfManagedNodeGroup runbook helps you create a new Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service (Amazon EKS) Linux node group to migrate your existing application to. For more information, see [Migrating to a new node group](#) in the Amazon EKS User Guide.

Run this Automation (console)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- OldStackName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name or stack ID of your existing AWS CloudFormation stack.

- NewStackName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The name of the new AWS CloudFormation stack that is created for your new node group. If you don't specify a value for this parameter, the stack name is created using the format: `NewNodeGroup-ClusterName-AutomationExecutionID`.

- ClusterControlPlaneSecurityGroup

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ID of the security group you want nodes to use to communicate with the Amazon EKS control plane. If you don't specify a value for this parameter, the security group specified in your existing AWS CloudFormation stack is used.

- NodeInstanceType

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The instance type that you want to use for the new node group. If you don't specify a value for this parameter, the instance type specified in your existing AWS CloudFormation stack is used.

- NodeGroupName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The name of your new node group. If you don't specify a value for this parameter, the node group name specified in your existing AWS CloudFormation stack is used.

- NodeAutoScalingGroupDesiredCapacity

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The desired number of nodes to scale to when your new stack is created. This number must be greater than or equal to the `NodeAutoScalingGroupMinSize` value and less than or equal to the `NodeAutoScalingGroupMaxSize`. If you don't specify a value for this

parameter, the node group desired capacity specified in your existing AWS CloudFormation stack is used.

- **NodeAutoScalingGroupMaxSize**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The maximum number of nodes that your node group can scale out to. If you don't specify a value for this parameter, the node group maximum size specified in your existing AWS CloudFormation stack is used.

- **NodeAutoScalingGroupMinSize**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The minimum number of nodes that your node group can scale in to. If you don't specify a value for this parameter, the node group minimum size specified in your existing AWS CloudFormation stack is used.

- **NodeImageId**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) that you want the node group to use.

- **NodeImageIdSSMParam**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The public Systems Manager parameter for the AMI that you want the node group to use.

- **NodeVolumeSize**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The size of the root volume for your nodes in GiB. If you don't specify a value for this parameter, the node volume size specified in your existing AWS CloudFormation stack is used.

- **NodeVolumeType**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The type of Amazon EBS volume you want to use for the root volume of your nodes. If you don't specify a value for this parameter, the volume type specified in your existing AWS CloudFormation stack is used.

- KeyName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The key pair you want to assign to your nodes. If you don't specify a value for this parameter, the key pair specified in your existing AWS CloudFormation stack is used.

- Subnets

Type: StringList

Description: (Optional) A comma-separated list of the subnet IDs that you want to use for your new node group. If you don't specify a value for this parameter, the subnets specified in your existing AWS CloudFormation stack is used.

- DisableIMDSv1

Type: Boolean

Description: (Optional) Specify true to disable Instance Metadata Service Version 1 (IMDSv1). By default, nodes support IMDSv1 and IMDSv2.

- BootstrapArguments

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Additional arguments you want to pass to the node bootstrap script.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetParameters
- autoscaling>CreateAutoScalingGroup

- `autoscaling:CreateOrUpdateTags`
- `autoscaling:DeleteTags`
- `autoscaling:DescribeAutoScalingGroups`
- `autoscaling:DescribeScalingActivities`
- `autoscaling:DescribeScheduledActions`
- `autoscaling:SetDesiredCapacity`
- `autoscaling:TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup`
- `autoscaling:UpdateAutoScalingGroup`
- `cloudformation>CreateStack`
- `cloudformation:DescribeStackResource`
- `cloudformation:DescribeStacks`
- `cloudformation:UpdateStack`
- `ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress`
- `ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`
- `ec2>CreateLaunchTemplateVersion`
- `ec2>CreateLaunchTemplate`
- `ec2>CreateSecurityGroup`
- `ec2>CreateTags`
- `ec2>DeleteLaunchTemplate`
- `ec2>DeleteSecurityGroup`
- `ec2:DescribeAvailabilityZones`
- `ec2:DescribeImages`
- `ec2:DescribeInstanceAttribute`
- `ec2:DescribeInstanceState`
- `ec2:DescribeInstances`
- `ec2:DescribeKeyPairs`
- `ec2:DescribeLaunchTemplateVersions`
- `ec2:DescribeLaunchTemplates`
- `ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups`

- ec2:DescribeSubnets
- ec2:DescribeVpcs
- ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupEgress
- ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupIngress
- ec2:RunInstances
- ec2:TerminateInstances
- iam:AddRoleToInstanceProfile
- iam:AttachRolePolicy
- iam>CreateInstanceProfile
- iam>CreateRole
- iamGetInstanceProfile
- iam:GetRole
- iam:PassRole

Document Steps

- DetermineParameterValuesForNewNodeGroup (aws:executeScript) - Gathers the parameter values to use for the new node group.
- CreateStack (aws:createStack) - Creates the AWS CloudFormation stack for the new node group.
- GetNewStackNodeInstanceRole (aws:executeAwsApi) - Gets the node instance role.
- GetNewStackSecurityGroup (aws:executeAwsApi) - The step gets the node security group.
- AddIngressRulesToNewNodeSecurityGroup (aws:executeAwsApi) - Adds ingress rules to the newly created security group so it can accept traffic from the one assigned to your previous node group.
- AddIngressRulesToOldNodeSecurityGroup (aws:executeAwsApi) - Adds ingress rules to the previous security group so it can accept traffic from the one assigned to your newly created node group.
- VerifyStackComplete (aws:assertAwsResourceProperty) - Verifies the new stack status is CREATE_COMPLETE.

Outputs

DetermineParameterValuesForNewNodeGroup.NewStackParameters - The parameters used to create the new stack.

GetNewStackNodeInstanceRole.NewNodeInstanceRole - The node instance role for the new node group.

GetNewStackSecurityGroup.NewNodeSecurityGroup - The ID of the security group for the new node group.

DetermineParameterValuesForNewNodeGroup.NewStackName - The AWS CloudFormation stack name for the new node group.

CreateStack.StackId - The AWS CloudFormation stack ID for the new node group.

AWSPremiumSupport-TroubleshootEKSCluster

Description

The AWSPremiumSupport-TroubleshootEKSCluster runbook diagnoses common issues with an Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service (Amazon EKS) cluster, underlying infrastructure, and provides recommended remediation steps.

Important

Access to AWSPremiumSupport-* runbooks requires either an Enterprise or Business Support Subscription. For more information, see [Compare AWS Support Plans](#).

If you specify a value for the S3BucketName parameter, the automation evaluates the policy status of the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket you specify. To help with the security of the logs gathered from your EC2 instance, if the policy status `isPublic` is set to `true`, or if the access control list (ACL) grants `READ|WRITE` permissions to the `All Users` Amazon S3 predefined group, the logs are not uploaded. For more information about Amazon S3 predefined groups, see [Amazon S3 predefined groups](#) in the *Amazon Simple Storage Service User Guide*.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- ClusterName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon EKS cluster that you want to troubleshoot.

- S3BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The name of the private Amazon S3 bucket where the report generated by the runbook should be uploaded.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ec2:DescribeInstances`
- `ec2:DescribeInstanceTypes`

- `ec2:DescribeSubnets`
- `ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups`
- `ec2:DescribeRouteTables`
- `ec2:DescribeNatGateways`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcs`
- `ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls`
- `iam:GetInstanceProfile`
- `iam>ListInstanceProfiles`
- `iam>ListAttachedRolePolicies`
- `eks:DescribeCluster`
- `eks:ListNodegroups`
- `eks:DescribeNodegroup`
- `autoscaling:DescribeAutoScalingGroups`

In addition, the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy attached to the user or role that starts the automation must allow the `ssm:GetParameter` operation to the following public AWS Systems Manager parameters to get the latest recommended Amazon EKS Amazon Machine Image (AMI) for the worker nodes.

- `arn:aws:ssm::::parameter/aws/service/eks/optimized-ami/*/amazon-linux-2/recommended/image_id`
- `arn:aws:ssm::::parameter/aws/service/ami-windows-latest/Windows_Server-2019-English-Core-EKS_Optimized-*/image_id`
- `arn:aws:ssm::::parameter/aws/service/ami-windows-latest/Windows_Server-2019-English-Full-EKS_Optimized-*/image_id`
- `arn:aws:ssm::::parameter/aws/service/ami-windows-latest/Windows_Server-1909-English-Core-EKS_Optimized-*/image_id`
- `arn:aws:ssm::::parameter/aws/service/eks/optimized-ami/*/amazon-linux-2-gpu/recommended/image_id`

To upload the report generated by the runbook to an Amazon S3 bucket, the following permissions are required for the specified Amazon S3 bucket you specify.

- `s3:GetBucketPolicyStatus`
- `s3:GetBucketAcl`
- `s3:PutObject`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers details for the specified Amazon EKS cluster.
- `aws:executeScript` - Gathers details of the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances, Auto Scaling groups, AMIs, and Amazon EC2 GPU graphic instance types.
- `aws:executeScript` - Gathers details of the virtual private cloud (VPC), subnets, network address translation (NAT) gateways, subnet routes, security groups and network access control lists (ACLs) of the Amazon EKS cluster.
- `aws:executeScript` - Gathers details of attached IAM instance profiles and role policies.
- `aws:executeScript` - Gathers details of the Amazon S3 bucket you specify in the `S3BucketName` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Classifies the Amazon VPC subnets as public or private.
- `aws:executeScript` - Checks the Amazon VPC subnets for tags that are required as part of an Amazon EKS cluster.
- `aws:executeScript` - Checks the Amazon VPC subnets for the tags that are required for Elastic Load Balancing subnets.
- `aws:executeScript` - Checks if the worker node Amazon EC2 instances use the latest Amazon EKS optimized AMIs
- `aws:executeScript` - Checks if the Amazon VPC security groups attached to worker nodes for the tags that are required.
- `aws:executeScript` - Checks the Amazon EKS cluster and worker node Amazon VPC security group rules for the recommended ingress rules to the Amazon EKS cluster.
- `aws:executeScript` - Checks the Amazon EKS cluster and worker node Amazon VPC security group rules for the recommended egress rules from the Amazon EKS cluster.
- `aws:executeScript` - Checks the network ACL configuration of the Amazon VPC subnets.
- `aws:executeScript` - Checks if the worker node Amazon EC2 instances have the required managed policies.
- `aws:executeScript` - Checks if the Auto Scaling groups have the necessary tags for cluster autoscaling.

- `aws:executeScript` - Checks if the worker node Amazon EC2 instances are connected to the internet.
- `aws:executeScript` - Generates a report based on the outputs from the previous steps. If a value is specified for the `S3BucketName` parameter, the generated report is uploaded to the Amazon S3 bucket.

AWSsupport-TroubleshootEKSWorkerNode

Description

The AWSsupport-TroubleshootEKSWorkerNode runbook analyzes an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) worker node and Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service (Amazon EKS) cluster to help you identify and troubleshoot common causes that prevent worker nodes from joining a cluster. The runbook outputs guidance to help you resolve any issues that are identified.

Important

To successfully run this automation, the state of your Amazon EC2 worker node must be running , and the Amazon EKS cluster state must be ACTIVE .

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- ClusterName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon EKS cluster.

- WorkerID

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 worker node that failed to join the cluster.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:DescribeDhcpOptions
- ec2:DescribeImages
- ec2:DescribeInstanceAttribute
- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeInstanceStatus
- ec2:DescribeNatGateways
- ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls
- ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces
- ec2:DescribeRouteTables
- ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups
- ec2:DescribeSubnets
- ec2:DescribeVpcAttribute
- ec2:DescribeVpcEndpoints
- ec2:DescribeVpcs

- eks:DescribeCluster
- iam:GetInstanceProfile
- iam:GetRole
- iam>ListAttachedRolePolicies
- ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation
- ssm>ListCommandInvocations
- ssm>ListCommands
- ssm:SendCommand

Document Steps

- aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Confirms that the Amazon EKS cluster you specify in the ClusterName parameter exists and is in an ACTIVE state.
- aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Confirms that the Amazon EC2 worker node you specify in the WorkerID parameter exists and is in a running state.
- aws:executeScript - Runs a Python script that helps identify possible causes for the worker node failing to join the cluster.

AWS-UpdateEKSCluster

Description

The AWS-UpdateEKSCluster runbook helps you update your Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service (Amazon EKS) cluster to the Kubernetes version that you want to use.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- ClusterName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of your Amazon EKS cluster.

- Version

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Kubernetes version that you want to update your cluster to.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- eks:DescribeUpdate
- eks:UpdateClusterVersion

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Updates the Kubernetes version that is used by your Amazon EKS cluster.
- aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for the update status to be Successful.

AWS-UpdateEKSManagedNodeGroup

Description

The AWS-UpdateEKSManagedNodeGroup runbook helps you update an Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service (Amazon EKS) managed node group. You can either choose a Version or Configuration update.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- ClusterName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the cluster whose node group you want to update.

- NodeGroupName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the node group to update.

- UpdateType

Type: String

Valid values: Update Node Group Version | Update Node Group Configurations

Default: Update Node Group Version

Description: (Required) The type of update that you want to perform on the node group.

The following parameters apply only to the `Version` update type:

- `AMIRelaseVersion`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The version of the Amazon EKS optimized AMI that you want to use. By default, the latest version is used.

- `ForceUpgrade`

Type: Boolean

Description: (Optional) If true, the update won't fail in response to a pod disruption budget violation.

- `KubernetesVersion`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Kubernetes version to update the node group to.

- `LaunchTemplateId`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ID of the launch template.

- `LaunchTemplateName`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The name of the launch template.

- `LaunchTemplateVersion`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) launch template version. This parameter is only valid if a node group was created from a launch template.

The following parameters apply only to the Configuration update type:

- **AddOrUpdateNodeGroupLabels**

Type: StringMap

Description: (Optional) Kubernetes labels that you want to add or update.

- **AddOrUpdateKubernetesTaintsEffect**

Type: StringList

Description: (Optional) The Kubernetes taints that you want to add or update.

- **MaxUnavailableNodeGroups**

Type: Integer

Default: 0

Description: (Optional) The maximum number of nodes that are unavailable at once during a version update.

- **MaxUnavailablePercentageNodeGroup**

Type: Integer

Default: 0

Description: (Optional) The percentage of nodes that are unavailable during a version update.

- **NodeGroupDesiredSize**

Type: Integer

Default: 0

Description: (Optional) The number of nodes that the managed node group should maintain.

- **NodeGroupMaxSize**

Type: Integer

Default: 0

Description: (Optional) The maximum number of nodes that the managed node group can scale out to.

- `NodeGroupMaxSize`

Type: Integer

Default: 0

Description: (Optional) The minimum number of nodes that the managed node group can scale in to.

- `NodeGroupMinSize`

Type: Integer

Description: (Optional) The Kubernetes taints that you want to remove.

- `RemoveKubernetesTaintsEffect`

Type: StringList

Description: (Optional) A comma-separated list of labels that you want to remove.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `eks:UpdateNodegroupConfig`
- `eks:UpdateNodegroupVersion`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Updates an Amazon EKS cluster node group according to the values that you specify for the runbook input parameters.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the cluster update status to be Successful.

AWS-UpdateEKSSelfManagedLinuxNodeGroups

Description

The AWS-UpdateEKSSelfManagedLinuxNodeGroups runbook updates self-managed managed node groups in your Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service (Amazon EKS) cluster using an AWS CloudFormation stack.

If your cluster uses auto scaling, we recommend scaling the deployment down to two replicas before using this runbook.

To scale a deployment to two replicas

1. Install the Kubernetes command line utility, `kubectl`. For more information, see [Installing `kubectl`](#) in the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.
2. Run the following command.

```
kubectl scale deployments/cluster-autoscaler --replicas=2 -n kube-system
```

3. Run the AWS-UpdateEKSSelfManagedLinuxNodeGroups runbook.
4. Scale the deployment back to the desired number of replicas by running the following command.

```
kubectl scale deployments/cluster-autoscaler --replicas=number -n kube-system
```

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **ClusterName**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon EKS cluster.

- **NodeGroupName**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the managed node group.

- **ClusterControlPlaneSecurityGroup**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the control plane security group.

- **DisableIMDSv1**

Type: Boolean

Description: (Optional) Determines whether you want to allow Instance Metadata Service Version 1 (IMDSv1) and IMDSv2.

- **KeyName**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The key name for the instances.

- **NodeAutoScalingGroupDesiredCapacity**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The number of nodes that the node group should maintain.

- **NodeAutoScalingGroupMaxSize**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The maximum number of nodes that the node group can scale out to.

- NodeAutoScalingGroupMinSize

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The minimum number of nodes that the node group can scale in to.

- NodeInstanceType

Type: String

Default: t3.large

Description: (Optional) The instance type that you want to use for the node group.

- NodeImageId

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) that you want the node group to use.

- NodeImageIdSSMParam

Type: String

Default: /aws/service/eks/optimized-ami/1.21/amazon-linux-2/recommended/image_id

Description: (Optional) The public Systems Manager parameter for the AMI that you want the node group to use.

- StackName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the AWS CloudFormation stack used to update the node group.

- Subnets

Type: String

Description: (Required) A comma-separated list of the IDs for the subnets that you want your cluster to use.

- VpcId

Type: String

Default: Default

Description: (Required) The virtual private cloud (VPC) where your cluster is deployed.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- eks:CreateCluster
- eks:CreateNodegroup
- eks:DeleteNodegroup
- eks:DeleteCluster
- eks:DescribeCluster
- eks:DescribeNodegroup
- eks>ListClusters
- eks>ListNodegroups
- eks:UpdateClusterConfig
- eks:UpdateNodegroupConfig

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Updates an Amazon EKS cluster node group according to the values that you specify for the runbook input parameters.
- aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for the AWS CloudFormation stack update status to be returned.

Elastic Beanstalk

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for AWS Elastic Beanstalk. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSSupport-CollectElasticBeanstalkLogs](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableElasticBeanstalkEnvironmentLogStreaming](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableBeanstalkEnvironmentNotifications](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootElasticBeanstalk](#)

AWSSupport-CollectElasticBeanstalkLogs

Description

The AWSSupport-CollectElasticBeanstalkLogs runbook gathers AWS Elastic Beanstalk related log files from an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Windows Server instance launched by Elastic Beanstalk to help you troubleshoot common issues. While the automation is gathering the associated log files, changes are made to the file system structure including the creation of temporary directories, the copying of log files to the temporary directories, and compressing the log files into an archive. This activity can result in increased CPUUtilization on the Amazon EC2 instance. For more information about CPUUtilization , see [Instance metrics](#) in the *Amazon CloudWatch User Guide* .

If you specify a value for the S3BucketName parameter, the automation evaluates the policy status of the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket you specify. To help with the security of the logs gathered from your Amazon EC2 instance, if the policy status isPublic is set to true , or if the access control list (ACL) grants READ|WRITE permissions to the All Users Amazon S3 predefined group, the logs are not uploaded. For more information about Amazon S3 predefined groups, see [Amazon S3 predefined groups](#) in the *Amazon Simple Storage Service User Guide* .

If you do not specify a value for the S3BucketName parameter, the automation uploads the log bundle to the default Elastic Beanstalk Amazon S3 bucket in the AWS Region where you run the automation. The directory is named according to the following structure, elasticbeanstalk-

region - *accountID* . The *region* and *accountID* values will differ based on the Region and AWS account you run the automation in. The log bundle will be saved to the resources/environments/logs/bundle/ *environmentID* / *instanceID* directory. The *environmentID* and *instanceID* values will differ based on your Elastic Beanstalk environment and the Amazon EC2 instance you're gathering logs from.

By default, the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) instance profile attached to the Amazon EC2 instances of the Elastic Beanstalk environment has the required permissions to upload the bundle to the default Elastic Beanstalk Amazon S3 bucket for your environment. If you specify a value for the S3BucketName parameter, the instance profile attached to the Amazon EC2 instance must allow the s3:GetBucketAcl , s3:GetBucketPolicy , s3:GetBucketPolicyStatus , and s3:PutObject actions for the specified Amazon S3 bucket and path.

 **Note**

This automation requires at least 500 MB of available disk space on the root Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) volume attached to your Amazon EC2 instance. If there is not enough available disk space on the root volume, the automation stops.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **EnvironmentId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of your Elastic Beanstalk environment you want to collect the log bundle from.

- **InstanceId**

Type: String

(Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance in your Elastic Beanstalk environment you want to collect the log bundle from.

- **S3BucketName**

Type: String

(Optional) The Amazon S3 bucket you want to upload the archived logs to.

- **S3BucketPath**

Type: String

(Optional) The Amazon S3 bucket path you want to upload the log bundle to. This parameter is ignored if you do not specify a value for the S3BucketName parameter.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:SendCommand`
- `ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation`

- `ec2:DescribeInstances`

Document Steps

- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the Amazon EC2 instance you specify in the `InstanceId` parameter is managed by AWS Systems Manager.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the Amazon EC2 instance you specify in the `InstanceId` parameter is a Windows Server instance.
- `aws:runCommand` - Checks whether the instance is part of an Elastic Beanstalk environment, if there is sufficient disk space to bundle the logs, and whether the Amazon S3 bucket to which the logs would be uploaded to is public.
- `aws:runCommand` - Collects the log files and uploads the archive to the Amazon S3 bucket specified in the `S3BucketName` parameter or to the default bucket for your Elastic Beanstalk environment if a value is not specified.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableElasticBeanstalkEnvironmentLogStreaming

Description

The `AWSConfigRemediation-EnableElasticBeanstalkEnvironmentLogStreaming` runbook enables logging on the AWS Elastic Beanstalk (Elastic Beanstalk) environment you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- EnvironmentId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Elastic Beanstalk environment that you want to enable logging on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- elasticbeanstalk:DescribeConfigurationSettings
- elasticbeanstalk:DescribeEnvironments
- elasticbeanstalk:UpdateEnvironment

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Enables logging on the Elastic Beanstalk environment you specify in the EnvironmentId parameter.
- aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for the status of the environment to change to Ready.
- aws:executeScript - Verifies logging has been enabled on the Elastic Beanstalk environment.

AWSConfigRemediation- EnableBeanstalkEnvironmentNotifications

Description

The `AWSConfigRemediation-EnableBeanstalkEnvironmentNotifications` runbook enables notifications for the AWS Elastic Beanstalk (Elastic Beanstalk) environment you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- `EnvironmentId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Elastic Beanstalk environment that you want to enable notifications for.

- `TopicArn`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic you want to send notifications to.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `elasticbeanstalk:DescribeConfigurationSettings`
- `elasticbeanstalk:DescribeEnvironments`
- `elasticbeanstalk:UpdateEnvironment`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables notifications for the Elastic Beanstalk environment you specify in the `EnvironmentId` parameter.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the status of the environment to change to `Ready`.
- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies notifications have been enabled for the Elastic Beanstalk environment.

AWSSupport-TroubleshootElasticBeanstalk

Description

The `AWSSupport-TroubleshootElasticBeanstalk` runbook helps you troubleshoot the potential reasons why your AWS Elastic Beanstalk environment is in a `Degraded` or `Severe` state. This automation checks the following AWS resources associated with your Elastic Beanstalk environment:

- Configuration details for a load balancer, AWS CloudFormation stack, Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group, Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances, and virtual private cloud (VPC).
- Network configuration issues with the associated security group rules, route tables, and network access control lists (ACLs) associated with your subnets.
- Verifies connectivity to the Elastic Beanstalk endpoints and public internet access.
- Verifies the status of the load balancer.
- Verifies the status of the Amazon EC2 instances.

- Retrieves a log bundle from your Elastic Beanstalk environment, and optionally uploads the files to AWS Support.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- ApplicationName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of your Elastic Beanstalk application.

- EnvironmentName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of your Elastic Beanstalk environment.

- AWSS3UploaderLink

Type: String

Description: (Optional) A URL provided to you by AWS Support to upload the log bundle from your Elastic Beanstalk environment to. This option is only available to customers who have purchased an AWS Support plan, and have opened a Support case.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- autoscaling:Describe*
- cloudformation:Describe*
- cloudformation:Estimate*
- cloudformation:Get*
- cloudformation>List*
- cloudformation:Validate*
- cloudwatch:Describe*
- cloudwatch:Get*
- cloudwatch>List*
- ec2:Describe*
- elasticbeanstalk:Check*
- elasticbeanstalk:Describe*
- elasticbeanstalk>List*
- elasticbeanstalk:RetrieveEnvironmentInfo*
- elasticbeanstalk:RequestEnvironmentInfo*
- elasticloadbalancing:Describe*
- rds:Describe*
- s3:Get*
- s3>List*
- sns:Get*
- sns>List*

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) principal who started the automation has the requisite permissions to perform all of the actions defined in the runbook.
- `aws:branch` - Branches the workflow based on the results of the previous step.
- `aws:executeScript` - Collects information about the Elastic Beanstalk environment including the load balancer, AWS CloudFormation stack, Auto Scaling group, Amazon EC2 instances, and VPC configuration.
- `aws:executeScript` - Checks for network connectivity issues with the route tables and ACLs associated with the subnets in your VPC.
- `aws:executeScript` - Checks for network connectivity issues with the security group rules associated with your Amazon EC2 instances.
- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies the status checks for the Amazon EC2 instances.
- `aws:executeScript` - Generates a link for a log bundle of your Elastic Beanstalk environment.
- `aws:executeScript` - Uploads log bundle to AWS Support.
- `aws:executeScript` - Outputs a report of action items to help you troubleshoot issues that might be affecting the status of your Elastic Beanstalk environment.

Elastic Load Balancing

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Elastic Load Balancing. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSConfigRemediation-DropInvalidHeadersForALB](#)
- [AWS-EnableCLBAccessLogs](#)
- [AWS-EnableCLBConnectionDraining](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCLBCrossZoneLoadBalancing](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableELBDeletionProtection](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableLoggingForALBAndCLB](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootCLBConnectivity](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableNLBCrossZoneLoadBalancing](#)
- [AWS-UpdateALBDesyncMitigationMode](#)

- [AWS-UpdateCLBDesyncMitigationMode](#)

AWSConfigRemediation-DropInvalidHeadersForALB

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DropInvalidHeadersForALB runbook enables the application load balancer you specify to remove HTTP headers with invalid headers.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- LoadBalancerArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the load balancer that you want to drop invalid headers.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes`
- `elasticloadbalancing:ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables the drop invalid headers setting for the load balancer you specify in the `LoadBalancerArn` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies the drop invalid headers setting has been enabled on the load balancer you specify in the `LoadBalancerArn` parameter.

AWS-EnableCLBAccessLogs

Description

The AWS-EnableCLBAccessLogs runbook enables access logs for a Classic Load Balancer.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- EmitInterval

Type: Integer

Valid values: 5 | 60

Default: 60

Description: (Optional) The interval for publishing the access logs in minutes.

- LoadBalancerNames

Type: String

Description: (Required) A comma separated list of Classic Load Balancers you want to enable access logs for.

- S3BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket where the access logs are stored.

- S3BucketPrefix

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The logical hierarchy you created for your Amazon S3 bucket, for example my-bucket-prefix/prod. If the prefix is not provided, the log is placed at the root level of the bucket.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- elasticloadbalancing:ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Enables access logs for the Classic Load Balancers you specify in the LoadBalancerNames parameter.

Outputs

EnableCLBAccessLogs.SuccessesLoadBalancers - List of load balancer names where access logs were successfully enabled.

EnableCLBAccessLogs.FailedLoadBalancers - MapList of load balancer names where enabling access logs failed and the reason for the failure.

AWS-EnableCLBConnectionDraining

Description

The AWS-EnableCLBConnectionDraining runbook enables connection draining on a Classic Load Balancer (CLB) to the specified timeout value. Connection drainings enables the CLB to complete in-flight requests made to instances that are deregistering or unhealthy with the specified timeout being the time it keeps connections alive before reporting the instance as deregistered. For more information about connection draining on CLBs, see [Configure connection draining for your Classic Load Balancer](#) in the *User Guide for Classic Load Balancers*.

Run this Automation (console)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **LoadBalancerName**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the load balancer you want to enable connection draining on.

- **ConnectionTimeout**

Type: Integer

Valid values: 1-3600

Default: 300

Description: (Required) The connection timeout value for the load balancer. The timeout value can be set between 1 and 3600 seconds.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes`
- `elasticloadbalancing:ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes`

Document Steps

- `ModifyLoadBalancerConnectionDraining` (`aws:executeAwsApi`): Enables connection draining and sets the specified timeout value for the load balancer you specify.

- VerifyLoadBalancerConnectionDrainingEnabled (aws:assertAwsResourceProperty): Verifies that connection draining is enabled for the load balancer.
- VerifyLoadBalancerConnectionDrainingTimeout (aws:assertAwsResourceProperty): Verifies that the connection timeout value for the load balancer matches the value you specified.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCLBCrossZoneLoadBalancing

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCLBCrossZoneLoadBalancing runbook enables cross-zone load balancing for the Classic Load Balancer (CLB) you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- LoadBalancerName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the CLB that you want to enable cross-zone load balancing on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `elb:DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes`
- `elb:ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables cross-zone load balancing for the CLB you specify in the `LoadBalancerName` parameter.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies cross-zone load balancing has been enabled on the CLB.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableELBDeletionProtection

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableELBDeletionProtection runbook enables deletion protection for the elastic load balancer (ELB) you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- LoadBalancerArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the ELB that you want to enable deletion protection on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancers
- elasticloadbalancing:ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Enables deletion protection on the ELB you specify in the LoadBalancerArn parameter.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableLoggingForALBAndCLB

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableLoggingForALBAndCLB runbook enables logging for the specified AWS Application Load Balancer or a Classic Load Balancer (CLB).

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- LoadBalancerId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Classic Load Balancer name or the Application Load Balancer ARN.

- S3BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon S3 bucket name.

- S3BucketPrefix

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The logical hierarchy you created for your Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket, for example my-bucket-prefix/prod . If the prefix is not provided, the log is placed at the root level of the bucket.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes`
- `elasticloadbalancing:ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Enables and verifies the logging for the Classic Load Balancer or the Application Load Balancer.

AWS Support - Troubleshoot CLB Connectivity

Description

The `AWS Support - Troubleshoot CLB Connectivity` runbook help you troubleshoot connectivity issues between a Classic Load Balancer (CLB) and Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances. Also, connectivity issues between a client and the CLB are reviewed. This runbook also reviews health checks for the CLB, verifies that best practices are being followed, and creates a troubleshooting dashboard for you. Optionally, you can upload the automation output to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. However, this runbook does not support uploading output to S3 buckets that are publicly accessible. We recommend creating a temporary S3 bucket for this automation.

Important

Using this runbook might incur charges for the dashboard that is created. For more information, see [Amazon CloudWatch Pricing](#)

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- InvestigationType

Type: String

Valid values: Best Practices | Connectivity Issues | Troubleshooting Dashboard

Description: (Required) The operations you want the runbook to perform.

- LoadBalancerName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the CLB.

- S3Location

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The name of the S3 bucket you want to send the automation results to. Publicly accessible buckets are not supported. If your S3 bucket uses server-side encryption, the user or role running this automation must have `kms : GenerateDataKey` permissions for the AWS KMS key.

- S3LocationPrefix

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon S3 key prefix (subfolder) you want to upload the automation output to. The format output is stored in the following format: DOC-EXAMPLE-BUCKET/*S3LocationPrefix*/{{InvestigationType}}_{{automation:EXECUTION_ID}}.txt.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls
- ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces
- ec2:DescribeRouteTables
- ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups
- ec2:DescribeVpcAttribute
- ec2:DescribeVpcs
- ec2:DescribeSubnets
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancers
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancerPolicies
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeInstanceHealth
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes
- iam>ListRoles
- cloudwatch:PutDashboard
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:DescribeAutomationExecutions
- ssm:DescribeAutomationStepExecutions
- ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation
- ssm:DescribeInstanceProperties
- ssm:GetDocument
- ssm>ListCommands

- `ssm>ListCommandInvocations`
- `ssm>ListDocuments`
- `ssm>SendCommand`
- `s3:GetBucketAcl`
- `s3:GetBucketPolicyStatus`
- `s3:GetPublicAccessBlock`
- `s3:PutObject`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies that the CLB you specify in the `LoadBalancerName` parameter exists.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value specified for the `InvestigationType` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Performs connectivity checks to the CLB.
- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies that the CLB configuration adheres to Elastic Load Balancing best practices.
- `aws:executeScript` - Creates an Amazon CloudWatch dashboard for your CLB.
- `aws:executeScript` - Creates a text file with the results of the automation and uploads it to the Amazon S3 bucket you specify in the `S3Location` parameter.

Outputs

`RunBestPractices.Summary`

`RunConnectivityChecks.Summary`

`CreateTroubleshootingDashboard.Output`

`UploadOutputToS3.Output`

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableNLBCrossZoneLoadBalancing

Description

The `AWSConfigRemediation-EnableNLBCrossZoneLoadBalancing` runbook enables cross zone load balancing for the network load balancer (NLB) you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- LoadBalancerArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the NLB that you want to enable cross zone load balancing on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes
- elasticloadbalancing:ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables cross zone load balancing for the NLB you specify in the `LoadBalancerArn` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies cross zone load balancing has been enabled on the NLB.

AWS-UpdateALBDesyncMitigationMode

Description

The AWS-UpdateALBDesyncMitigationMode runbook will update the desync mitigation mode on an Application Load Balancer (ALB) to the specified mitigation mode. The desync mitigation mode determines how the load balancer handles requests that might pose a security risk to your application.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `LoadBalancerArn`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the ALB that you want to modify the desync mitigation mode of.

- DesyncMitigationMode

Type: String

Valid values: monitor | defensive | strictest

Description: (Required) The mitigation mode that you want the ALB to use. For information about desync mitigation modes, see [Desync mitigation mode](#) in the *User Guide for Application Load Balancers*.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancers
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes
- elasticloadbalancing:ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes

Document Steps

- VerifyLoadBalancerType (aws:assertAwsResourceProperty) - Verifies that the value specified for the LoadBalancerArn input parameter is for an application load balancer before proceeding to the next step.
- ModifyLoadBalancerDesyncMode (aws:executeAwsApi) - Updates the ALB to use the specified DesyncMitigationMode.
- VerifyLoadBalancerDesyncMitigationMode (aws:executeScript) - Verifies that the desync mitigation mode was updated for the target ALB.

Outputs

VerifyLoadBalancerDesyncMitigationMode.ModificationResult - Message payload of the script verifying the modification to your ALB.

AWS-UpdateCLBDesyncMitigationMode

Description

The AWS-UpdateCLBDesyncMitigationMode runbook will update the desync mitigation mode on an Classic Load Balancer (CLB) to the specified mitigation mode. The desync mitigation mode determines how the load balancer handles requests that might pose a security risk to your application.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- LoadBalancerName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the CLB that you want to modify the desync mitigation mode of.

- DesyncMitigationMode

Type: String

Valid values: monitor | defensive | strictest

Description: (Required) The mitigation mode that you want the CLB to use. For information about desync mitigation modes, see [Desync mitigation mode](#) in the *User Guide for Application Load Balancers*.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes`
- `elasticloadbalancing:ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes`

Document Steps

- `ModifyLoadBalancerDesyncMode` (`aws:executeAwsApi`) - Updates the CLB to use the specified `DesyncMitigationMode`.
- `VerifyLoadBalancerDesyncMitigationMode` (`aws:executeScript`) - Verifies that the desync mitigation mode was updated for the target CLB.

Outputs

`VerifyLoadBalancerDesyncMitigationMode.ModificationResult` - Message payload of the script verifying the modification to your CLB.

Amazon EMR

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon EMR. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSSupport-AnalyzeEMRLogs](#)

AWSSupport-AnalyzeEMRLogs

Description

This runbook helps identify errors while running a job on an Amazon EMR cluster. The runbook analyzes a list of defined logs on the file system and looks for a list of predefined keywords. These log entries are used to create Amazon CloudWatch Events events so you can take any needed actions based on the events. Optionally, the runbook publishes log entries to the Amazon CloudWatch Logs log group of your choosing. This runbook currently looks for the following errors and patterns in log files:

- container_out_of_memory – YARN container ran out of memory, running job may fail.
- yarn_nodemanager_health: CORE or TASK node is running low on disk space and will not be able to run tasks.
- node_state_change: CORE or TASK node is unreachable by the MASTER node.
- step_failure: An EMR Step has failed.
- no_core_nodes_running: No CORE nodes are currently running, cluster is unhealthy.
- hdfs_missing_blocks: There are missing HDFS blocks which could lead to data loss.
- hdfs_high_util: HDFS Utilization is high, which may affect jobs and cluster health.
- instance_controller_restart: Instance-Controller process has restarted. This process is essential for cluster health.
- instance_controller_restart_legacy: Instance-Controller process has restarted. This process is essential for cluster health.
- high_load: High Load Average detected, may affect node health reporting or result in timeouts or slowdowns.
- yarn_node_blacklisted: CORE or TASK node has been blacklisted by YARN from running tasks.
- yarn_node_lost: CORE or TASK node has been marked as LOST by YARN, possible connectivity issues.

Instances associated with the ClusterID that you specify must be managed by AWS Systems Manager. You can run this automation once, schedule the automation to run at a specific time interval, or remove a schedule created previously by an automation. This runbook supports Amazon EMR release versions 5.20 to 6.30.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- ClusterID

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the cluster whose nodes logs you want to analyze.

- Operation

Type: String

Valid values: Run Once | Schedule | Remove Schedule

Description: (Required) The operation to perform on the cluster.

- IntervalTime

Type: String

Valid values: 5 minutes | 10 minutes | 15 minutes

Description: (Optional) The duration of time between running the automation. This parameter is only applicable if you specify Schedule for the Operation parameter.

- LogToCloudWatchLogs

Type: String

Valid values: yes | no

Description: (Optional) If you specify yes for the value of this parameter, the automation creates a CloudWatch Logs log group with the name specified in the CloudWatchLogGroup parameter to store any matched log entries.

- CloudWatchLogGroup

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The name of the CloudWatch Logs log group you want to store any matched log entries in. This parameter is only applicable if you specify yes for the LogToCloudWatchLogs parameter.

- CreateLogInsightsDashboard

Type: String

Valid values: yes | no

Description: (Optional) If you specify yes , CloudWatch dashboard is created if it does not already exist. This parameter is only applicable if you specify yes for the LogToCloudWatchLogs parameter.

- CreateMetricFilters

Type: String

Valid values: yes | no

Description: (Optional) Specify yes if you want to create metric filters for the CloudWatch Logs log group. This parameter is only applicable if you specify yes for the LogToCloudWatchLogs parameter.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetDocument`
- `ssm>ListDocuments`
- `ssm:DescribeAutomationExecutions`
- `ssm:DescribeAutomationStepExecutions`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation`
- `ssm>ListCommandInvocations`
- `ssm>ListCommands`
- `ssm:SendCommand`
- `iam>CreateRole`
- `iam>DeleteRole`
- `iam:GetRolePolicy`
- `iam:PutRolePolicy`
- `iam:DeleteRolePolicy`
- `iam:passrole`
- `cloudformation:DescribeStacks`
- `cloudformation>DeleteStack`
- `cloudformation>CreateStack`
- `events>DeleteRule`
- `events:RemoveTargets`
- `events:PutTargets`
- `events:PutRule`
- `events:DescribeRule`
- `logs:DescribeLogGroups`
- `logs>CreateLogGroup`
- `logs:PutMetricFilter`

- `cloudwatch:PutDashboard`
- `elasticmapreduce>ListInstances`
- `elasticmapreduce>DescribeCluster`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers information about the Amazon EMR cluster specified in the `ClusterID` parameter.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on input.
 - If the provided operation is `Run Once` or `Schedule` :
 - `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the cluster is available.
 - `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the IDs of all instances running in the cluster.
 - `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the SSM Agent is running on all instances in the cluster.
 - `aws:branch` - Branches based on whether you specified to run the automation once or on a schedule.
 - If the provided operation is `Run Once` :
 - `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value specified in the `LogToCloudWatchLogs` parameter.
 - If `LogToCloudWatchLogs` value is `yes` :
 - `aws:executeScript` - Checks if a CloudWatch Logs log group with the name specified in parameter `CloudWatchLogGroup` already exists. If not, the group is created with the name specified.
 - `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value specified in the `CreateMetricFilters` parameter.
 - If `CreateMetricFilters` value is `yes` :
 - `aws:executeAwsApi` - 12 steps are ran for each metric filter
 - `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value specified in the `CreateLogInsightsDashboard` parameter.
 - If `CreateLogInsightsDashboard` value is `yes` :
 - `aws:executeAwsApi` - Creates a CloudWatch dashboard with the same name specified in the `CloudWatchLogGroup` parameter, if it does not already exist.

- If `CreateLogInsightsDashboard` value is no :
 - `aws:runCommand` - Runs a shell script to find log patterns on each instance in the cluster.
- If `CreateMetricFilters` value is no :
 - `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value specified in `CreateLogInsightsDashboard` parameter.
- If `CreateLogInsightsDashboard` value is yes :
 - `aws:executeAwsApi` - Creates a CloudWatch dashboard with the same name specified in the `CloudWatchLogGroup` parameter, if it does not already exist.
- If `CreateLogInsightsDashboard` value is no :
 - `aws:runCommand` - Runs a shell script to find log patterns on each instance in the cluster.
- If `LogToCloudWatchLogs` value is no :
 - `aws:executeAwsApi` - Runs a shell script to find log patterns on each instance in the cluster.
- If the provided operation is `Schedule` :
 - `aws:createStack` - Creates an Amazon EventBridge event that targets this runbook.
- If the provided operation is `Remove Schedule` :
 - `aws:executeAwsApi` - Verifies a schedule exists for the cluster.
 - `aws:deleteStack` - Deletes the schedule.

Outputs

`GetClusterInformation.ClusterName`

`GetClusterInformation.ClusterState`

`ListingClusterInstances.InstanceIDs`

`CreatingScheduleCloudFormationStack.StackStatus`

`RemovingScheduleByDeletingScheduleCloudFormationStack.StackStatus`

`CheckIfLogGroupExists.output`

FindLogPatternOnEMRNode.CommandId

Amazon OpenSearch Service

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon OpenSearch Service. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteOpenSearchDomain](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnforceHTTPSSOnOpenSearchDomain](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-UpdateOpenSearchDomainSecurityGroups](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootOpenSearchRedYellowCluster](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootOpenSearchHighCPU](#)

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteOpenSearchDomain

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteOpenSearchDomain runbook deletes the given Amazon OpenSearch Service domain using the [DeleteDomain](#) API.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- DomainName

Type: String

Allowed values: (\d{12}\/)?[a-z]{1}[a-zA-Z-]{2,28}

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon OpenSearch Service domain that you want to delete.

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- es:DeleteDomain
- es:DescribeDomain

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Accepts the Amazon OpenSearch Service domain name as input, deletes it, and verifies the deletion.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnforceHTTPSOnOpenSearchDomain

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnforceHTTPSOnOpenSearchDomain runbook enables EnforceHTTPS on a given Amazon OpenSearch Service domain using the [UpdateDomainConfig](#) API.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- DomainName

Type: String

Allowed values: (\d{12}\/)?[a-z]{1}[a-zA-Z-]{2,28}

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon OpenSearch Service domain that you want to use to enforce HTTPS.

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- es:DescribeDomain

- es:UpdateDomainConfig

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Enables the EnforceHTTPS endpoint option on the Amazon OpenSearch Service domain you specify in the DomainName parameter.

AWSConfigRemediation-UpdateOpenSearchDomainSecurityGroups

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-UpdateOpenSearchDomainSecurityGroups runbook updates the security group configuration on a given Amazon OpenSearch Service domain using the [UpdateDomainConfig](#) API.

Note

AWS Security groups can only be applied to Amazon OpenSearch Service domains configured for Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) Access, and not to Amazon OpenSearch Service domains configured for Public Access.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- **DomainName**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon OpenSearch Service domain that you want to use to update security groups.

- **SecurityGroupList**

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) The security group IDs that you want to assign to the Amazon OpenSearch Service domain.

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `es:DescribeDomain`
- `es:UpdateDomainConfig`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Updates the security group configuration on the Amazon OpenSearch Service domain you specify in the DomainName parameter.

AWSsupport-TroubleshootOpenSearchRedYellowCluster

Description

AWSSupport-TroubleshootOpenSearchRedYellowCluster automation runbook is used to identify the cause for [red](#) or [yellow](#) cluster health status and guide you through changing the cluster back to green.

How does it work?

The runbook **AWSSupport-TroubleshootOpenSearchRedYellowCluster** helps you troubleshoot the cause of red or yellow cluster and provides the next steps to resolve this issue by analyzing the cluster configuration and resource utilization.

The runbook performs the following steps:

- Calls the [DescribeDomain](#) API against the target domain to get the cluster configuration.
- Checks if the OpenSearch Service domain is internet-based (public) or [Amazon Virtual Private Cloud \(VPC\)-based](#).
- Creates a public or [Amazon VPC-based](#) AWS Lambda function depending on the cluster configuration. Note: The Lambda function contains the troubleshooting code that run the OpenSearch Service APIs against the cluster to determine why the cluster is in red or yellow state.
- Deletes the Lambda function.
- Displays the checks performed and the next recommended steps to resolve the red or yellow cluster issue.

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `cloudformation>CreateStack`
- `cloudformation>DescribeStacks`
- `cloudformation>DescribeStackEvents`
- `cloudformation>DeleteStack`
- `lambda>CreateFunction`
- `lambda>DeleteFunction`
- `lambda>InvokeFunction`
- `lambda>GetFunction`
- `es>DescribeDomain`
- `es>DescribeDomainConfig`
- `ec2>DescribeSecurityGroups`
- `ec2>DescribeSubnets`
- `ec2>DescribeVpcs`
- `ec2>DescribeNetworkInterfaces`
- `ec2>CreateNetworkInterface`
- `ec2>DeleteNetworkInterface`
- `ec2>DescribeInstances`
- `ec2>AttachNetworkInterface`
- `cloudwatch>GetMetricData`
- `iam>PassRole`

The `LambdaExecutionRole` parameter requires the following actions to successfully use the runbook:

- `es>ESHttpGet`
- `ec2>CreateNetworkInterface`
- `ec2>DescribeNetworkInterfaces`
- `ec2>DeleteNetworkInterface`

Overview of LambdaExecutionRole policy:

The following is an example of a Lambda function's execution role (AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role) that grants the function permission to access AWS services and resources required by this runbook. For more information, see [Lambda execution role](#).

Note

The `ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces`, `ec2>CreateNetworkInterface`, and `ec2>DeleteNetworkInterface` are only required if your OpenSearch Service cluster is [Amazon VPC-based](#) to allow the Lambda function to create and manage the Amazon VPC network interfaces. For more information, see [Connecting outbound networking to resources in a Amazon VPC](#) and [Lambda execution role](#).

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": "es:ESHttpGet",
            "Resource": [
                "arn:<partition>:es:<region>:<account-id>:domain/<domain-name>/",
                "arn:<partition>:es:<region>:<account-id>:domain/<domain-name>/_cluster/health",
                "arn:<partition>:es:<region>:<account-id>:domain/<domain-name>/_cat/indices",
                "arn:<partition>:es:<region>:<account-id>:domain/<domain-name>/_cat/allocation",
                "arn:<partition>:es:<region>:<account-id>:domain/<domain-name>/_cluster/allocation/explain"
            ]
        },
        {
            "Condition": {
                "ArnLikeIfExists": {
                    "ec2:Vpc": "arn:<partition>:ec2:<region>:<account-id>:vpc/<vpc_id>"
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

```
        "Action": [
            "ec2:DeleteNetworkInterface",
            "ec2>CreateNetworkInterface",
            "ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces",
            "ec2:UnassignPrivateIpAddresses",
            "ec2:AssignPrivateIpAddresses"
        ],
        "Resource": "*",
        "Effect": "Allow"
    }

]
}
```

Instructions

Follow these steps to configure the automation:

1. Navigate to the [AWSSupport-TroubleshootOpenSearchRedYellowCluster](#) in the AWS Systems Manager console.
2. Select Execute automation.
3. For the input parameters enter the following:

- **AutomationAssumeRole (Optional):**

The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **LambdaExecutionRole (Required):**

The ARN of the IAM role that Lambda will use to sign requests to your Amazon OpenSearch Service cluster.

- **DomainName (Required):**

The name of the OpenSearch Service domain with red or yellow cluster health status.

- **UtilizationThreshold (Optional):**

The utilization threshold percentage used to compare the CPUUtilization and JVMMemoryPressure metrics. Default value is 80.

Input parameters

AutomationAssumeRole (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.	LambdaExecutionRole (Required) The ARN of the IAM role that the AWS Lambda will use to sign requests to your Amazon OpenSearch Service cluster.
Select an existing IAM Role arn:aws:iam::[REDACTED]:role/AutomationAssumeRole	Select an existing IAM Role arn:aws:iam::[REDACTED]:role/LambdaExecutionRole
DomainName (Required) The name of the Amazon OpenSearch Service domain is red or yellow status.	UtilizationThreshold (Optional) The utilization threshold in percentage used to compare the 'CPUUtilization' and 'JVMMemoryPressure' metrics. Default value is '80'.
opensearch-red-yellow-sample	80

4. If you have enabled [fine-grained access control](#) on an OpenSearch Service cluster, make sure that the LambdaExecutionRole role arn is mapped to a role with at least `cluster_monitor` permission.

Permissions Mapped users

Cluster permissions (1)

Cluster permissions specify how users in this role can access the cluster. You can specify permissions using both action groups or single permissions. An action group is a list of single permissions. [Learn more](#)

> + cluster_monitor

Backend roles

Use a backend role to directly map to roles through an external authentication system. [Learn more](#)

Backend roles

arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/LambdaExecutionRole	Remove
--	--------

Add another backend role

Cancel Map

5. Select Execute.
6. The automation initiates.
7. The automation runbook performs the following steps:

- **GetClusterConfiguration:**

Fetches the OpenSearch Service cluster configuration.

- **CreateAWSLambdaFunctionStack:**

Creates a temporary Lambda function in your account using AWS CloudFormation. The Lambda function is used to run the OpenSearch Service APIs.

- **WaitForAWSLambdaFunctionStack:**

Waits for the CloudFormation stack to complete.

- **GetClusterMetricsFromCloudWatch:**

Gets the Amazon CloudWatch ClusterStatus, CPUUtilization, and JVMMemoryPressure OpenSearch Service cluster related metrics and its creation date.

- **RunOpenSearchAPIs:**

Uses the Lambda function to call the OpenSearch Service APIs and analyze the cluster metrics data to diagnose the cause for the red or yellow cluster status.

- **DeleteAWSLambdaFunctionStack:**

Deletes the Lambda function created by this automation in your account.

8. After completed, review the Outputs section for the detailed results of the execution.

- **RootCause:**

Provides an overview of the identified cause for cluster health to be in red or yellow state.

- **IssueDescription:**

Provides details for why the cluster is in red or yellow state and possible steps to return the cluster to green state.

References

Systems Manager Automation

- [Run this Automation \(console\)](#)
- [Run an automation](#)
- [Setting up an Automation](#)
- [Support Automation Workflows landing page](#)

AWS service documentation

- Refer to [Troubleshooting Amazon OpenSearch Service](#) for more information

AWSSupport-TroubleshootOpenSearchHighCPU

Description

The AWSSupport-TroubleshootOpenSearchHighCPU runbook provides an automated solution to collect diagnostic data from an Amazon OpenSearch Service domain to troubleshoot [high CPU](#) issues.

How does it work?

The AWSSupport-TroubleshootOpenSearchHighCPU runbook helps to troubleshoot high CPU utilization in the Amazon OpenSearch Service domain.

The runbook performs the following steps:

- Runs the [DescribeDomain](#) API against the provided Amazon OpenSearch Service domain to get the cluster metadata.
- Checks whether the Amazon OpenSearch Service domain is public or Amazon VPC-based and with the help of AWS CloudFormation, creates a public or [Amazon VPC-based](#) AWS Lambda function.
- The Lambda function fetches diagnostic data from the Amazon OpenSearch Service domains.
- Uses an AWS Step Functions state machine to orchestrate multiple Lambda function executions to gather more comprehensive data.
- Stores the collected data in an Amazon CloudWatch log group for 24 hours by default.
- Deletes the created resources, except the CloudWatch log group.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `cloudformation:CreateStack`
- `cloudformation:CreateStack`
- `cloudformation:DescribeStacks`
- `cloudformation:DescribeStackEvents`
- `cloudformation>DeleteStack`
- `lambda>CreateFunction`
- `lambda>DeleteFunction`
- `lambda:InvokeFunction`

- lambda:GetFunction
- lambda:TagResource
- es:DescribeDomain
- ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups
- ec2:DescribeSubnets
- ec2:DescribeVpcs
- ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces
- ec2>CreateNetworkInterface
- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:AttachNetworkInterface
- ec2:DeleteNetworkInterface
- logs>CreateLogGroup
- logs:PutRetentionPolicy
- logs:TagResource
- states>CreateStateMachine
- states>DeleteStateMachine
- states:StartExecution
- states:TagResource
- states:DescribeStateMachine
- states:DescribeExecution
- iam:PassRole
- iam>CreateRole
- iam>DeleteRole
- iam:GetRole
- iam:PutRolePolicy
- iam>DeleteRolePolicy
- ssm:DescribeAutomationExecutions
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution

The LambdaExecutionRole parameter requires the following actions to successfully use the runbook:

- es:ESHttpGet
- ec2:CreateNetworkInterface
- ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces
- ec2:DeleteNetworkInterface
- logs:CreateLogStream
- logs:PutLogEvents

The Lambda execution role grants the function permission to access AWS services and resources required by this runbook. For more information, see [Lambda execution role](#).

 **Note**

The ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces, ec2:CreateNetworkInterface, and ec2:DeleteNetworkInterface are only required if your OpenSearch Service cluster is [Amazon VPC-based](#) to allow the Lambda function to create and manage the Amazon VPC network interfaces. For more information, see [Connecting outbound networking to resources in a Amazon VPC](#) and [Lambda execution role](#).

Instructions

Follow these steps to configure the automation:

1. Navigate to the [AWSSupport-TroubleshootOpenSearchHighCPU](#) in the AWS Systems Manager console.
2. Select Execute automation.
3. For the input parameters enter the following:
 - **AutomationAssumeRole (Optional):**

The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **DomainName (Required):**

The name of the Amazon OpenSearch Service domain that you want to troubleshoot for high CPU issues.

- **LambdaExecutionRoleForOpenSearch (Required):**

The ARN of the IAM role to attach to the Lambda function. The Lambda function uses the credentials from this role to sign requests to the Amazon OpenSearch Service domain. If fine-grained access control is enabled on the Amazon OpenSearch Service domain, you must map this role to an OpenSearch Service Dashboards backend role with a minimum of "cluster_monitor" permission.

- **DataRetentionDays (Optional):**

The number of days to retain the diagnostic data collected from the Amazon OpenSearch Service domain. By default, the data is retained for 24 hours (one day). You can choose to retain the data for a maximum of up to 30 days.

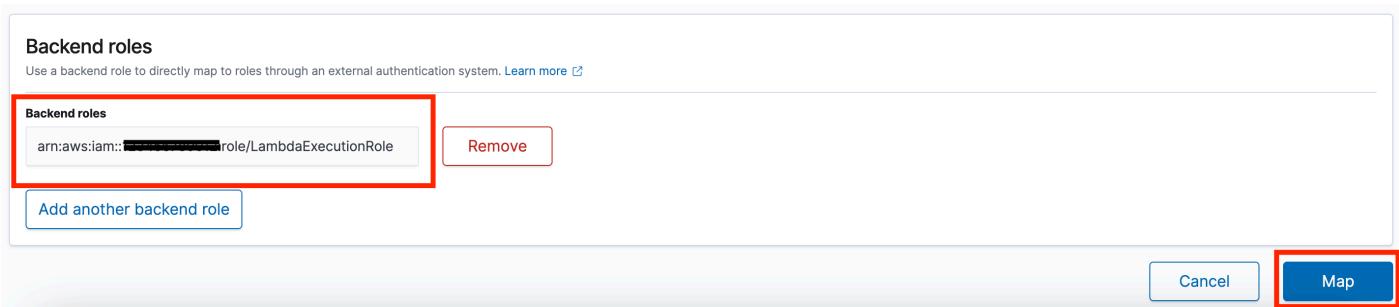
- **NumberOfDataSamples (Optional):**

The number of data samples to collect from the Amazon OpenSearch Service domain. By default, 5 data sample are collected. You can collect up to 10 samples and the Lambda function will be invoked for each sample collection.

Input parameters	
AutomationAssumeRole (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.	DomainName (Required) The name of the Amazon OpenSearch domain that you want to troubleshoot for high CPU issues. <input type="text" value="String"/>
LambdaExecutionRoleForOpenSearch (Required) The ARN of the IAM role to attach to the Lambda function. The Lambda function uses the credentials from this role sign requests to your AOS domain. If Fine-grained access control (FGAC) is enabled on your AOS domain, you must map this role to a OpenSearch dashboards backend role with minimum of "cluster_monitor" permission.	DataRetentionDays (Optional) The number of days to retain the diagnostic data collected from the AOS domain. By default, the data retained for 24 hours (1 day). You can choose to retain the data for maximum of 7 days period. <input type="text" value="1"/>
NumberOfDataSamples (Optional) The number of data samples to collect from the AOS domain. By default, 5 data sample are collected by the automation. You can collect up to 10 samples and the Lambda function will be invoked for each sample collection. <input type="text" value="5"/>	

4. If you have enabled [fine-grained access control](#) on an OpenSearch Service cluster, make sure that the LambdaExecutionRole role arn is mapped to a role with at least `cluster_monitor` permission.

Permissions	Mapped users
Cluster permissions (1)	
Cluster permissions specify how users in this role can access the cluster. You can specify permissions using both action groups or single permissions. An action group is a list of single permissions. Learn more	
> • cluster_monitor	



5. Select Execute.
6. The automation initiates.
7. The automation runbook performs the following steps:

- **checkConcurrency:**

Ensures that there is only one execution of this runbook targeting the specified Amazon OpenSearch Service domain. If the runbook finds another execution targeting the same domain name, it returns an error and ends.

- **getDomainConfig:**

Gets the configuration details for the target OpenSearch Service domain.

- **provisionResources:**

Provisions the resources for data collection using AWS CloudFormation.

- **waitForStackCreation:**

Waits for the AWS CloudFormation stack to complete.

- **describeStackResources:**

Describes the AWS CloudFormation stack and gets the ARN of the state machine.

- **runStateMachine:**

Invokes the data collector Lambda function one or more times by running a Step Functions state machine.

- **describeErrorsFromStackEvents:**

Describes errors from the AWS CloudFormation stack for errors.

- **unstageOpenSearchHighCPUAutomation:**

- **describeErrorsFromStackDeletion:**

Describes errors encountered while deleting the AWS CloudFormation stack.

- **finalStatus:**

Returns the final output of the AWSSupport-TroubleshootOpenSearchHighCPU runbook.

8. After completed, review the Outputs section for the detailed results of the execution.

- **finalStatus.FinalOutput:**

Provides the CloudWatch log group where the diagnostic data is stored.

▼ Outputs

finalStatus.FinalOutput
Hot thread data collection completed. Please check the custom CloudWatch log group /aws/lambda/AWSSupport-HighCPU-df52ba5d-8773-4058-a908-b67ecd9c9d11 for more information.

References

Systems Manager Automation

- [Run this Automation \(console\)](#)
- [Run an automation](#)
- [Setting up an Automation](#)
- [Support Automation Workflows landing page](#)

AWS service documentation

- Refer to [Troubleshooting Amazon OpenSearch Service](#) for more information

EventBridge

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon EventBridge. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-AddOpsItemDedupStringToEventBridgeRule](#)
- [AWS-DisableEventBridgeRule](#)

AWS-AddOpsItemDedupStringToEventBridgeRule

Description

The AWS-AddOpsItemDedupStringToEventBridgeRule runbook adds a deduplication string for all AWS Systems Manager OpsItems associated with an Amazon EventBridge rule. The runbook doesn't add a deduplication string to the rule if one has already been applied. To learn more deduplication strings and OpsItems, see [Reducing duplicate OpsItems](#) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- DedupString

Type: String

Description: (Required) The deduplication string you want to add to the rule.

- RuleName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the rule you want to add the deduplication string to.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- events>ListTargetsByRule
- events>PutTargets

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Adds a deduplication string to the EventBridge rule you specify in the RuleName parameter.

AWS-DisableEventBridgeRule

Description

The AWS-DisableEventBridgeRule runbook disables the Amazon EventBridge rule you specify. To learn more about EventBridge rules, see [Amazon EventBridge rules](#) in the *Amazon EventBridge User Guide*.

Run this Automation (console)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- EventBusName

Type: String

Default: default

Description: (Optional) The event bus associated with the rule you want to disable.

- RuleName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the rule you want to disable.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- events:DisableRule

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Disables the EventBridge rule you specify in the RuleName parameter.

GuardDuty

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon GuardDuty. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSConfigRemediation-CreateGuardDutyDetector](#)

AWSConfigRemediation-CreateGuardDutyDetector

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-CreateGuardDutyDetector runbook creates an Amazon GuardDuty (GuardDuty) detector in the AWS Region where you run the automation.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `guardduty>CreateDetector`
- `guardduty:GetDetector`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Creates a GuardDuty detector.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the Status of the detector is ENABLED .

IAM

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for AWS Identity and Access Management. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-AttachIAMToInstance](#)
- [AWS-DeleteAMIInlinePolicy](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteIAMRole](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteIAMUser](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedIAMGroup](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedIAMPolicy](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DetachIAMPolicy](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableAccountAccessAnalyzer](#)
- [AWSSupport-GrantPermissionsToIAMUser](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-RemoveUserPolicies](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-ReplaceAMIInlinePolicy](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-RevokeUnusedIAMUserCredentials](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-SetIAMPasswordPolicy](#)

AWS-AttachIAMToInstance

Description

Attach an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role to a managed instance.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- ForceReplace

Type: Boolean

Description: (Optional) Flag to specify whether to replace the existing IAM profile or not.

Default: true

- Instanceld

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the instance on which you want to assign an IAM role.

- **RoleName**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The IAM role name to add to the managed instance.

Document Steps

1. aws : executeAwsApi - `DescribeInstanceProfile` - Find the IAM instance profile attached to the EC2 instance.
2. aws : branch - `CheckInstanceProfileAssociations` - Check the IAM instance profile attached to the EC2 instance.
 - a. If an IAM instance profile is attached and ForceReplace is set to true :
 - i. aws : executeAwsApi - `DisassociateIamInstanceProfile` - Disassociate the IAM instance profile from the EC2 instance.
 - b. aws : executeAwsApi - `ListInstanceProfilesForRole` - List instance profiles for the IAM role provided.
 - c. aws : branch - `CheckInstanceProfileCreated` - Check if the IAM role provided has an associated instance profile.
 - i. If the IAM role has an associated instance profile:
 - A. aws : executeAwsApi - `AttachIAMProfileToInstance` - Attach the IAM instance profile role to the EC2 instance.
 - i. If the IAM role does not have an associated instance profile:
 - A. aws : executeAwsApi - `CreateInstanceProfileForRole` - Create an instance profile role for the specified IAM role.
 - B. aws : executeAwsApi - `AddRoleToInstanceProfile` - Attach the instance profile role to the specified IAM role.
 - C. aws : executeAwsApi - `GetInstanceProfile` - Get the instance profile data for the specified IAM role.
 - D. aws : executeAwsApi - `AttachIAMProfileToInstanceWithRetry` - Attach the IAM instance profile role to the EC2 instance.

Outputs

`AttachIAMProfileToInstanceWithRetry.AssociationId`

GetInstanceProfile.InstanceProfileName

GetInstanceProfile.InstanceProfileArn

AttachIAMProfileToInstance.AssociationId

ListInstanceProfilesForRole.InstanceProfileName

ListInstanceProfilesForRole.InstanceProfileArn

AWS-DeleteIAMInlinePolicy

Description

The AWS-DeleteIAMInlinePolicy runbook deletes all AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) inline policies attached to the IAM identities you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- IamArns

Type: String

Description: (Required) A comma separated list of ARNs for the IAM identities you want to delete inline policies from. This list can include IAM users, groups, or roles.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- iam:DeleteGroupPolicy
- iam:DeleteRolePolicy
- iam:DeleteUserPolicy
- iam>ListGroupPolicies
- iam>ListRolePolicies
- iam>ListUserPolicies

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Deletes the IAM inline policies attached to the targeted IAM identities.

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteIAMRole

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteIAMRole runbook deletes the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role you specify. This automation does not delete instance profiles associated with the IAM role, or service-linked roles.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- IAMRoleID

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the IAM role you want to delete.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `iam:DeleteRole`
- `iam:DeleteRolePolicy`
- `iam:GetRole`
- `iam>ListAttachedRolePolicies`
- `iam>ListInstanceProfilesForRole`
- `iam>ListRolePolicies`
- `iam>ListRoles`
- `iam:RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfile`

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Gathers the name of the IAM role you specify in the IAMRoleID parameter.
- aws:executeScript - Gathers policies and instance profiles associated with the IAM role.
- aws:executeScript - Deletes attached policies.
- aws:executeScript - Deletes the IAM role and verifies the role has been deleted.

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteIAMUser

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteIAMUser runbook deletes the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) user you specify. This automation deletes or detaches the following resources associated with the IAM user:

- Access keys
- Attached managed policies
- Git credentials
- IAM group memberships
- IAM user password
- Inline policies
- Multi-factor authentication (MFA) devices
- Signing certificates
- SSH public keys

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- IAMUserId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the IAM user you want to delete.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- iam:DeactivateMFADevice
- iam>DeleteAccessKey
- iam>DeleteLoginProfile
- iam>DeleteServiceSpecificCredential
- iam>DeleteSigningCertificate
- iam>DeleteSSHPublicKey
- iam>DeleteVirtualMFADevice
- iam>DeleteUser
- iam>DeleteUserPolicy
- iam:DetachUserPolicy

- `iam:GetUser`
- `iam>ListAttachedUserPolicies`
- `iam>ListAccessKeys`
- `iam>ListGroupsForUser`
- `iam>ListMFADevices`
- `iam>ListServiceSpecificCredentials`
- `iam>ListSigningCertificates`
- `iam>ListSSHPublicKeys`
- `iam>ListUserPolicies`
- `iam>ListUsers`
- `iam:RemoveUserFromGroup`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Gathers the user name of the IAM user you specify in the `IAMUserId` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Gathers access keys, certificates, credentials, MFA devices, and SSH keys associated with the IAM user.
- `aws:executeScript` - Gathers group memberships and policies for the IAM user.
- `aws:executeScript` - Deletes access keys, certificates, credentials, MFA devices, and SSH keys associated with the IAM user.
- `aws:executeScript` - Deletes group memberships and policies for the IAM user.
- `aws:executeScript` - Deletes the IAM user and verifies the user has been deleted.

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedIAMGroup

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedIAMGroup runbook deletes an IAM group that does not contain any users.

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedIAMGroup runbook deletes an IAM group that does not contain any users.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- `GroupName`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the IAM group that you want to delete.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `iam:DeleteGroup`
- `iam:DeleteGroupPolicy`
- `iam:DetachGroupPolicy`

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Removes managed and inline IAM policies attached to the target IAM group, and then deletes the IAM group.

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedIAMPolicy

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedIAMPolicy runbook deletes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy that is not attached to any users, groups, or roles.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- IAMResourceId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The resource identifier of the IAM policy that you want to delete.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- config:GetResourceConfigHistory
- config>ListDiscoveredResources
- iam>DeletePolicy
- iam>DeletePolicyVersion
- iam>GetPolicy
- iam>ListEntitiesForPolicy
- iam>ListPolicyVersions

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Deletes the policy you specify in the IAMResourceId parameter, and verifies the policy was deleted.

AWSConfigRemediation-DetachIAMPolicy

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DetachIAMPolicy runbook detaches the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- IAMResourceId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the IAM policy you want to detach.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- config:GetResourceConfigHistory
- config>ListDiscoveredResources
- iam:DetachGroupPolicy
- iam:DetachRolePolicy
- iam:DetachUserPolicy
- iam:GetPolicy
- iam>ListEntitiesForPolicy

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Detaches the IAM policy from all resources.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableAccountAccessAnalyzer

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableAccountAccessAnalyzer runbook creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) Access Analyzer in your AWS account. For information about Access Analyzer, see [Using AWS IAM Access Analyzer](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AnalyzerName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the analyzer to create.

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `access-analyzer>CreateAnalyzer`
- `access-analyzer:GetAnalyzer`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Creates an access analyzer for your account.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the status of the access analyzer to be ACTIVE .
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the status of the access analyzer is ACTIVE .

AWS Support - Grant Permissions To IAM User

Description

This runbook grants the specified permissions to an IAM group (new or existing), and adds the existing IAM user to it. Policies you can choose from: [Billing](#) or [Support](#). To enable billing access for IAM, remember to also activate [IAM user and federated user access to the Billing and Cost Management pages](#).

Important

If you provide an existing IAM group, all current IAM users in the group receive the new permissions.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- IAMGroupName

Type: String

Default: ExampleSupportAndBillingGroup

Description: (Required) Can be a new or existing group. Must comply with [IAM Entity Name Limits](#).

- IAMUserName

Type: String

Default: ExampleUser

Description: (Required) Must be an existing user.

- LambdaAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN of the role assumed by lambda.

- Permissions

Type: String

Valid values: SupportFullAccess | BillingFullAccess | SupportAndBillingFullAccess

Default: SupportAndBillingFullAccess

Description: (Required) Choose one of: `SupportFullAccess` grants full access to the Support center. `BillingFullAccess` grants full access to the Billing dashboard. `SupportAndBillingFullAccess` grants full access to both Support center and the Billing dashboard. More info on policies under Document details.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

The permissions required depend on how `AWSSupport-GrantPermissionsToIAMUser` is run.

Running as the currently logged in user or role

It is recommended you have the `AmazonSSMAutomationRole` Amazon managed policy attached, and the following additional permissions to be able to create the Lambda function and the IAM role to pass to Lambda:

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Action": [
                "lambda:InvokeFunction",
                "lambda>CreateFunction",
                "lambda>DeleteFunction",
                "lambda:GetFunction"
            ],
            "Resource":
"arn:aws:lambda:*:ACCOUNTID:function:AWSSupport-*",
            "Effect": "Allow"
        },
        {
            "Effect" : "Allow",
            "Action" : [
                "iam>CreateGroup",
                "iam>AddUserToGroup",
                "iam>ListAttachedGroupPolicies",
                "iam:GetGroup",
                "iam GetUser"
            ],
        }
    ]
}
```

```
        "Resource" : [
            "arn:aws:iam::*:user/*",
            "arn:aws:iam::*:group/*"
        ],
    },
{
    "Effect" : "Allow",
    "Action" : [
        "iam:AttachGroupPolicy"
    ],
    "Resource": "*",
    "Condition": {
        "ArnEquals": {
            "iam:PolicyArn": [
                "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/job-function/Billing",
                "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AWSSupportAccess"
            ]
        }
    }
},
{
    "Effect" : "Allow",
    "Action" : [
        "iam>ListAccountAliases",
        "iam:GetAccountSummary"
    ],
    "Resource" : "*"
}
]
```

Using AutomationAssumeRole and LambdaAssumeRole

The user must have the **ssm:StartAutomationExecution** permissions on the runbook, and **iam:PassRole** on the IAM roles passed as **AutomationAssumeRole** and **LambdaAssumeRole**. Here are the permissions each IAM role needs:

AutomationAssumeRole

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {

```

```
"Action": [
    "lambda:InvokeFunction",
    "lambda>CreateFunction",
    "lambda>DeleteFunction",
    "lambda:GetFunction"
],
"Resource":  
"arn:aws:lambda:*:ACCOUNTID:function:AWSSupport-*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
}
]
}
```

LambdaAssumeRole

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect" : "Allow",
            "Action" : [
                "iam>CreateGroup",
                "iam>AddUserToGroup",
                "iam>ListAttachedGroupPolicies",
                "iam:GetGroup",
                "iam GetUser"
            ],
            "Resource" : [
                "arn:aws:iam::*:user/*",
                "arn:aws:iam::*:group/*"
            ]
        },
        {
            "Effect" : "Allow",
            "Action" : [
                "iam:AttachGroupPolicy"
            ],
            "Resource": "*",
            "Condition": {
                "ArnEquals": {
                    "iam:PolicyArn": [
                        "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/job-function/Billing",

```

```
        "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AWSSupportAccess"
    ]
}
},
{
    "Effect" : "Allow",
    "Action" : [
        "iam>ListAccountAliases",
        "iam:GetAccountSummary"
    ],
    "Resource" : "*"
}
]
```

Document Steps

1. aws:createStack - Run AWS CloudFormation Template to create a Lambda function.
2. aws:invokeLambdaFunction - Run Lambda to set IAM permissions.
3. aws:deleteStack - Delete CloudFormation Template.

Outputs

configureIAM.Payload

AWSConfigRemediation-RemoveUserPolicies

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-RemoveUserPolicies runbook deletes the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) inline policies and detaches any managed policies attached to the user you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- **IAMUserID**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the user you want to remove policies from.

- **PolicyType**

Type: String

Valid values: All | Inline | Managed

Default: All

Description: (Required) The type of IAM policies you want to remove from the user.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `iam:DeleteUserPolicy`
- `iam:DetachUserPolicy`
- `iam>ListAttachedUserPolicies`

- `iam>ListUserPolicies`
- `iam>ListUsers`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Deletes and detaches IAM policies from the user you specify in the `IAMUserID` parameter.

AWSConfigRemediation-ReplaceIAMInlinePolicy

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-ReplaceIAMInlinePolicy runbook replaces an inline AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy with a replicated managed IAM policy. For an inline policy attached to a user, group, or role, the inline policy permissions are cloned into a managed IAM policy. The managed IAM policy is added to the resource, and the inline policy is removed. AWS Config must be enabled in the AWS Region where you run this automation.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- **InlinePolicyName**

Type: `StringList`

Description: (Required) The inline IAM policy you want to replace.

- **Resourceld**

Type: `String`

Description: (Required) The ID of the IAM user, group, or role whose inline policy you want to replace.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `iam:AttachGroupPolicy`
- `iam:AttachRolePolicy`
- `iam:AttachUserPolicy`
- `iam>CreatePolicy`
- `iam:CreatePolicyVersion`
- `iam>DeleteGroupPolicy`
- `iam>DeleteRolePolicy`
- `iam>DeleteUserPolicy`
- `iam:ListGroupPolicies`
- `iam>ListRolePolicies`
- `iam>ListUserPolicies`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Replace the inline IAM policy with an AWS replicated policy on the resource that you specify.

AWSConfigRemediation-RevokeUnusedIAMUserCredentials

Description

The `AWSConfigRemediation-RevokeUnusedIAMUserCredentials` runbook revokes unused AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) passwords and active access keys. This runbook also deactivates expired access keys, and deletes expired login profiles. AWS Config must be enabled in the AWS Region where you run this automation.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- `IAMResourceId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the IAM resource you want to revoke unused credentials from.

- MaxCredentialUsageAge

Type: String

Default: 90

Description: (Required) The number of days within which the credential must have been used.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- config>ListDiscoveredResources
- iam>DeleteAccessKey
- iam>DeleteLoginProfile
- iam>GetAccessKeyLastUsed
- iam>GetLoginProfile
- iam> GetUser
- iam>ListAccessKeys
- iam>UpdateAccessKey

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Revokes IAM credentials for the user specified in the IAMResourceId parameter. Expired access keys are deactivated, and expired login profiles are deleted.

Note

This remediation action has its own compliance check which may differ from the compliance check of the AWS Config rule you used to trigger the action. This means

that the action will report SUCCESS and not perform any remediation if its own check is COMPLIANT, even if the rule which triggered the action is NON_COMPLIANT. To avoid this scenario, make sure to configure the parameters of this remediation action to match the parameters of the AWS Config rule you use to trigger this action.

AWSConfigRemediation-SetIAMPasswordPolicy

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-SetIAMPasswordPolicy runbook sets the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) user password policy for your AWS account.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- AllowUsersToChangePassword

Type: Boolean

Default: false

Description: (Optional) If set to `true` , all IAM users in your AWS account can use the AWS Management Console to change their passwords.

- `HardExpiry`

Type: Boolean

Default: `false`

Description: (Optional) If set to `true` , IAM users are prevented from resetting their passwords after their password expires.

- `MaxPasswordAge`

Type: Integer

Default: 0

Description: (Optional) The number of days an IAM user's password is valid.

- `MinimumPasswordLength`

Type: Integer

Default: 6

Description: (Optional) The minimum number of characters an IAM user's password can be.

- `PasswordReusePrevention`

Type: Integer

Default: 0

Description: (Optional) The number of previous passwords that an IAM user is prevented from reusing.

- `RequireLowercaseCharacters`

Type: Boolean

Default: `false`

Description: (Optional) If set to `true` , an IAM user's password must contain a lowercase character from the ISO basic Latin alphabet (a to z).

- **RequireNumbers**

Type: Boolean

Default: false

Description: (Optional) If set to `true`, an IAM user's password must contain a numeric character (0-9).

- **RequireSymbols**

Type: Boolean

Default: false

Description: (Optional) If set to `true`, an IAM user's password must contain a non-alphanumeric character (! @ # \$ % ^ * () _ + - = [] { } | ').

- **RequireUppercaseCharacters**

Type: Boolean

Default: false

Description: (Optional) If set to `true`, an IAM user's password must contain an uppercase character from the ISO basic Latin alphabet (A to Z).

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `iam:GetAccountPasswordPolicy`
- `iam:UpdateAccountPasswordPolicy`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Sets the IAM user password policy based on the values you specify for the runbook parameters for your AWS account.

Amazon Kinesis Data Streams

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon Kinesis Data Streams. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-EnableKinesisStreamEncryption](#)

AWS-EnableKinesisStreamEncryption

Description

The AWS-EnableKinesisStreamEncryption runbook enables encryption on an Amazon Kinesis Data Streams (Kinesis Data Streams). Producer applications writing to an encrypted stream will encounter errors if they do not have access to the AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- KinesisStreamName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the stream you want to enable encryption on.

- KeyId

Type: String

Default: alias/aws/kinesis

Description: (Required) The customer-managed AWS KMS key you want to use for encryption. This value can be a globally unique identifier, an ARN to either an alias or a key, or an alias name prefixed by "alias/". You can also use the AWS managed key by using the default value for the parameter.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- kinesis:DescribeStream
- kinesis:StartStreamEncryption
- kms:DescribeKey

Document Steps

- VerifyKinesisStreamStatus (aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty) - Checks the status of the Kinesis Data Streams.
- EnableKinesisStreamEncryption (aws:executeAwsApi) - Enables encryption for the Kinesis Data Streams.
- VerifyKinesisStreamUpdateComplete (aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty) - Waits for the Kinesis Data Streams status to return to ACTIVE.
- VerifyKinesisStreamEncryption (aws:assertAwsResourceProperty) - Verifies encryption is enabled for the Kinesis Data Streams.

AWS KMS

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for AWS Key Management Service. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSConfigRemediation-CancelKeyDeletion](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableKeyRotation](#)

AWSConfigRemediation-CancelKeyDeletion

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-CancelKeyDeletion runbook cancels deletion of the AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) customer managed key that you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- **KeyId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the customer managed key that you want to cancel deletion for.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `kms:CancelKeyDeletion`
- `kms:DescribeKey`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Cancels deletion for the customer managed key you specify in the `KeyId` parameter.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms key deletion is disabled on your customer managed key.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableKeyRotation

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableKeyRotation runbook enables automatic key rotation for the symmetric AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) customer managed key.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- KeyId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the customer managed key you want to enable automatic key rotation on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- kms:EnableKeyRotation
- kms:GetKeyRotationStatus

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Enables automatic key rotation on the customer managed key you specify in the KeyId parameter.
- aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Confirms that automatic key rotation is enabled on your customer managed key.

Lambda

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for AWS Lambda. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSConfigRemediation-ConfigureLambdaFunctionXRayTracing](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation>DeleteLambdaFunction](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EncryptLambdaEnvironmentVariablesWithCMK](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-MoveLambdaToVPC](#)
- [AWSSupport-RemediateLambdaS3Event](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootLambdaInternetAccess](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootLambdaS3Event](#)

AWSConfigRemediation-ConfigureLambdaFunctionXRayTracing

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-ConfigureLambdaFunctionXRayTracing runbook enables AWS X-Ray live tracing on the AWS Lambda function you specify in the `FunctionName` parameter.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- FunctionName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name or ARN of the Lambda function to enable tracing on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- lambda:UpdateFunctionConfiguration
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Enables X-Ray tracing on the Lambda function you specify in the FunctionName parameter.
- aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Verifies that X-Ray tracing has been enabled on the Lambda function.

Outputs

UpdateLambdaConfig.UpdateFunctionConfigurationResponse - Response from the UpdateFunctionConfiguration API call.

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteLambdaFunction

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteLambdaFunction runbook deletes the AWS Lambda function you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- **LambdaFunctionName**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Lambda function that you want to delete.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `lambda:DeleteFunction`
- `lambda:GetFunction`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Deletes the Lambda function specified in the `LambdaFunctionName` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies the Lambda function has been deleted.

AWSConfigRemediation-EncryptLambdaEnvironmentVariablesWithCMK

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EncryptLambdaEnvironmentVariablesWithCMK runbook encrypts, at rest, the environment variables for the AWS Lambda (Lambda) function you specify using an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) customer managed key. This runbook should only be used as a baseline to ensure that your Lambda function's environment variables are encrypted according to minimum recommended security best practices. We recommend encrypting multiple functions with different customer managed keys.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- **FunctionName**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name or ARN of the Lambda function whose environment variables you want to encrypt.

- **KMSKeyArn**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the AWS KMS customer managed key you want to use to encrypt your Lambda function's environment variables.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `lambda:GetFunctionConfiguration`
- `lambda:UpdateFunctionConfiguration`

Document Steps

- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the `LastUpdateStatus` property to be `Successful`.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Encrypts the environment variables for the Lambda function you specify in the `FunctionName` parameter using the AWS KMS customer managed key you specify in the `KMSKeyArn` parameter.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms encryption is enabled on the environment variables for your Lambda function.

AWSConfigRemediation-MoveLambdaToVPC

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-MoveLambdaToVPC runbook moves an AWS Lambda (Lambda) function to an Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC).

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- FunctionName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Lambda function to move to an Amazon VPC.

- SecurityGroupIds

Type: String

Description: (Required) The security group IDs you want to assign to the elastic network interfaces (ENIs) associated with your Lambda function.

- SubnetIds

Type: String

Description: (Required) The subnet IDs you want to create the elastic network interfaces (ENIs) associated with your Lambda function.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- lambda:GetFunction
- lambda:GetFunctionConfiguration
- lambda:UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Updates the Amazon VPC configuration for the Lambda function you specify in the FunctionName parameter.
- aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for the Lambda function LastUpdateStatus to be successful .
- aws:executeScript - Verifies the Lambda function Amazon VPC configuration has been successfully updated.

AWS Support - RemediateLambdaS3Event

Description

The AWS Support - TroubleshootLambdaS3Event runbook provides an automated solution for the procedures outlined in the AWS Knowledge Center articles [Why doesn't my Amazon S3 event notification trigger my Lambda function?](#) and [Why do I get the error "Unable to validate the following destination configurations" when creating an Amazon S3 event notification to trigger my Lambda function?](#) This runbook helps you identify and remediate why an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) event notification failed to trigger the AWS Lambda function you specified. If the runbook output suggests validating and configuring your Lambda function concurrency, see [Asynchronous invocation](#) and [AWS Lambda Function scaling](#) .

Note

"Unable to validate the following destination configurations" errors can also occur due to incorrect Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) and Amazon Simple Queue

Service (Amazon SQS) Amazon S3 event configurations. This runbook only checks Lambda function configurations. If after using the runbook, you are still receiving the "Unable to validate the following destination configurations" error, please review any existing Amazon SNS and Amazon SQS Amazon S3 event configurations.

Run this Automation (console)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- LambdaFunctionArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the Lambda function.

- S3BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon S3 bucket whose event notifications triggers the Lambda function.

- Action

Type: String

Valid values: Troubleshoot | Remediate

Description: (Required) The action you want the runbook to perform. The Troubleshoot option helps identify any issues, but does not perform any mutating actions to resolve the issue. The Remediate option helps identify and attempts to resolve issues for you.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetDocument
- ssm>ListDocuments
- ssm:DescribeAutomationExecutions
- ssm:DescribeAutomationStepExecutions
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- lambda:GetPolicy
- lambda:AddPermission
- s3:GetBucketNotification

Document Steps

- aws:branch - Branches based on the input specified for the Action parameter.

If the value specified is Troubleshoot :

- aws:executeAutomation - Runs the AWSSupport-TroubleshootLambdaS3Event runbook.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Checks the output of the AWSSupport-TroubleshootLambdaS3Event runbook that ran in the previous step.

If the value specified is Remediate :

- aws:executeScript - Runs a script to remediate the issues outlined in the [Why doesn't my Amazon S3 event notification trigger my Lambda function?](#) and [Why do I get the error "Unable to validate the following destination configurations" when creating an Amazon S3 event notification to trigger my Lambda function?](#) Knowledge Center articles.

Outputs

checkoutoutput.Output

remediatelambdas3event.Output

AWS Support - Troubleshoot Lambda Internet Access

Description

The AWS Support - Troubleshoot Lambda Internet Access runbook helps you troubleshoot internet access issues for a AWS Lambda function that was launched into Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC). Resources such as subnet routes, security groups rules, and network access control list (ACL) rules are reviewed to confirm outbound internet access is allowed.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on

your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **FunctionName**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Lambda function you want to troubleshoot internet access for.

- **destinationIp**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The destination IP address you want to establish an outbound connection to.

- **destinationPort**

Type: String

Default: 443

Description: (Optional) The destination port you want to establish an outbound connection on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- **lambda:GetFunction**
- **ec2:DescribeRouteTables**
- **ec2:DescribeNatGateways**
- **ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups**
- **ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls**

Document Steps

- **aws:executeScript** - Verifies the configuration of various resources in your VPC where the Lambda function was launched.
- **aws:branch** - Branches based on whether the Lambda function specified is in a VPC or not.

- `aws:executeScript` - Reviews the route table routes for the subnet where the Lambda function was launched, and verifies that routes to a network address translation (NAT) gateway, and internet gateway are present. Confirms the Lambda function is not in a public subnet.
- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies the security group associated with the Lambda function allows outbound internet access based on the values specified for the `destinationIp` and `destinationPort` parameters.
- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies the ACL rules associated with the subnets of the Lambda function and the NAT gateway allow outbound internet access based on the values specified for the `destinationIp` and `destinationPort` parameters.

Outputs

`checkVpc.vpc` - The ID of the VPC where your Lambda function was launched.

`checkVpc.subnet` - The IDs of the subnets where your Lambda function was launched.

`checkVpc.securityGroups` - Security groups associated with the Lambda function.

`checkNACL.NACL` - Analysis message with resource names. `LambdaIp` refers to the private IP address of the elastic network interface for your Lambda function. The `LambdaIpRules` object is only generated for subnets that have a route to a NAT gateway. The following content is an example of the output.

```
{  
    "subnet-1234567890":{  
        "NACL":"acl-1234567890",  
        "destinationIp_Egress":"Allowed",  
        "destinationIp_Ingress":"notAllowed",  
        "Analysis":"This NACL has an allow rule for Egress traffic but there is no  
Ingress rule. Please allow the destination IP / destination port in Ingress rule",  
        "LambdaIpRules":{  
            "{LambdaIp}":{  
                "Egress":"notAllowed",  
                "Ingress":"notAllowed",  
                "Analysis":"This is a NAT subnet NACL. It does not have ingress or egress  
rule allowed in it for Lambda's corresponding private ip {LambdaIp} Please allow this  
IP in your egress and ingress NACL rules"  
            }  
        }  
    },  
    "subnet-0987654321":{  
    }  
}
```

```
"NACL":"acl-0987654321",
"destinationIp_Egress":"Allowed",
"destinationIp_Ingress":"notAllowed",
"Analysis":"This NACL has an allow rule for Egress traffic but there is no
Ingress rule. Please allow the destination IP / destination port in Ingress rule"
}
}
```

checkSecurityGroups.secgrps - Analysis for the security group associated with your Lambda function. The following content is an example of the output.

```
{
  "sg-123456789": {
    "Status": "Allowed",
    "Analysis": "This security group has allowed destination IP and port in its
outbound rule."
  }
}
```

checkSubnet.subnets - Analysis for the subnets in your VPC associated with your Lambda function. The following content is an example of the output.

```
{
  "subnet-0c4ee6cdexample15": {
    "Route": {
      "DestinationCidrBlock": "8.8.8.0/26",
      "NatGatewayId": "nat-00f0example69fdec",
      "Origin": "CreateRoute",
      "State": "active"
    },
    "Analysis": "This Route Table has an active NAT gateway path. Also, The NAT
gateway is launched in public subnet",
    "RouteTable": "rtb-0b1fexample16961b"
  }
}
```

AWS Support - Troubleshoot Lambda S3 Event

Description

The AWS Support - Troubleshoot Lambda S3 Event runbook provides an automated solution for the procedures outlined in the AWS Knowledge Center articles [Why doesn't my Amazon S3](#)

[event notification trigger my Lambda function?](#) and [Why do I get the error "Unable to validate the following destination configurations" when creating an Amazon S3 event notification to trigger my Lambda function?](#) This runbook helps you identify why an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) event notification failed to trigger the AWS Lambda function you specified. If the runbook output suggests validating and configuring your Lambda function concurrency, see [Asynchronous invocation](#) and [AWS Lambda Function scaling](#).

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- LambdaFunctionArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the Lambda function that the Amazon S3 event notification triggers.

- S3BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon S3 bucket whose event notifications triggers the Lambda function.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `lambda:GetPolicy`
- `s3:GetBucketNotification`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Runs the script to validate configuration settings for the Amazon S3 event notification. Validates the resource-based IAM policy for your Lambda function, and generates an AWS Command Line Interface (AWS CLI) command to add the needed permissions if the required permissions are missing from the policy. Validates other Lambda functions resource policies which are part of event notifications for the same S3 bucket and generates an AWS CLI command as output if the required permissions are missing.

Outputs

`lambdaS3Event.output`

Amazon Managed Workflows for Apache Airflow

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon Managed Workflows for Apache Airflow. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootMWAAEnvironmentCreation](#)

AWSSupport - TroubleshootMWAAEnvironmentCreation

Description

The AWSSupport-TroubleshootMWAAEnvironmentCreation runbook provides information to debug Amazon Managed Workflows for Apache Airflow (Amazon MWAA) environment creation issues, and perform checks along with the documented reasons on a best effort basis to help identify the failure.

How does it work?

The runbook performs the following steps:

- Retrieves the details of the Amazon MWAA environment.
- Verifies the execution role permissions.
- Checks if the environment has permissions to use the provided AWS KMS key for logging, and if the required CloudWatch log group exists.
- Parses the logs in the provided log group to locate any errors.
- Checks the network configuration to verify if the Amazon MWAA environment has access to the required endpoints.
- Generates a report with the findings.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

/

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- airflow:GetEnvironment
- cloudtrail:LookupEvents
- ec2:DescribeNatGateways

- ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls
- ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces
- ec2:DescribeRouteTables
- ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups
- ec2:DescribeSubnets
- ec2:DescribeVpcEndpoints
- iam:GetPolicy
- iam:GetPolicyVersion
- iam:GetRolePolicy
- iam>ListAttachedRolePolicies
- iam>ListRolePolicies
- iam:SimulateCustomPolicy
- kms:GetKeyPolicy
- kms>ListAliases
- logs:DescribeLogGroups
- logs:FilterLogEvents
- s3:GetBucketAcl
- s3:GetBucketPolicyStatus
- s3:GetPublicAccessBlock
- s3control:GetPublicAccessBlock
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution

Instructions

Follow these steps to configure the automation:

1. Navigate to [AWSSupport-TroubleshootMWAAEnvironmentCreation](#) in Systems Manager under Documents.
2. Select Execute automation.
3. For the input parameters, enter the following:
 - **AutomationAssumeRole (Optional):**

The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user who starts this runbook.

- **EnvironmentName (Required):**

Name of the Amazon MWAA environment you wish to evaluate.

Input parameters

AutomationAssumeRole (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user who starts this runbook.	EnvironmentName (Required) Name of the MWAA environment you wish to evaluate. String
--	--

4. Select Execute.

5. The automation initiates.

6. The document performs the following steps:

- **GetMWAAEnvironmentDetails:**

Retrieves the details of the Amazon MWAA environment. If this step fails, the automation process will halt and show as Failed.

- **CheckIAMPermissionsOnExecutionRole:**

Verifies that the execution role has the required permissions for Amazon MWAA, Amazon S3, CloudWatch Logs, CloudWatch, and Amazon SQS resources. If it detects a customer managed AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key, the automation validates the key's required permissions. This step employs the `iam:SimulateCustomPolicy` API to ascertain if the automation execution role meets all required permissions.

- **CheckKMSPolicyOnKMSKey:**

Checks if the AWS KMS key policy allows the Amazon MWAA environment to use the key for encrypting CloudWatch Logs. If the AWS KMS key is AWS-managed, the automation skips this check.

- **CheckIfRequiredLogGroupsExists:**

Checks if the required CloudWatch log groups for the Amazon MWAA environment exist. If not, the automation checks CloudTrail for `CreateLogGroup` and `DeleteLogGroup` events. This step also checks for `CreateLogGroup` events.

- **BranchOnLogGroupsFindings:**

Branches based on the existence of CloudWatch log groups related to the Amazon MWAA environment. If at least one log group exists, the automation parses it to locate errors. If no log groups are present, the automation skips the next step.

- **CheckForErrorsInLogGroups:**

Parses the CloudWatch log groups to locate errors.

- **GetRequiredEndPointsDetails:**

Retrieves the service endpoints utilized by the Amazon MWAA environment.

- **CheckNetworkConfiguration:**

Verifies that the Amazon MWAA environment's network configuration meets the requirements, including checks on security groups, network ACLs, subnets, and route table configurations.

- **CheckEndpointsConnectivity:**

Invokes the AWSSupport-ConnectivityTroubleshooter child automation to validate the Amazon MWAA's connectivity to the required endpoints.

- **CheckS3BlockPublicAccess:**

Checks whether the Amazon MWAA environment's Amazon S3 bucket has Block Public Access enabled and also reviews the account's overall Amazon S3 Block Public Access settings.

- **GenerateReport:**

Gathers information from the automation and prints the result or output of each step.

7. After completed, review the Outputs section for the detailed results of the execution:

- **Checking the Amazon MWAA environment execution role permissions:**

Verifies if the execution role has the required permissions for Amazon MWAA, Amazon S3, CloudWatch Logs, CloudWatch, and Amazon SQS resources. If a Customer Managed AWS KMS key is detected, the automation validates the key's required permissions.

- **Checking the Amazon MWAA environment AWS KMS key policy:**

Verifies whether the execution role possesses the necessary permissions for Amazon MWAA, Amazon S3, CloudWatch Logs, CloudWatch, and Amazon SQS resources. Additionally, if a

Customer Managed AWS KMS key is detected, the automation checks for the key's required permissions.

- **Checking the Amazon MWAA environment CloudWatch logs groups:**

Checks whether the required CloudWatch Log Groups for the Amazon MWAA environment exist. If they do not, the automation then checks CloudTrail to locate CreateLogGroup and DeleteLogGroup events.

- **Checking the Amazon MWAA environment Route Tables:**

Checks whether the Amazon VPC route tables in the Amazon MWAA environment are properly configured.

- **Checking the Amazon MWAA environment Security Groups:**

Checks if the Amazon MWAA environment Amazon VPC security groups are properly configured.

- **Checking the Amazon MWAA environment Network ACLs:**

Checks whether the Amazon VPC security groups in the Amazon MWAA environment are properly configured.

- **Checking the Amazon MWAA environment Subnets:**

Verifies whether the Amazon MWAA environment's subnets are private.

- **Checking the Amazon MWAA environment required endpoints connectivity:**

Verifies whether the Amazon MWAA environment can access the required endpoints. For this purpose, the automation invokes the AWSSupport-ConnectivityTroubleshooter automation.

- **Checking the Amazon MWAA environment Amazon S3 bucket:**

Checks whether the Amazon MWAA environment's Amazon S3 bucket has Block Public Access enabled and also reviews the account's Amazon S3 Block Public Access settings.

- **Checking the Amazon MWAA environment CloudWatch logs groups errors:**

Parses the existing CloudWatch log groups of the Amazon MWAA environment to locate errors.

▼ Outputs

GenerateReport.AutomationReport
Troubleshooting report for MAAA environment

- ✖ The automation found no issues with the MAAA environment configuration ✓
- ✖ Checking the MAAA environment execution role permissions
All the required permissions for the MAAA environment execution role are in place ✓
- ✖ Checking the MAAA environment KMS key policy
KMS key is an AWS managed key ✓
- ✖ Checking the MAAA environment CloudWatch logs groups
The number of CloudWatch log groups found is 5 and the number of enabled log groups for the MAAA environment [REDACTED] is 5. This suggests that all log groups were created successfully ✓
- ✖ Checking the MAAA environment Route Tables
NAT GW [REDACTED] has Internet route: subnet-[REDACTED] > nat-[REDACTED] > igw-[REDACTED] ✓
NAT GW [REDACTED] has Internet route: subnet-[REDACTED] > nat-[REDACTED] > igw-[REDACTED] ✓
- ✖ Checking the MAAA environment Security Groups
Security group [REDACTED] has self-referencing rules for all traffic. ✓
- ✖ Checking the MAAA environment Network ACLs
NACL: [REDACTED] allows port 5432 on egress ✓ and allows port 5432 on ingress ✓
- ✖ Checking the MAAA environment Subnets
Subnet: subnet-[REDACTED] is private ✓
Subnet: subnet-[REDACTED] is private ✓
- ✖ Checking the MAAA environment required endpoints connectivity
 - ✓ Testing connectivity with sqs.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com:
Connectivity test between ENI [REDACTED] and sqs.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com on port 443 was successful, this means that the MAAA environment has access to the sqs.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com service ✓
To check the SSM automation execution click here: https://eu-west-1.console.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/automation/execution/[REDACTED]Region=eu-west-1
 - ✓ Testing connectivity with api.ecr.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com:
Connectivity test between ENI [REDACTED] and api.ecr.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com on port 443 was successful, this means that the MAAA environment has access to the api.ecr.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com service ✓
To check the SSM automation execution click here: https://eu-west-1.console.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/automation/execution/[REDACTED]Region=eu-west-1
 - ✓ Testing connectivity with monitoring.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com:
Connectivity test between ENI [REDACTED] and monitoring.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com on port 443 was successful, this means that the MAAA environment has access to the monitoring.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com service ✓
To check the SSM automation execution click here: https://eu-west-1.console.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/automation/execution/[REDACTED]Region=eu-west-1
 - ✓ Testing connectivity with kms.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com:
Connectivity test between ENI [REDACTED] and kms.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com on port 443 was successful, this means that the MAAA environment has access to the kms.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com service ✓
To check the SSM automation execution click here: https://eu-west-1.console.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/automation/execution/[REDACTED]Region=eu-west-1
 - ✓ Testing connectivity with s3.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com:
Connectivity test between ENI [REDACTED] and s3.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com on port 443 was successful, this means that the MAAA environment has access to the s3.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com service ✓
To check the SSM automation execution click here: https://eu-west-1.console.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/automation/execution/[REDACTED]Region=eu-west-1
 - ✓ Testing connectivity with env.airflow.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com:
Connectivity test between ENI [REDACTED] and env.airflow.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com on port 443 was successful, this means that the MAAA environment has access to the env.airflow.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com service ✓
To check the SSM automation execution click here: https://eu-west-1.console.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/automation/execution/[REDACTED]Region=eu-west-1
 - ✓ Testing connectivity with env.airflow.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com:
Connectivity test between ENI [REDACTED] and env.airflow.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com on port 5432 was successful, this means that the MAAA environment has access to the env.airflow.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com service ✓
To check the SSM automation execution click here: https://eu-west-1.console.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/automation/execution/[REDACTED]Region=eu-west-1
 - ✓ Testing connectivity with api.airflow.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com:
Connectivity test between ENI [REDACTED] and api.airflow.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com on port 443 was successful, this means that the MAAA environment has access to the api.airflow.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com service ✓
To check the SSM automation execution click here: https://eu-west-1.console.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/automation/execution/[REDACTED]Region=eu-west-1
 - ✓ Testing connectivity with logs.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com:
Connectivity test between ENI [REDACTED] and logs.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com on port 443 was successful, this means that the MAAA environment has access to the logs.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com service ✓
To check the SSM automation execution click here: https://eu-west-1.console.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/automation/execution/[REDACTED]Region=eu-west-1
 - ✓ Testing connectivity with ops.airflow.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com:
Connectivity test between ENI [REDACTED] and ops.airflow.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com on port 443 was successful, this means that the MAAA environment has access to the ops.airflow.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com service ✓
To check the SSM automation execution click here: https://eu-west-1.console.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/automation/execution/[REDACTED]Region=eu-west-1
- ✖ Checking the MAAA environment S3 bucket
Environment's S3 bucket and/or account block public access ✓
- ✖ Checking the MAAA environment CloudWatch logs groups errors

Parsed log group [REDACTED]	DAGProcessing - no errors found ✓
Parsed log group [REDACTED]	Schedule - no errors found ✓
Parsed log group [REDACTED]	Task - no errors found ✓
Parsed log group [REDACTED]	WebServer - no errors found ✓
Parsed log group [REDACTED]	Worker - no errors found ✓

References

Systems Manager Automation

- [Run this Automation \(console\)](#)
- [Run an automation](#)
- [Setting up an Automation](#)
- [Support Automation Workflows landing page](#)

Neptune

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon Neptune. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-EnableNeptuneDbAuditLogsToCloudWatch](#)
- [AWS-EnableNeptuneDbBackupRetentionPeriod](#)
- [AWS-EnableNeptuneClusterDeletionProtection](#)

AWS-EnableNeptuneDbAuditLogsToCloudWatch

Description

The AWS-EnableNeptuneDbAuditLogsToCloudWatch runbook helps you send audit logs for an Amazon Neptune DB cluster to Amazon CloudWatch Logs.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on

your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `DbClusterResourceId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The resource ID of the Neptune DB cluster you want to enable audit logs for.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `neptune:DescribeDBCluster`
- `neptune:ModifyDBCluster`
- `rds:DescribeDBClusters`
- `rds:ModifyDBCluster`

Document Steps

- `GetNeptuneDbClusterIdentifier` (`aws:executeAwsApi`) - Returns the ID of the Neptune DB cluster.
- `VerifyNeptuneDbEngine` (`aws:assertAwsResourceProperty`) - Verifies the Neptune DB engine type is neptune.
- `EnableNeptuneDbAuditLogs` (`aws:executeAwsApi`) - Enables audit logs for the Neptune DB cluster to be sent CloudWatch Logs.
- `VerifyNeptuneDbStatus` (`aws:waitAwsResourceProperty`) - Verifies the Neptune DB cluster status is available.
- `VerifyNeptuneDbAuditLogs` (`aws:executeScript`) - Verifies that audit logs were successfully configured to send to CloudWatch Logs.

AWS-EnableNeptuneDbBackupRetentionPeriod

Description

The AWS-EnableNeptuneDbBackupRetentionPeriod runbook helps you enable automated backups with a backup retention period between 7 and 35 days for an Amazon Neptune DB cluster.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- DbClusterResourceId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The resource ID of the Neptune DB cluster you want to enable backups for.

- BackupRetentionPeriod

Type: Integer

Valid values: 7-35

Description: (Required) The number of days backups are retained.

- PreferredBackupWindow

Type: String

Description: (Optional) A daily time period of at least 30 minutes when backups are made. The value must be in Universal Time Coordinated (UTC) and use the format: hh24:mm-hh24:mm. The backup retention period can't conflict with the preferred maintenance window.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- neptune:DescribeDBCluster
- neptune:ModifyDBCluster
- rds:DescribeDBClusters
- rds:ModifyDBCluster

Document Steps

- GetNeptuneDbClusterIdentifier (aws:executeAwsApi) - Returns the ID of the Neptune DB cluster.
- VerifyNeptuneDbEngine (aws:assertAwsResourceProperty) - Verifies the Neptune DB engine type is neptune.
- VerifyNeptuneDbStatus (aws:waitAwsResourceProperty) - Verifies the Neptune DB cluster status is available.
- ModifyNeptuneDbRetentionPeriod (aws:executeAwsApi) - Sets the retention period for the Neptune DB cluster.
- VerifyNeptuneDbBackupsEnabled (aws:executeScript) - Verifies the retention period and backup window were successfully set.

AWS-EnableNeptuneClusterDeletionProtection

Description

The AWS-EnableNeptuneClusterDeletionProtection runbook enables deletion protection for the Amazon Neptune cluster you specify.

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- DbClusterResourceld

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Neptune cluster you want to enable deletion protection on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:GetAutomationExecution

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `neptune:DescribeDBCluster`
- `neptune:ModifyDBCluster`
- `rds:DescribeDBClusters`
- `rds:ModifyDBCluster`

Document Steps

- `GetNeptuneDbClusterIdentifier` (`aws:executeAwsApi`) - Returns the ID of the Neptune DB cluster.
- `VerifyNeptuneDbEngine` (`aws:assertAwsResourceProperty`) - Verifies the engine type of the specified DB cluster is neptune.
- `VerifyNeptuneStatus` (`aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty`) - Verifies that status of the cluster is available.
- `EnableNeptuneDbDeletionProtection` (`aws:executeAwsApi`) - Enables deletion protection on the Neptune DB cluster.
- `VerifyNeptuneDbDeletionProtection` (`aws:assertAwsResourceProperty`) - Verifies deletion protection is enabled on the DB cluster.

Outputs

- `EnableNeptuneDbDeletionProtection.EnableNeptuneDbDeletionProtectionResponse` - The output from the API operation.

Amazon RDS

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon Relational Database Service. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-CreateEncryptedRdsSnapshot](#)
- [AWS-CreateRdsSnapshot](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRDSCluster](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRDSClusterSnapshot](#)

- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRDSInstance](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRDSInstanceSnapshot](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DisablePublicAccessToRDSInstance](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCopyTagsToSnapshotOnRDSCluster](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCopyTagsToSnapshotOnRDSDBInstance](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableEnhancedMonitoringOnRDSInstance](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableMinorVersionUpgradeOnRDS](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableMultiAZOnRDSInstance](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnablePerformanceInsightsOnRDSInstance](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRDSClusterDeletionProtection](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRDSInstanceBackup](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRDSInstanceDeletionProtection](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-ModifyRDSInstancePortNumber](#)
- [AWSSupport-ModifyRDSSnapshotPermission](#)
- [AWSPremiumSupport-PostgreSQLWorkloadReview](#)
- [AWS-RebootRdsInstance](#)
- [AWSSupport-ShareRDSSnapshot](#)
- [AWS-StartRdsInstance](#)
- [AWS-StartStopAuroraCluster](#)
- [AWS-StopRdsInstance](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootConnectivityToRDS](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootRDSIAMAuthentication](#)
- [AWSSupport-ValidateRdsNetworkConfiguration](#)

AWS-CreateEncryptedRdsSnapshot

Description

The AWS-CreateEncryptedRdsSnapshot runbook creates an encrypted snapshot from an unencrypted Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) instance.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- DBInstanceIdentifier

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon RDS instance you want to create a snapshot of.

- DBSnapshotIdentifier

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The name template for the Amazon RDS snapshot. The default name template is *DBInstanceIdentifier-yyyymmddhhmmss*.

- EncryptedDBSnapshotIdentifier

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The name for the encrypted snapshot. The default name is the value you specify for the DBSnapshotIdentifier parameter appended with -encrypted.

- **InstanceTags**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Tags to add to the DB instance. (Example: Key=tagKey1,Value>tagValue1;Key=tagKey2,Value=tagValue2)'

- **KmsKeyId**

Type: String

Default: alias/aws/rds

Description: (Optional) The ARN, key ID, or the key alias of the customer managed key you want to use to encrypt the snapshot.

- **SnapshotTags**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Tags to add to the snapshot. (Example: Key=tagKey1,Value=tagValue1;Key=tagKey2,Value=tagValue2)'

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `rds:AddTagsToResource`
- `rds:CopyDBSnapshot`
- `rds>CreateDBSnapshot`
- `rds>DeleteDBSnapshot`
- `rds:DescribeDBSnapshots`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Creates a snapshot of the DB instance you specify in the `DBInstanceIdentifier` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies the snapshot created in the previous step exists and is available.

- `aws:executeScript` - Copies the previously created snapshot to an encrypted snapshot.
- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies the encrypted snapshot created in the previous step exists.

Outputs

`CopyRdsSnapshotToEncryptedRdsSnapshot.EncryptedSnapshotId` - The ID of the encrypted Amazon RDS snapshot.

AWS-CreateRdsSnapshot

Description

Create an Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) snapshot for an Amazon RDS instance.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `DBInstanceIdentifier`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The DBInstanceId ID of the RDS Instance to create Snapshot from.

- DBSnapshotIdentifier

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The DBSnapshotIdentifier ID of the RDS snapshot to create.

- InstanceTags

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Tags to create for instance.

- SnapshotTags

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Tags to create for snapshot.

Document Steps

createRDSSnapshot – Creates the RDS snapshot and returns the snapshot ID.

verifyRDSSnapshot – Checks that the snapshot created in the previous step exists.

Outputs

createRDSSnapshot.SnapshotId – The ID of the created snapshot.

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRDSCluster

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRDSCluster runbook deletes the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) cluster you specify. AWS Config must be enabled in the AWS Region where you run this automation.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- DBClusterId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The resource identifier for the DB cluster you want to enable deletion protection on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- config:GetResourceConfigHistory
- rds>DeleteDBCluster
- rds>DeleteDBInstance
- rds:DescribeDBClusters

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Deletes the DB cluster you specify in the DBClusterId parameter.

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRDSClusterSnapshot

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRDSClusterSnapshot runbook deletes the given Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) cluster snapshot.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- DBClusterSnapshotId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon RDS cluster snapshot identifier to be deleted.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution

- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `rds>DeleteDBClusterSnapshot`
- `rds:DescribeDBClusterSnapshots`

Document Steps

- `aws:branch` - Checks if the cluster snapshot is in the available state. If it is not available, the flow ends.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Deletes the given Amazon RDS cluster snapshot using the database (DB) cluster snapshot identifier.
- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies that the given Amazon RDS cluster snapshot was deleted.

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRDSInstance

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRDSInstance runbook deletes the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) instance you specify. When you delete a database (DB) instance, all automated backups for that instance are deleted and can't be recovered. Manual DB snapshots are not deleted. If the DB instance you want to delete is in the failed , incompatible-network , or incompatible-restore state, you must set the SkipFinalSnapshot parameter to true .

 **Note**

If the DB instance you want to delete is in an Amazon Aurora DB cluster, the runbook will not delete the DB instance if it is a read replica and the only instance in the DB cluster.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- DbiResourceId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The resource identifier for the DB instance you want to delete.

- SkipFinalSnapshot

Type: Boolean

Default: false

Description: (Optional) If set to true , a final snapshot is not created before the DB instance is deleted.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- rds:DeleteDBInstance
- rds:DescribeDBInstances

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers the DB instance name from the value you specify in the DbiResourceId parameter.

- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value you specify in the `SkipFinalSnapshot` parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Deletes the DB instance you specify in the `DbiResourceId` parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Deletes the DB instance you specify in the `DbiResourceId` parameter after the final snapshot is created.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the DB instance was deleted.

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRDSInstanceSnapshot

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRDSInstanceSnapshot runbook deletes the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) instance snapshot you specify. Only snapshots in the available state are deleted. This runbook does not support deleting snapshots from Amazon Aurora database instances.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- `DbSnapshotId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the snapshot you want to delete.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- rds:DeleteDBSnapshot
- rds:DescribeDBSnapshots

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers the state of the snapshot specified in the DbSnapshotId parameter.
- aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Confirms the state of the snapshot is available .
- aws:executeAwsApi - Deletes the snapshot specified in the DbSnapshotId parameter.
- aws:executeScript - Verifies the snapshot has been deleted.

AWSConfigRemediation-DisablePublicAccessToRDSInstance

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DisablePublicAccessToRDSInstance runbook disables public accessibility for the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) database (DB) instance that you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- DbiResourceId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The resource identifier for the DB instance that you want to disable public accessibility for.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- rds:DescribeDBInstances
- rds:ModifyDBInstance

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers the DB instance identifier from the DB instance resource identifier.
- aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Verifies the DB instances is in an AVAILABLE state.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Disables public accessibility on your DB instance.

- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the DB instance to change to a MODIFYING state.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the DB instance to change to an AVAILABLE state.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms public accessibility is disabled on the DB instance.

AWSConfigRemediation- EnableCopyTagsToSnapshotOnRDSCluster

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCopyTagsToSnapshotOnRDSCluster runbook enables the CopyTagsToSnapshot setting on the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) cluster you specify. Enabling this setting copies all tags from the DB cluster to snapshots of the DB cluster. The default is not to copy them. AWS Config must be enabled in the AWS Region where you run this automation.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- `ApplyImmediately`

Type: Boolean

Default: false

Description: (Optional) If you specify `true` for this parameter, the modifications in this request and any pending modifications are asynchronously applied as soon as possible, regardless of the `PreferredMaintenanceWindow` setting for the DB cluster.

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- `DbClusterResourceId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The resource identifier for the DB cluster you want to enable the `CopyTagsToSnapshot` setting on.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `config:GetResourceConfigHistory`
- `rds:DescribeDBClusters`
- `rds:ModifyDBCluster`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the DB cluster identifier from the DB cluster resource identifier.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the DB cluster is in an `AVAILABLE` state.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables the `CopyTagsToSnapshot` setting on your DB cluster.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the `CopyTagsToSnapshot` setting is enabled on your DB cluster.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCopyTagsToSnapshotOnRDSDBInstance

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCopyTagsToSnapshotOnRDSDBInstance runbook enables the CopyTagsToSnapshot setting on the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) instance you specify. Enabling this setting copies all tags from the DB instance to snapshots of the DB instance. The default is not to copy them. AWS Config must be enabled in the AWS Region where you run this automation.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- **ApplyImmediately**

Type: Boolean

Default: false

Description: (Optional) If you specify `true` for this parameter, the modifications in this request and any pending modifications are asynchronously applied as soon as possible, regardless of the `PreferredMaintenanceWindow` setting for the DB instance.

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- **DbiResourceId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The resource identifier for the DB instance you want to enable the CopyTagsToSnapshot setting on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `config:GetResourceConfigHistory`
- `rds:DescribeDBInstances`
- `rds:ModifyDBInstance`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the DB instance identifier from the DB instance resource identifier.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the DB instance is in an AVAILABLE state.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables the CopyTagsToSnapshot setting on your DB instance.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the CopyTagsToSnapshot setting is enabled on your DB instance.

AWSConfigRemediation- EnableEnhancedMonitoringOnRDSInstance

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableEnhancedMonitoringOnRDSInstance runbook enables Enhanced Monitoring on the Amazon RDS database instance you specify. For information on Enhanced Monitoring, see [Enhanced Monitoring in the Amazon RDS User Guide](#).

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- MonitoringInterval

Type: Integer

Valid values: 1 | 5 | 10 | 15 | 30 | 60

Description: (Required) The interval in seconds when Enhanced Monitoring metrics are collected from the DB instance.

- MonitoringRoleArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the IAM role that allows Amazon RDS to send Enhanced Monitoring metrics to Amazon CloudWatch Logs.

- **ResourceId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The resource identifier for the DB instance you want to enable Enhanced Monitoring on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `rds:DescribeDBInstances`
- `rds:ModifyDBInstance`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the DB instance identifier from the DB instance resource identifier.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the DB Instance is in an AVAILABLE state.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables Enhanced Monitoring on your DB instance.
- `aws:executeScript` - Confirms that Enhanced Monitoring is enabled on your DB instance.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableMinorVersionUpgradeOnRDS

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableMinorVersionUpgradeOnRDS runbook enables the AutoMinorVersionUpgrade setting on the Amazon RDS database instance you specify. Enabling this setting means that minor version upgrades are applied automatically to the DB instance during the maintenance window.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- DbiResourceId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The resource identifier for the DB instance you want to enable the AutoMinorVersionUpgrade setting on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- rds:DescribeDBInstances
- rds:ModifyDBInstance

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers the DB instance identifier from the DB instance resource identifier.

- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the DB Instance is in an AVAILABLE state.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables the AutoMinorVersionUpgrade setting on your DB instance.
- `aws:executeScript` - Confirms that the AutoMinorVersionUpgrade setting is enabled on your DB instance.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableMultiAZOnRDSInstance

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableMultiAZOnRDSInstance runbook changes your Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) database (DB) instance to a Multi-AZ deployment. Changing this setting doesn't result in an outage. The change is applied during the next maintenance window unless you set the `ApplyImmediately` parameter to true .

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `ApplyImmediately`

Type: Boolean

Default: false

Description: (Optional) If you specify true for this parameter, the modifications in this request and any pending modifications are asynchronously applied as soon as possible, regardless of the PreferredMaintenanceWindow setting for the DB instance.

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- **DbiResourceId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The AWS Region-unique, immutable identifier for the DB instance to enable the MultiAZ setting.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `rds:DescribeDBInstances`
- `rds:ModifyDBInstance`
- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Retrieves the DB instance name using the value provided in the `DBInstanceId` parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Verifies the `DBInstanceState` is `available`.
- `aws:branch` - Checks whether the MultiAZ is already set to `true` on the DB instance you specify in the `DbiResourceId` parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Changes the MultiAZ setting to `true` on the DB instance you specify in the `DbiResourceId` parameter.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the MultiAZ is set to `true` on the DB instance you specify in the `DbiResourceId` parameter.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnablePerformanceInsightsOnRDSInstance

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnablePerformanceInsightsOnRDSInstance runbook enables Performance Insights on the Amazon RDS DB instance you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- DbiResourceId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The resource identifier for the DB instance you want to enable Performance Insights on.

- PerformanceInsightsKMSKeyId

Type: String

Default: alias/aws/rds

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN), key ID, or the key alias of the AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) customer managed key you want Performance Insights to use to encrypt all potentially sensitive data. If you enter the key alias for this parameter, prefix the value with **alias/**. If you do not specify a value for this parameter, the AWS managed key is used.

- **PerformanceInsightsRetentionPeriod**

Type: Integer

Valid values: 7, 731

Default: 7

Description: (Optional) The number of days you want to retain Performance Insights data.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `kms>CreateGrant`
- `kms:DescribeKey`
- `rds:DescribeDBInstances`
- `rds:ModifyDBInstance`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the DB instance identifier from the DB instance resource identifier.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the DB instance status is available .
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the ARN of the AWS KMS customer managed key specified in the `PerformanceInsightsKMSKeyId` parameter.
- `aws:branch` - Checks whether a value is already assigned to the `PerformanceInsightsKMSKeyId` property of the DB instance.

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables Performance Insights on the DB instance you specify in the `DbiResourceId` parameter.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the value specified for the `PerformanceInsightsKMSKeyId` parameter was used to enable encryption for Performance Insights on the DB instance.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms Performance Insights is enabled on the DB instance.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRDSClusterDeletionProtection

Description

The `AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRDSClusterDeletionProtection` runbook enables deletion protection on the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) cluster you specify. AWS Config must be enabled in the AWS Region where you run this automation.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- `ClusterId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The resource identifier for the DB cluster you want to enable deletion protection on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `config:GetResourceConfigHistory`
- `rds:DescribeDBClusters`
- `rds:ModifyDBCluster`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the DB cluster name from the DB cluster resource identifier.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the DB cluster status is available .
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables deletion protection on the DB cluster you specify in the `ClusterId` parameter.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies deletion protection has been enabled on the DB cluster.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRDSInstanceBackup

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRDSInstanceBackup runbook enables backups for the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) database instance you specify. This runbook does not support enabling backups for Amazon Aurora database instances.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- `ApplyImmediately`

Type: Boolean

Default: false

Description: (Optional) If you specify `true` for this parameter, the modifications in this request and any pending modifications are asynchronously applied as soon as possible, regardless of the `PreferredMaintenanceWindow` setting for the DB instance.

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- `BackupRetentionPeriod`

Type: Integer

Valid values: 1-35

Description: (Required) The number of days that backups are retained.

- `DbiResourceId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The resource identifier for the DB instance you want to enable backups for.

- `PreferredBackupWindow`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The daily time range (in UTC) during which backups are created.

Constraints:

- Must be in the format hh24:mi - hh24:mi
- Must be in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC)
- Must not conflict with the preferred maintenance window
- Must be at least 30 minutes

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- rds:DescribeDBInstances
- rds:ModifyDBInstance

Document Steps

- aws :executeScript - Gathers the DB instance identifier from the DB instance resource identifier. Enables backups for your DB instance. Confirms backups are enabled on the DB instance.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRDSInstanceDeletionProtection

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRDSInstanceDeletionProtection runbook enables deletion protection on the Amazon RDS database instance you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- `ApplyImmediately`

Type: Boolean

Default: false

Description: (Optional) If you specify true for this parameter, the modifications in this request and any pending modifications are asynchronously applied as soon as possible, regardless of the PreferredMaintenanceWindow setting for the DB instance.

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- `DbInstanceResourceId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The resource identifier for the DB instance you want to enable deletion protection on.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`

- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `rds:DescribeDBInstances`
- `rds:ModifyDBInstance`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the DB instance identifier from the DB instance resource identifier.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables deletion protection on your DB instance.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms deletion protection is enabled on the DB instance.

AWSConfigRemediation-ModifyRDSInstancePortNumber

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-ModifyRDSInstancePortNumber runbook modifies the port number on which the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) instance accepts connections. Running this automation will restart the database.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- PortNumber

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The port number you want the DB instance to accept connections on.

- RDSDBInstanceResourceId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The resource identifier for the DB instance whose inbound port number you want to modify.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- rds:DescribeDBInstances
- rds:ModifyDBInstance

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers the DB instance identifier from the DB instance resource identifier.
- aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Confirms the DB Instance is in an AVAILABLE state.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Modifies the inbound port number on which your DB instance accepts connections.
- aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for the DB Instance to be in a MODIFYING state.
- aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for the DB Instance to be in an AVAILABLE state.

AWSSupport-ModifyRDSSnapshotPermission

Description

The AWSSupport-ModifyRDSSnapshotPermission runbook helps you modify permissions for multiple Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) snapshots. Using this runbook, you can make snapshots Public or Private and share them with other AWS accounts. Snapshots encrypted with a default KMS key can't be shared with other accounts using this runbook.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- AccountIds

Type: StringList

Default: none

Description: (Optional) The IDs of the accounts you want to share snapshots with. This parameter is required if you enter No for the value of the Private parameter.

- **AccountPermissionOperation**

Type: String

Valid values: add | remove

Default: none

Description: (Optional) The type of operation to perform.

- **Private**

Type: String

Valid values: Yes | No

Description: (Required) Enter No for the value if you want to share snapshots with specific accounts.

- **SnapshotIdentifiers**

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) The names of the Amazon RDS snapshots whose permission you want to modify.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `rds:DescribeDBSnapshots`
- `rds:ModifyDBSnapshotAttribute`

Document Steps

1. `aws:executeScript` - Verifies the IDs of the snapshots provided in the `SnapshotIdentifiers` parameter. After verifying the IDs, the script checks for encrypted snapshots and outputs a list if any are found.

2. aws :branch - Branches the automation based on the value you enter for the Private parameter.
3. aws :executeScript - Modifies permissions of the snapshots specified to share it with the accounts specified.
4. aws :executeScript - Modifies permissions of the snapshots to change them from Public to Private .

Outputs

ValidateSnapshots.EncryptedSnapshots

SharewithOtherAccounts.Result

MakePrivate.Result

MakePrivate.Commands

AWSPremiumSupport-PostgreSQLWorkloadReview

Description

The AWSPremiumSupport-PostgreSQLWorkloadReview runbook captures multiple snapshots of your Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) PostgreSQL database usage statistics. The statistics captured are required for an AWS Support [Proactive Services](#) expert to perform an operational review. The statistics are collected using a set of custom SQL and shell scripts. These scripts are downloaded to a temporary Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance in your AWS account that is created by this runbook. The runbook requires you to provide credentials using an AWS Secrets Manager secret containing a username and password key-value pair. The username must have permissions to query the standard PostgreSQL statistics views and functions.

This runbook automatically creates the following AWS resources in your AWS account using an AWS CloudFormation stack. You can monitor the stack creation using the AWS CloudFormation console.

- A virtual private cloud (VPC) and an Amazon EC2 instance launched in a private subnet of the VPC with optional connectivity to the internet using a NAT gateway.
- An AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that is attached to the temporary Amazon EC2 instance with permissions to retrieve the Secrets Manager secret value. The role also

provides permissions to upload files to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket of your choice, and optionally to an AWS Support case.

- A VPC peering connection to allow connectivity between your DB instance and the temporary Amazon EC2 instance.
- Systems Manager, Secrets Manager, and Amazon S3 VPC endpoints that are attached to the temporary VPC.
- A maintenance window with registered tasks that periodically start and stop the temporary Amazon EC2 instance, run data collection scripts, and upload files to an Amazon S3 bucket. An IAM role is also created for the maintenance window that provides permissions to perform the registered tasks.

When the runbook completes, the AWS CloudFormation stack that is used to create the necessary AWS resources is deleted and the report is uploaded to the Amazon S3 bucket of your choice, and optionally an AWS Support case.

 **Note**

By default, the root Amazon EBS volume of the temporary Amazon EC2 instance is preserved. You can override this option by setting the `EbsVolumeDeleteOnTermination` parameter to `true`.

Prerequisites

- **Enterprise Support subscription** This runbook and the Proactive Services Workload Diagnostics and Reviews require an Enterprise Support Subscription. Before using this runbook, contact your Technical Account Manager (TAM) or Specialist TAM (STAM) for instructions. For more information, see [AWS Support Proactive Services](#).
- **Account and AWS Region quotas** Be sure you have not reached the maximum number of Amazon EC2 instances or VPCs that you can create in your account and Region where you use this runbook. If you need to request a limit increase, see the [Service limit increase form](#).
- **Database configuration**
 1. The database you specify in the `DatabaseName` parameter should have the `pg_stat_statements` extension configured. If you have not configured `pg_stat_statements` in `shared_preload_libraries`, then you must edit the value in the DB Parameter Group and apply the changes. Changes to the parameter

`shared_preload_libraries` requires you to reboot your DB instance. For more information, see [Working with parameter groups](#). Adding `pg_stat_statements` to `shared_preload_libraries` will add some performance overhead. However, this is useful for tracking performance of individual statements. For more information about the `pg_stat_statements` extension, see the [PostgreSQL documentation](#). If you don't configure the `pg_stat_statements` extension or if the extension is not present in the database being used for statistics collection, the statement level analysis will not be presented in the operational review.

2. Make sure that `track_counts` and `track_activities` parameters are not turned off. If these parameters are turned off in the DB Parameter Group, no meaningful statistics will be available. Changing these parameters will require you to reboot your DB instance. For more information, see [Working with parameters on your Amazon RDS for PostgreSQL DB instance](#).
3. If the `track_io_timing` parameter is turned off, the I/O level statistics will not be included in the operational review. Changing `track_io_timing` will require you to reboot your DB instance and will incur additional performance overhead depending on the DB instance workload. Despite the performance overhead for critical workloads, this parameter provides useful information related to I/O time per query.

Billing and charges Your AWS account will be charged for the costs associated with the temporary Amazon EC2 instance, associated Amazon EBS volume, the NAT gateway, and the data transferred while this automation is running. By default, this runbook creates a `t3.micro` Amazon Linux 2 instance to collect the statistics. The runbook starts and stops the instance between steps to reduce costs.

Data security and governance This runbook collects statistics by querying the [PostgreSQL statistics views and functions](#). Make sure the credentials provided in the `SecretId` parameter only allow read-only permissions to the statistics views and functions. As part of the automation, the collection scripts are uploaded to your Amazon S3 bucket and can be located in `s3://DOC-EXAMPLE-BUCKET/automation execution id/queries/`.

These scripts collect data that is used by an AWS Specialist to review key performance indicators at object level. The script collects information such as table name, schema name, and index name. If any of this information contains sensitive information like revenue indicators, username, email address, or any other personally identifiable information, then we recommend that you discontinue with this workload review. Contact your AWS TAM to discuss an alternative approach for the workload review.

Make sure you have the necessary approval and clearance to share the statistics and metadata collected by this automation with AWS.

Security considerations If you set the `UpdateRdsSecurityGroup` parameter to yes, the runbook updates the security group associated with your DB instance to allow inbound traffic from the temporary Amazon EC2 instance's private IP address.

If you set the `UpdateRdsRouteTable` parameter to yes, the runbook updates the route table associated with the subnet your DB instance is running in to allow traffic to the temporary Amazon EC2 instance through the VPC peering connection.

User creation To allow the collection script to connect to your Amazon RDS database, you must set up a user with permissions to read the statistic views. Then you must store the credentials in Secrets Manager. We recommend creating a new dedicated user for this automation. Creating a separate user allows you to audit and track activities performed by this automation.

1. Create a new user.

```
psql -h <database_connection_endpoint> -p <database_port> -U <admin_user>
-c "CREATE USER <user_name> PASSWORD '<password>';"
```

2. Ensure that this user can only make read-only connections.

```
psql -h <database_connection_endpoint> -p <database_port> -U <admin_user>
-c "ALTER USER <user_name> SET default_transaction_read_only=true;"
```

3. Set user level limits.

```
psql -h <database_connection_endpoint> -p <database_port> -U <admin_user>
-c "ALTER USER <user_name> SET work_mem=4096;"
```

```
psql -h <database_connection_endpoint> -p <database_port> -U <admin_user>
-c "ALTER USER <user_name> SET statement_timeout=10000;"
```

```
psql -h <database_connection_endpoint> -p <database_port>
-U <admin_user> -c "ALTER USER <user_name> SET
idle_in_transaction_session_timeout=60000;"
```

4. Grant `pg_monitor` permissions to the new user so it can access the DB statistics. (The `pg_monitor` role is a member of `pg_read_all_settings`, `pg_read_all_stats`, and `pg_stat_scan_table`.)

```
psql -h <database_connection_endpoint> -p <database_port> -U <admin_user>
-c "GRANT pg_monitor to <user_name>;"
```

Permissions added to the temporary Amazon EC2 instance profile by this Systems Manager Automation The following permissions are added to the IAM role associated with the temporary Amazon EC2 instance. The AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy is also associated with the IAM role to allow the Amazon EC2 instance to be managed by Systems Manager.

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Action": [
                "ec2:DescribeTags"
            ],
            "Resource": "*",
            "Effect": "Allow"
        },
        {
            "Action": [
                "s3:GetBucketLocation"
            ],
            "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::DOC-EXAMPLE-BUCKET",
            "Effect": "Allow"
        },
        {
            "Action": [
                "s3:PutObject"
            ],
            "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::DOC-EXAMPLE-BUCKET/automation execution id/*",
            "Effect": "Allow"
        },
        {
            "Action": [
                "secretsmanager:GetSecretValue"
            ],
            "Resource": "arn:aws:secretsmanager:region:account id:secret:secret id",
            "Effect": "Allow"
        },
        {
            "Action": [
```

```
        "support:AddAttachmentsToSet",
        "support:AddCommunicationToCase",
        "support:DescribeCases"
    ],
    "Resource": "*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
}
]
}
```

Permissions added to the temporary maintenance window by this Systems Manager Automation

The following permissions are automatically added to the IAM role associated with the Maintenance Windows tasks. The Maintenance Windows tasks starts, stops, and sends commands to the temporary Amazon EC2 instance.

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Action": [
                "ssm:GetAutomationExecution",
                "ssm>ListCommands",
                "ssm>ListCommandInvocations",
                "ssm:GetCommandInvocation",
                "ssm:GetCalendarState",
                "ssm:CancelCommand",
                "ec2:DescribeInstanceStatus"
            ],
            "Resource": "*",
            "Effect": "Allow"
        },
        {
            "Action": [
                "ssm:SendCommand",
                "ec2:StartInstances",
                "ec2:StopInstances",
                "ssm:StartAutomationExecution"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:ec2:region:account id:instance/temporary instance id",
                "arn:aws:ssm:*:*:document/AWS-RunShellScript",
                "arn:aws:ssm:*:*:automation-definition/AWS-StopEC2Instance:$DEFAULT",
                "arn:aws:ssm:*:*:automation-definition/AWS-StartEC2Instance:$DEFAULT"
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

```
        ],
        "Effect": "Allow"
    },
    {
        "Condition": {
            "StringEquals": {
                "iam:PassedToService": "ssm.amazonaws.com"
            }
        },
        "Action": "iam:PassRole",
        "Resource": "*",
        "Effect": "Allow"
    }
]
}
```

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- DBInstanceIdentifier

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of your DB instance.

- DatabaseName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The database name hosted on your DB instance.

- SecretId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of your Secrets Manager secret containing the username and password key value pair. The AWS CloudFormation stack creates an IAM policy with permissions for the GetSecretValue operation to this ARN. The credentials are used to allow the temporary instance to collect the database statistics. Contact your TAM or STAM to discuss the minimum required permissions.

- Acknowledge

Type: String

Description: (Required) Enter **yes** if you acknowledge that this runbook will create temporary resources in your account to collect statistics from your DB instance. We recommend contacting your TAM or STAM before running this automation.

- SupportCase

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The AWS Support case number provided by your TAM or STAM. If provided, the runbook updates the case and attaches the data collected. This option requires the temporary Amazon EC2 instance to have internet connectivity to access the AWS Support API endpoint. You must set the AllowVpcInternetAccess parameter to true. The case subject must contain the phrase AwSPremiumSupport-PostgreSQLWorkloadReview.

- S3BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon S3 bucket name in your account where you want to upload the data collected by the automation. Verify the bucket policy does not grant any unnecessary read or write permissions to principals that do not need access to the contents of the bucket. We

recommend creating a new temporary Amazon S3 bucket for the purpose of this automation. The runbook provides permissions to the `s3:PutObject` API operation to the IAM role attached to the temporary Amazon EC2 instance. The uploaded files will be located in `s3://bucket name/automation execution id/`.

- **InstanceType**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The type of the temporary Amazon EC2 instance that will run the custom SQL and shell scripts.

Valid values: t2.micro | t2.small | t2.medium | t2.large | t3.micro | t3.small | t3.medium | t3.large

Default: t3.micro

- **VpcCidr**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The IP address range in CIDR notation for the new VPC (for example, `172.31.0.0/16`). Make sure you select a CIDR that does not overlap or match any existing VPC with connectivity to your DB instance. The smallest VPC you can create uses a /28 subnet mask, and the largest VPC uses a /16 subnet mask.

Default: `172.31.0.0/16`

- **StackResourcesNamePrefix**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The AWS CloudFormation stack resources name prefix and tag. The runbook creates the AWS CloudFormation stack resources using this prefix as part of the name and tag applied to the resources. The structure for the tag key-value pair is `StackResourcesNamePrefix:{automation:EXECUTION_ID}`.

Default: `AWSPostgreSQLWorkloadReview`

- **Schedule**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The maintenance window schedule. Specifies how often the maintenance window runs the tasks. The default value is every 1 hour.

Valid values: 15 minutes | 30 minutes | 1 hour | 2 hours | 4 hours | 6 hours | 12 hours | 1 day | 2 days | 4 days

Default: 1 hour

- Duration

Type: Integer

Description: (Optional) The maximum duration, in minutes, you want to allow the automation to run. The maximum duration supported is 8,640 minutes (6 days). The default value is 4,320 minutes (3 days).

Valid values: 30-8640

Default: 4320

- UpdateRdsRouteTable

Type: String

Description: (Optional) If set to true, the runbook updates the route table associated with the subnet your DB instance runs in. An IPv4 route is added to route traffic to the temporary Amazon EC2 instance private IPV4 address through the newly created VPC peering connection.

Valid values: true | false

Default: false

- AllowVpcInternetAccess

Type: String

Description: (Optional) If set to true, the runbook creates a NAT gateway to provide internet connectivity to the temporary Amazon EC2 instance to communicate with the AWS Support API endpoint. You can leave this parameter as false if you only want the runbook to upload the output to your Amazon S3 bucket.

Valid values: true | false

Default: false

- UpdateRdsSecurityGroup

Type: String

Description: (Optional) If set to true, the runbook updates the security group associated with your DB instance to allow traffic from the temporary instance's private IP address.

Valid values: false | true

Default: false

- EbsVolumeDeleteOnTermination

Type: String

Description: (Optional) If set to true, the temporary Amazon EC2 instance's root volume is deleted after the runbook completes and deletes the AWS CloudFormation stack.

Valid values: false | true

Default: false

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- cloudformation:CreateStack
- cloudformation>DeleteStack
- cloudformation:DescribeStackEvents
- cloudformation:DescribeStackResource
- cloudformation:DescribeStacks
- cloudformation:UpdateStack
- ec2:AcceptVpcPeeringConnection
- ec2:AllocateAddress
- ec2:AssociateRouteTable
- ec2:AssociateVpcCidrBlock
- ec2:AttachInternetGateway
- ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress

- ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
- ec2>CreateEgressOnlyInternetGateway
- ec2>CreateInternetGateway
- ec2>CreateNatGateway
- ec2>CreateRoute
- ec2>CreateRouteTable
- ec2>CreateSecurityGroup
- ec2>CreateSubnet
- ec2>CreateTags
- ec2>CreateVpc
- ec2>CreateVpcEndpoint
- ec2>CreateVpcPeeringConnection
- ec2>DeleteEgressOnlyInternetGateway
- ec2>DeleteInternetGateway
- ec2>DeleteNatGateway
- ec2>DeleteRoute
- ec2>DeleteRouteTable
- ec2>DeleteSecurityGroup
- ec2>DeleteSubnet
- ec2>DeleteTags
- ec2>DeleteVpc
- ec2>DeleteVpcEndpoints
- ec2:DescribeAddresses
- ec2:DescribeEgressOnlyInternetGateways
- ec2:DescribeImages
- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeInstanceStatus
- ec2:DescribeInternetGateways
- ec2:DescribeNatGateways
- ec2:DescribeRouteTables

- `ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups`
- `ec2:DescribeSubnets`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcEndpoints`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcPeeringConnections`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcs`
- `ec2:DetachInternetGateway`
- `ec2:DisassociateRouteTable`
- `ec2:DisassociateVpcCidrBlock`
- `ec2:ModifySubnetAttribute`
- `ec2:ModifyVpcAttribute`
- `ec2:RebootInstances`
- `ec2:ReleaseAddress`
- `ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupEgress`
- `ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupIngress`
- `ec2:StartInstances`
- `ec2:StopInstances`
- `ec2:RunInstances`
- `ec2:TerminateInstances`
- `iam:AddRoleToInstanceProfile`
- `iam:AttachRolePolicy`
- `iam>CreateInstanceProfile`
- `iam:CreateRole`
- `iam>DeleteInstanceProfile`
- `iam>DeleteRole`
- `iam>DeleteRolePolicy`
- `iam:DetachRolePolicy`
- `iam:GetInstanceProfile`
- `iam:GetRole`
- `iam:GetRolePolicy`
- `iam:PassRole`

- `iam:PutRolePolicy`
- `iam:RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfile`
- `iam:TagPolicy`
- `iam:TagRole`
- `rds:DescribeDBInstances`
- `s3:GetAccountPublicAccessBlock`
- `s3:GetBucketAcl`
- `s3:GetBucketPolicyStatus`
- `s3:GetBucketPublicAccessBlock`
- `s3>ListBucket`
- `ssm:AddTagsToResource`
- `ssm:CancelMaintenanceWindowExecution`
- `ssm>CreateDocument`
- `ssm>CreateMaintenanceWindow`
- `ssm>DeleteDocument`
- `ssm>DeleteMaintenanceWindow`
- `ssm:DeregisterTaskFromMaintenanceWindow`
- `ssm:DescribeAutomationExecutions`
- `ssm:DescribeDocument`
- `ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation`
- `ssm:DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutions`
- `ssm:GetCalendarState`
- `ssm:GetDocument`
- `ssm:GetMaintenanceWindowExecution`
- `ssm:GetParameters`
- `ssm>ListCommandInvocations`
- `ssm>ListCommands`
- `ssm>ListTagsForResource`
- `ssm:RegisterTaskWithMaintenanceWindow`
- `ssm:RemoveTagsFromResource`

- `ssm:SendCommand`
- `support:AddAttachmentsToSet`
- `support:AddCommunicationToCase`
- `support:DescribeCases`

Document Steps

1. `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the DB instance is in the available state.
2. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers details about the DB instance.
3. `aws:executeScript` - Checks if the Amazon S3 bucket specified in the `S3BucketName` allows anonymous, or public read or write access permissions.
4. `aws:executeScript` - Gets the AWS CloudFormation template content from the Automation runbook attachment that is used to create the temporary AWS resources in your AWS account.
5. `aws:createStack` - Creates the AWS CloudFormation stack resources.
6. `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits until the Amazon EC2 instance created by the AWS CloudFormation template is running.
7. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets the IDs for the temporary Amazon EC2 instance and VPC peering connection created by AWS CloudFormation.
8. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets the IP address for the temporary Amazon EC2 instance to configure connectivity with your DB instance.
9. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Tags the Amazon EBS volume attached to the temporary Amazon EC2 instance.
10. `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits until the temporary Amazon EC2 instance passes status checks.
11. `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits until the temporary Amazon EC2 instance is managed by Systems Manager. If this step times out or fails, then the runbook reboots the instance.
 - a. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Reboots the temporary Amazon EC2 instance if the previous step failed or timed out.
 - b. `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits until the temporary Amazon EC2 instance is managed by Systems Manager after reboot.
12. `aws:runCommand` - Installs the metadata collector application requirements on the temporary Amazon EC2 instance.

13aws :runCommand - Configures access to your DB instance by creating a configuration file on the temporary Amazon EC2 instance.

14aws :executeAwsApi - Creates a maintenance window to periodically run the metadata collector application using Run Command. The maintenance window starts and stops the instance between commands.

15aws :waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits until the maintenance window created by the AWS CloudFormation template is ready.

16aws :executeAwsApi - Gets the IDs for the maintenance window and change calendar created by AWS CloudFormation.

17aws :sleep - Waits until the end date of the maintenance window.

18aws :executeAwsApi - Turns off the maintenance window.

19aws :executeScript - Gets the results of the tasks run during the maintenance window.

20aws :waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for the maintenance window to finish the last task before continuing.

21aws :branch - Branches the workflow based on whether you provided a value for the SupportCase parameter.

- a. aws :changeInstanceState - Starts the temporary Amazon EC2 instance and waits for status checks to pass before uploading the report.
- b. aws :waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits until the temporary Amazon EC2 instance is managed by Systems Manager. If this step timeouts or fail, then the runbook reboots the instance.
 - i. aws :executeAwsApi - Reboots the temporary Amazon EC2 instance if the previous step failed or timed out.
 - ii. aws :waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits until the temporary Amazon EC2 instance is managed by Systems Manager after reboot.
- c. aws :runCommand - Attaches the metadata report to the AWS Support case if you provided a value for the SupportCase parameter. The script compresses and splits the report into 5 MB files. The maximum number of files the script attaches to a AWS Support case is 12.

22aws :changeInstanceState - Stops the temporary Amazon EC2 instance in case the AWS CloudFormation stack fails to delete.

23aws :executeAwsApi - Describes the AWS CloudFormation stack events if the runbooks fails to create or update the AWS CloudFormation stack.

24aws :waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits until the AWS CloudFormation stack is in a terminal status before deleting.

25aws :executeAwsApi - Deletes the AWS CloudFormation stack excluding the maintenance window. The root Amazon EBS volume associated with the temporary Amazon EC2 instance is preserved if the EbsVolumeDeleteOnTermination parameter value was set to false.

AWS-RebootRdsInstance

Description

The AWS-RebootRdsInstance runbook reboots an Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) DB instance if it isn't already rebooting.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Instanceld

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon RDS DB instance that you want to reboot.

Document Steps

RebootInstance - Reboots the DB instance if it is not already rebooting.

WaitForAvailableState - Waits for the DB instance to complete the reboot process.

Outputs

This automation has no outputs.

AWS Support - ShareRDSSnapshot

Description

The AWS Support - ShareRDSSnapshot runbook provides an automated solution for the procedure outlined in the Knowledge Center article [How can I share an encrypted Amazon RDS DB snapshot with another account?](#) If your Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) snapshot was encrypted using the default AWS managed key, you cannot share the snapshot. In this case, you must copy the snapshot using a customer managed key, and then share the snapshot with the target account. This automation performs these steps using the value you specify in the SnapshotName parameter, or the latest snapshot found for the selected Amazon RDS DB instance or cluster.

 **Note**

If you do not specify a value for the KMSKey parameter, the automation creates a new AWS KMS customer managed key in your account that is used to encrypt the snapshot.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AccountIds

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) Comma-separated list of account IDs to share the snapshot with.

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Database

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon RDS DB instance or cluster whose snapshot you want to share. This parameter is optional if you specify a value for the SnapshotName parameter.

- KMSKey

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The full Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS KMS customer managed key used to encrypt the snapshot.

- SnapshotName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ID of the DB cluster or instance snapshot that you want to use.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `rds:DescribeDBInstances`
- `rds:DescribeDBSnapshots`
- `rds:CopyDBSnapshot`
- `rds:ModifyDBSnapshotAttribute`

The `AutomationAssumeRole` requires the following actions to successfully start the runbook for a DB cluster.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `rds:DescribeDBClusters`
- `rds:DescribeDBClusterSnapshots`
- `rds:CopyDBClusterSnapshot`
- `rds:ModifyDBClusterSnapshotAttribute`

The IAM role used to run the automation must be added as a key user to use the KMS key specified in the `ARNKmsKey` parameter. For information about adding key users to a KMS key, see [Changing a key policy](#) in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

The `AutomationAssumeRole` requires the following additional actions to successfully start the runbook if you do not specify a value for the `KMSKey` parameter.

- `kms>CreateKey`
- `kms:ScheduleKeyDeletion`

Document Steps

1. `aws:executeScript` - Checks whether a value was provided for the `KMSKey` parameter, and creates a AWS KMS customer managed key if no value is found.
2. `aws:branch` - Checks whether a value was provided for the `SnapshotName` parameter, and branches accordingly.
3. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Checks whether the snapshot provided is from a DB instance.
4. `aws:executeScript` - Formats the `SnapshotName` parameter replacing colons with a hyphen.
5. `aws:executeAwsApi` - Copies the snapshot using the specified `KMSKey`.

6. aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for the copy snapshot operation to complete.
7. aws:executeAwsApi - Shares the new snapshot with the AccountIds specified.
8. aws:executeAwsApi - Checks whether the snapshot provided is from a DB cluster.
9. aws:executeScript - Formats the SnapshotName parameter replacing colons with a hyphen.
- 10aws:executeAwsApi - Copies the snapshot using the specified KMSKey .
- 11aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for the copy snapshot operation to complete.
- 12aws:executeAwsApi - Shares the new snapshot with the AccountIds specified.
- 13aws:executeAwsApi - Checks whether the value provided for the Database parameter is a DB instance.
- 14aws:executeAwsApi - Checks whether the value provided for the Database parameter is a DB cluster.
- 15aws:executeAwsApi - Retrieves a list of snapshots for the specified Database .
- 16aws:executeScript - Determines the latest snapshot available from the list assembled in the previous step.
- 17aws:executeAwsApi - Copies the DB instance snapshot using the specified KMSKey .
- 18aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for the copy snapshot operation to complete.
- 19aws:executeAwsApi - Shares the new snapshot with the AccountIds specified.
- 20aws:executeAwsApi - Retrieves a list of snapshots for the specified Database .
- 21aws:executeScript - Determines the latest snapshot available from the list assembled in the previous step.
- 22aws:executeAwsApi - Copies the DB instance snapshot using the specified KMSKey .
- 23aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for the copy snapshot operation to complete.
- 24aws:executeAwsApi - Shares the new snapshot with the AccountIds specified.
- 25aws:executeScript - Deletes the AWS KMS customer managed key created by the automation if you did not specify a value for the KMSKey parameter and the automation fails.

AWS-StartRdsInstance

Description

Start an Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) instance.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Instanceld

Type: String

Description: (Required) ID of the Amazon RDS instance to start.

AWS-StartStopAuroraCluster

Description

This runbook starts or stops an Amazon Aurora cluster.

Note

To start a cluster it must be in a stopped status. To stop a cluster it must be in an available status. This runbook can't be used to start or stop a cluster that is an Aurora

Serverless cluster, an Aurora multi-master cluster, part of an Aurora global database, or a cluster that uses Aurora parallel query.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- ClusterName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Aurora cluster you want to stop or start.

- Action

Type: String

Valid values: Start | Stop

Default: Start

Description: (Required) The name of the Aurora cluster you want to stop or start.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `rds:DescribeDBClusters`
- `rds:StartDBCluster`
- `rds:StopDBCluster`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Starts or stops the cluster based on the values you specify for the.

Outputs

`StartStopAuroraCluster.ClusterName` - The name of the Aurora cluster

`StartStopAuroraCluster.CurrentStatus` - The current status of the Aurora cluster

`StartStopAuroraCluster.Message` - Details of the automation

AWS-StopRdsInstance

Description

Stop an Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) instance.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- InstanceId

Type: String

Description: (Required) ID of the Amazon RDS instance to stop.

AWSSupport-TroubleshootConnectivityToRDS

Description

The AWSSupport-TroubleshootConnectivityToRDS runbook diagnoses connectivity issues between an EC2 instance and an Amazon Relational Database Service instance. The automation ensures the DB instance is available, and then checks the associated security group rules, network access control lists (network ACLs), and route tables for potential connectivity issues.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- DBInstanceIdentifier

Type: String

Description: (Required) The DB instance ID to test connectivity to.

- SourceInstance

Type: String

Allowed pattern: ^i-[a-zA-Z0-9]{8,17}\$

Description: (Required) The ID of the EC2 instance to test connectivity from.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls
- ec2:DescribeRouteTables
- ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups
- ec2:DescribeSubnets
- rds:DescribeDBInstances

Document Steps

- aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Confirms the DB instance status is available .
- aws:executeAwsApi - Gets information about the DB instance.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Gets information about the DB instance network ACLs.

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets the DB instance subnet CIDR.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets information about the EC2 instance.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets information about the EC2 instance network ACLs.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets information about the security groups associated with the EC2 instance.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets information about the security groups associated with the DB instance.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets information about the route tables associated with the EC2 instance.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets information about the main route table associated with the Amazon VPC for the EC2 instance.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets information about the route tables associated with the DB instance.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gets information about the main route table associated with the Amazon VPC for the DB instance.
- `aws:executeScript` - Evaluates security group rules.
- `aws:executeScript` - Evaluates network ACLs.
- `aws:executeScript` - Evaluates route tables.
- `aws:sleep` - Ends the automation.

Outputs

`getRDSInstanceProperties.DBInstanceIdentifier` - The DB instance used in the automation.

`getRDSInstanceProperties.DBInstanceStatus` - The current status of the DB instance.

`evalSecurityGroupRules.SecurityGroupEvaluation` - Results from comparing the `SourceInstance` security group rules to the DB instance security group rules.

`evalNetworkAclRules.NetworkAclEvaluation` - Results from comparing the `SourceInstance` network ACLs to the DB instance network ACLs.

`evalRouteTableEntries.RouteTableEvaluation` - Results from comparing the `SourceInstance` route table to the DB instance routes.

AWSSupport-TroubleshootRDSIAMAuthentication

Description

The AWSSupport-TroubleshootRDSIAMAuthentication helps troubleshoot AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) authentication for Amazon RDS for PostgreSQL, Amazon RDS for MySQL, Amazon RDS for MariaDB, Amazon Aurora PostgreSQL, and Amazon Aurora MySQL instances. Use this runbook to verify the configuration required for IAM authentication with an Amazon RDS instance or Aurora Cluster. It also provides steps to rectify the connectivity issues to the Amazon RDS Instance or Aurora Cluster.

Important

This runbook does not support Amazon RDS for Oracle or Amazon RDS for Microsoft SQL Server.

Important

If a source Amazon EC2 Instance is provided and the target Database is Amazon RDS, a child automation AWSSupport-TroubleshootConnectivityToRDS is invoked to troubleshoot TCP connectivity. The output also provides commands you can run on your Amazon EC2 instance or source machine to connect to the Amazon RDS instances using IAM authentication.

How does it work?

This runbook consists of six steps:

- **Step 1: validateInputs:** Validates the inputs to the automation.
- **Step 2: branchOnSourceEC2Provided:** Verifies if a source Amazon EC2 Instance ID is provided in the input parameters.
- **Step 3: validateRDSCConnectivity:** Validates Amazon RDS connectivity from the source Amazon EC2 instance if provided.
- **Step 4: validateRDSIAMAuthentication:** Validates if the IAM Authentication feature is enabled.
- **Step 5: validateIAMPolicies:** Verifies if the required IAM permissions are present in the IAM user/role provided.

- **Step 6: generateReport:** Generates a report of the results of the previously executed steps.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- RDSType

Type: String

Description: (Required): Select the type of relational database to which you are trying to connect and authenticate.

Allowed Values: Amazon RDS or Amazon Aurora Cluster.

- DBInstanceIdentifier

Type: String

Description: (Required) The identifier of the target Amazon RDS Database Instance or Aurora Database Cluster.

Allowed Pattern: ^[A-Za-z0-9]+(-[A-Za-z0-9]+)*\$

Max Characters: 63

- SourceEc2InstanceId

Type: AWS::EC2::Instance::Id

Description: (Optional) The Amazon EC2 Instance ID if you are connecting to the Amazon RDS Database Instance from an Amazon EC2 Instance running in the same account and region. Do not specify this parameter if the source is not an Amazon EC2 instance or if the target Amazon RDS type is an Aurora Database Cluster.

Default: ""

- DBIAMRoleName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The IAM role name being used for IAM-based authentication. Provide only if the parameter DBIAMUserName is not provided, otherwise leave it empty. Either DBIAMRoleName or DBIAMUserName must be provided.

Allowed Pattern: ^[a-zA-Z0-9+=,.@_-]{1,64}\$|^\$

Max Characters: 64

Default: ""

- DBIAMUserName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The IAM user name used for IAM-based authentication. Provide only if the DBIAMRoleName parameter is not provided, otherwise leave it empty. Either DBIAMRoleName or DBIAMUserName must be provided.

Allowed Pattern: ^[a-zA-Z0-9+=,.@_-]{1,64}\$|^\$

Max Characters: 64

Default: ""

- DBUserName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The database user name mapped to an IAM role/user for IAM-based authentication within the database. The default option * evaluates if the rds-db:connect permission is allowed for all users in the Database.

Allowed Pattern: ^[a-zA-Z0-9+=,.@*_ -]{1,64}\$

Max Characters: 64

Default: *

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls
- ec2:DescribeRouteTables
- ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups
- ec2:DescribeSubnets
- iam:GetPolicy
- iam:GetRole
- iam:GetUser
- iam>ListAttachedRolePolicies
- iam>ListAttachedUserPolicies
- iam>ListRolePolicies
- iam>ListUserPolicies
- iam:SimulatePrincipalPolicy
- rds:DescribeDBClusters
- rds:DescribeDBInstances
- ssm:DescribeAutomationStepExecutions
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution

Instructions

1. Navigate to the [AWSSupport-TroubleshootRDSIAMAuthentication](#) in the AWS Systems Manager Console.

2. Select **Execute Automation**

3. For input parameters, enter the following:

- **AutomationAssumeRole (Optional):**

The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **RDSType (Required):**

Select the type of Amazon RDS to which you are trying to connect and authenticate. Choose from the two allowed values: Amazon RDS or Amazon Aurora Cluster.

- **DBInstanceIdentifier (Required):**

Enter the identifier of the target Amazon RDS Database Instance or the Aurora Cluster to which you are trying to connect and use IAM credentials for authentication.

- **SourceEc2InstancelIdentifier (Optional):**

Provide the Amazon EC2 Instance ID if you are connecting to the Amazon RDS Database Instance from an Amazon EC2 Instance present in the same account and region. Leave blank if the source is not Amazon EC2 or if the target Amazon RDS type is an Aurora Cluster.

- **DBIAMRoleName (Optional):**

Enter the IAM Role name used for IAM-Based authentication. Provide only if DBIAMUserName is not provided; otherwise, leave blank. Either DBIAMRoleName or DBIAMUserName must be provided.

- **DBIAMUserName (Optional):**

Enter the IAM User used for IAM-Based authentication. Provide only if DBIAMRoleName is not provided, otherwise, leave blank. Either DBIAMRoleName or DBIAMUserName must be provided.

- **DBUserName (Optional):**

Enter the database user mapped to an IAM role/user for IAM-Based authentication within the database. The default option * is used to evaluate; nothing is provided in this field.

Input parameters

SourceEc2InstanceIdentifier
(Optional) The Amazon EC2 Instance ID if you are connecting to the RDS DB instance from an EC2 instance running in the same account and region. Do not specify this parameter if the source is not an EC2 instance or if the target RDS type is an Aurora DB cluster.
 Show interactive instance picker

Name	Instance ID	State	Availability zone	Platform

Filter all instances Show managed instances...

There are no managed instances in this account.
We recommend using [Quick Setup](#) to configure your instances for Systems Manager.
After configuring your instances for Systems Manager, the instances will be displayed here in a few minutes.

AutomationAssumeRole
(Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role that allows the Automation runbook to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses your current IAM user permissions context to execute this runbook.

RDSType
(Required) The type of Relational Database.

DBInstancelIdentifier
(Required) The identifier of the target Amazon RDS DB instance or Amazon Aurora DB cluster.
 String

DBIAMRoleName
(Optional) The IAM role name being used for IAM-based authentication. Provide only if the parameter 'DBIAMUserName' is not provided, otherwise leave it empty. Either 'DBIAMRoleName' or 'DBIAMUserName' must be provided.
 String

DBUserName
(Optional) The database user name mapped to an IAM role/user for IAM-based authentication within the database. The default option '*' evaluates if the 'rds-db:connect' permission is allowed for all users in the DB.
 *

4. Select **Execute**.

5. Notice that the automation initiates.

6. The document performs the following steps:

- **Step 1: validateInputs:**

Validates the inputs to the automation - SourceEC2InstanceIdentifier (optional), DBInstanceIdentifier or ClusterID, and DBIAMRoleName or DBIAMUserName. It verifies if the input parameters entered are present in your account and region. It also verifies if the user entered one of the IAM parameters (for example, DBIAMRoleName or DBIAMUserName). Additionally, it performs other verifications, such as if the Database mentioned is in Available status.

- **Step 2: branchOnSourceEC2Provided:**

Verifies if Source Amazon EC2 is provided in the input parameters and the Database is Amazon RDS. If yes, it proceeds to step 3. If not, it skips step 3, which is Amazon EC2-Amazon RDS Connectivity validation and proceeds to step 4.

- **Step 3: validateRDSConnectivity:**

If the Source Amazon EC2 is provided in the input parameters and the Database is Amazon RDS, step 2 initiates step 3. In this step, the child automation AWSSupport-TroubleshootConnectivityToRDS is invoked to validate Amazon RDS connectivity from source Amazon EC2. The child automation runbook AWSSupport-TroubleshootConnectivityToRDS verifies if the required network configurations (Amazon Virtual Private Cloud [Amazon VPC], Security Groups, Network Access Control List [NACL], Amazon RDS availability) are in place so that you can connect from the Amazon EC2 instance to the Amazon RDS instance.

- **Step 4: validateRDSIAMAuthentication:**

Validates if the IAM Authentication feature is enabled on the Amazon RDS instance or Aurora Cluster.

- **Step 5: validateIAMPolicies:**

Verifies if the required IAM permissions are present in the IAM user/role passed to enable the IAM credentials to authenticate into the Amazon RDS instance for the specified Database User (if any).

- **Step 6: generateReport:**

Obtains all the information from the previous steps and prints the result or the output of each step. It also lists the steps to refer to and perform, to connect to the Amazon RDS instance using the IAM credentials.

7. When the automation is complete, review the **Outputs** section for the detailed results:

- **Checking the IAM User/Role permission to connect to Database:**

Verifies if the required IAM permissions are present in the IAM user/role passed to enable the IAM credentials to authenticate into the Amazon RDS Instance for the specified Database User (if any).

- **Checking IAM-Based Authentication Attribute for the Database:**

Verifies if the feature of the IAM authentication is enabled for the specified Amazon RDS Database/Aurora Cluster.

- **Checking Connectivity from Amazon EC2 Instance to Amazon RDS Instance:**

Verifies if the required network configurations (Amazon VPC, Security Groups, NACL, Amazon RDS availability) are in place so that you can connect from the Amazon EC2 instance to the Amazon RDS Instance.

- **Next Steps:**

Lists the commands and steps to refer to and perform, to connect to the Amazon RDS Instance using the IAM credentials.

```
Outputs

ScriptExecutionId
2e1d[REDACTED]ba4

Output
[Troubleshooting Results]

1. Checking the IAM user/role permissions to connect to database:
  ✓ [PASSED]: Found permission 'rds-db:connect' for the resource 'a[REDACTED]-db1'.

2. Checking IAM-based authentication attribute for the database:
  ✓ [PASSED]: IAM-based authentication attribute is enabled for the database 'a[REDACTED]-db1'.

3. Checking connectivity from the EC2 instance to RDS instance:
  ✘ [SKIPPED]: No Source EC2 instance provided.
Run these commands to troubleshoot connectivity to your aurora-mysql DB instance:
$ telnet a[REDACTED]-db1.cluster-[REDACTED].rds.amazonaws.com 3306
$ nc -vz a[REDACTED]-db1.cluster-[REDACTED].rds.amazonaws.com 3306

[Next Steps]

1. Verify if the database user exists and have the required permissions to connect to the database using IAM authentication:
- Connect to DB a[REDACTED]-db1 using admin/master db user.
- Run the following query/command in your database:
  SELECT user, plugin, host from mysql.user WHERE user LIKE '%<name of the DB user>%';
- From the output, verify if the user has the AWSAuthenticationPlugin.

2. Download the SSL bundle and connect to aurora-mysql database using IAM authentication by running the following commands:
$ wget https://truststore.pki.rds.amazonaws.com/global/global-bundle.pem
$ export DBPASS=$(aws rds generate-db-auth-token --hostname a[REDACTED]-db1.cluster-[REDACTED].rds.amazonaws.com --port 3306 --region us-[REDACTED]z --username <name of the DB user>)
mysql --host=a[REDACTED]-db1.cluster-[REDACTED].rds.amazonaws.com --port=3306 --ssl-ca=global-bundle.pem --enable-cleartext-plugin --user=<name of the DB user> --password=$DBPASS

Reference: https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonRDS/latest/UserGuide/UsingWithRDS.IAMDBAuth.html
```

References

Systems Manager Automation

- [Run this Automation \(console\)](#)
- [Run an automation](#)
- [Setting up an Automation](#)
- [Support Automation Workflows landing page](#)

AWSsupport-ValidateRdsNetworkConfiguration

Description

AWSsupport-ValidateRdsNetworkConfiguration automation helps to avoid incompatible-network state for your existing Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) / Amazon

Aurora / Amazon DocumentDB instance before you perform `ModifyDBInstance` or `StartDBInstance` operation. If the instance is already in incompatible-network state, the runbook will provide the reason.

How does it work?

This runbook determines if your Amazon RDS database instance will go into incompatible-network state, or if it has, determine the reason it's in incompatible-network state.

The runbook performs the following checks against your Amazon RDS database instance:

- Amazon Elastic Network Interface (ENI) quota per region.
- All subnets in the database Subnet Group exist.
- There are sufficient free IP addresses available for the subnet(s).
- (For publicly accessible Amazon RDS instances) Settings of VPC attributes (`enableDnsSupport` and `enableDnsHostnames`).

Important

When using this document against Amazon Aurora / Amazon DocumentDB clusters, ensure that you use `DBInstanceIdentifier` instead of `ClusterIdentifier`. Otherwise, the document will fail in the first step.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `rds:DescribeDBInstances`
- `servicequotas:GetServiceQuota`
- `ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcAttribute`
- `ec2:DescribeSubnets`

Sample policy:

```
{  
    "Version": "2012-10-17",  
    "Statement": [  
        {  
            "Sid": "ValidateRdsNetwork",  
            "Effect": "Allow",  
            "Action": [  
                "rds:DescribeDBInstances",  
                "servicequotas:GetServiceQuota",  
                "ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces",  
                "ec2:DescribeVpcAttribute",  
                "ec2:DescribeSubnets"  
            ],  
            "Resource": [  
                "arn:aws:rds:{Region}:{Account}:db:{DbInstanceName}"  
            ]  
        }  
    ]  
}
```

Instructions

1. Navigate to the [AWSSupport-ValidateRdsNetworkConfiguration](#) in the AWS Systems Manager Console.
2. Select **Execute Automation**
3. For input parameters, enter the following:

- **AutomationAssumeRole (Optional):**

The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **DBInstanceIdentifier (Required):**

Enter the Amazon Relational Database Service Instance Identifier.

The screenshot shows the 'Input parameters' section of a Lambda function configuration. It includes two fields: 'AutomationAssumeRole' (with a dropdown menu showing 'Select an existing IAM Role' and a value 'arn:aws:iam::role/AutomationAssumeRoleSSM') and 'DBInstanceIdentifier' (with a text input field containing 'my-rds-instance-01').

4. Select **Execute**.

5. Notice that the automation initiates.

6. The document performs the following steps:

- **Step 1: assertRdsState:**

Checks if the provided instance identifier exists and has any of the following states: available, stopped, or incompatible-network.

- **Step 2: gatherRdsInformation:**

Gathers required information about the Amazon RDS instance to use later in the automation.

- **Step 3: checkEniQuota:**

Checks for the current available quota of Amazon ENI for the region.

- **Step 4: validateVpcAttributes:**

Validates that the DNS parameters (enableDnsSupport and enableDnsHostnames) of the Amazon VPC are set to true (or not if the Amazon RDS instance is PubliclyAccessible).

- **Step 5: validateSubnetAttributes:**

Validates the existence of subnets in the DBSubnetGroup and checks for available IPs for each subnet.

- **Step 6: generateReport:**

Obtains all the information from the previous steps and prints the result or the output of each step. It also lists the steps to refer to and perform, to connect to the Amazon RDS instance using the IAM credentials.

7. When the automation is complete, review the **Outputs** section for the detailed results:

Amazon RDS instance with valid network configuration:

▼ Outputs

```
generateReport.Report
# AWS RDS Network Configuration Checks: aws-rds-01rr (available)
##  No Issue(s) Found

### [Troubleshooting Results]
1. Checking ENI Quota for region the RDS Instance is in:
 [PASSED] : Quota for Elastic Network Interface (ENIs) (4997) is sufficient at the moment.

2. Checking VPC Attribute (`enableDnsHostname` & `enableDnsSupport`) settings:
 [PASSED] : [PASSED] Value for both VPC attributes (`enableDnsHostnames` and `enableDnsSupport`) is set to `true`.

3. Checking if subnets required for RDS exists or not:
 [PASSED] : All subnets in `ap-south-1b` availability zone exists.

4. Checking if Available IPs are sufficient per subnets that are required:
 [PASSED] : There are sufficient available IPs in `ap-south-1b` availability zone.

5. Checking if other Availability zone satisfy Check No# 3 & 4:
 * Availability Zone: ap-south-1c
   i. Subnet Existance Check:  [PASSED]
   ii. Available IP Check:  [PASSED]
 * Availability Zone: ap-south-1a
   i. Subnet Existance Check:  [PASSED]
   ii. Available IP Check:  [PASSED]

### [Next Steps]
 All the checks has passed so the RDS Network configuration is correct.
```

Disclaimer: Please note that Check 5 is only valid if you are going to perform a MultiAZ conversion, if you are not trying to perform a MultiAZ conversion then you can ignore the Check 5.
If any of the availability zone above has status as FAILED/WARNING then, please check the respective availability zone.

Amazon RDS instance with incorrect network configuration (VPC attribute enableDnsHostnames is set to false):

▼ Outputs

```
generateReport.Report
# AWS RDS Network Configuration Checks: test-fail-sazrds-vpcatrs (stopped)
### 0 Issue(s) Found!!!

### [Troubleshooting Results]
1. Checking ENI Quota for region the RDS Instance is in:
  ✓ [PASSED] : Quota for Elastic Network Interface (ENIs) (4996) is sufficient at the moment.

2. Checking VPC Attribute ('enableDnsHostname' & 'enableDnsSupport') settings:
  ✗ [FAILED] : Value for 'enableDnsHostnames' VPC Attribute is 'false'.

3. Checking if subnets required for RDS exists or not:
  ✓ [PASSED] : All subnets in 'ap-south-1b' availability zone exists.

4. Checking if Available IPs are sufficient per subnets that are required:
  ! [WARNING] : There are sufficient available IPs in 'ap-south-1b' availability zone, but it is recommended to have more than 9 IPs.

5. Checking if other Availability zone satisfy Check No# 3 & 4:
  * Availability Zone: ap-south-1a
    i. Subnet Existance Check: ✓ [PASSED]
    ii. Available IP Check: ! [WARNING]

### [Next Steps]
o Please set the value of 'enableDnsHostnames' VPC attribute to 'true'.
  [+]
  o Please free up some IPs before performing Modify/Stop operation on the instance.
  [+]
  o Learn why a subnet in your VPC has insufficient IP addresses : https://repost.aws/knowledge-center/subnet-insufficient-ips

Disclaimer: Please note that Check 5 is only valid if you are going to perform a MultiAZ conversion,
if you are not trying to perform a MultiAZ conversion then you can ignore the Check 5.
If any of the availability zone above has status as FAILED/WARNING then, please check the respective availability zone.
```

References

Systems Manager Automation

- [Run this Automation \(console\)](#)
- [Run an automation](#)
- [Setting up an Automation](#)
- [Support Automation Workflows landing page](#)

AWS service documentation

- [How do I resolve issues with an Amazon RDS database that is in an incompatible-network state?](#)
- [How do I resolve issues with an Amazon DocumentDB instance that is in an incompatible-network state?](#)

Amazon Redshift

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon Redshift. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRedshiftCluster](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DisablePublicAccessToRedshiftCluster](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRedshiftClusterAuditLogging](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRedshiftClusterAutomatedSnapshot](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRedshiftClusterEncryption](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRedshiftClusterEnhancedVPCRouting](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnforceSSLOnlyConnectionsToRedshiftCluster](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-ModifyRedshiftClusterMaintenanceSettings](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-ModifyRedshiftClusterNodeType](#)

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRedshiftCluster

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteRedshiftCluster runbook deletes the Amazon Redshift cluster you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- **ClusterIdentifier**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon Redshift cluster that you want to delete.

- **SkipFinalClusterSnapshot**

Type: Boolean

Default: false

Description: (Optional) If set to `false` , the automation creates a snapshot before deleting the Amazon Redshift cluster. If set to `true` , a final cluster snapshot is not created.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `redshift:DeleteCluster`
- `redshift:DescribeClusters`

Document Steps

- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value you specify for the `SkipFinalClusterSnapshot` parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Deletes the Amazon Redshift cluster specified in the `ClusterIdentifier` parameter.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the Amazon Redshift cluster has been deleted.

AWSConfigRemediation-DisablePublicAccessToRedshiftCluster

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DisablePublicAccessToRedshiftCluster runbook disables public accessibility for the Amazon Redshift cluster that you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- ClusterIdentifier

Type: String

Description: (Required) The unique identifier of the cluster that you want to disable public accessibility for.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `redshift:DescribeClusters`
- `redshift:ModifyCluster`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Disables public accessibility for the cluster specified in the `ClusterIdentifier` parameter.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the state of the cluster to change to `available`.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the public accessibility setting is disabled on the cluster.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRedshiftClusterAuditLogging

Description

The `AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRedshiftClusterAuditLogging` runbook enables audit logging for the Amazon Redshift cluster you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket you want to upload logs to.

- ClusterIdentifier

Type: String

Description: (Required) The unique identifier of the cluster you want to enable audit logging on.

- S3KeyPrefix

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon S3 key prefix (subfolder) you want to upload logs to.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- redshift:DescribeLoggingStatus
- redshift:EnableLogging
- s3:GetBucketAcl
- s3:PutObject

Document Steps

- aws:branch - Branches based on whether a value was specified for the S3KeyPrefix parameter.

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables audit logging on the cluster specified in the `ClusterIdentifier` parameter.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies audit logging was enabled on the cluster.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRedshiftClusterAutomatedSnapshot

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRedshiftClusterAutomatedSnapshot runbook enables automated snapshots for the Amazon Redshift cluster you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- `AutomatedSnapshotRetentionPeriod`

Type: Integer

Valid values: 1-35

Description: (Required) The number of days that automated snapshots are retained.

- ClusterIdentifier

Type: String

Description: (Required) The unique identifier of the cluster you want to enable automated snapshots on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- redshift:DescribeClusters
- redshift:ModifyCluster

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Enables automation snapshots on the cluster specified in the ClusterIdentifier parameter.
- aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Waits for the state of the cluster to change to available.
- aws:executeScript - Confirms automated snapshots were enabled on the cluster.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRedshiftClusterEncryption

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRedshiftClusterEncryption runbook enables encryption on the Amazon Redshift cluster you specify using an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) customer managed key. This runbook should only be used as a baseline to ensure that your Amazon Redshift clusters are encrypted according to minimum recommended security best practices. We recommend encrypting multiple clusters with different customer managed keys.

This runbook cannot change the AWS KMS customer managed key used on an already encrypted cluster. To change the AWS KMS customer managed key used to encrypt a cluster, you must first disable encryption on the cluster.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- ClusterIdentifier

Type: String

Description: (Required) The unique identifier of the cluster you want to enable encryption on.

- KMSKeyARN

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS KMS customer managed key you want to use to encrypt the cluster's data.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `redshift:DescribeClusters`
- `redshift:ModifyCluster`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables encryption on the Amazon Redshift cluster specified in the `ClusterIdentifier` parameter.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies encryption has been enabled on the cluster.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRedshiftClusterEnhancedVPCRouting

Description

The `AWSConfigRemediation-EnableRedshiftClusterEnhancedVPCRouting` runbook enables enhanced virtual private cloud (VPC) routing for the Amazon Redshift cluster you specify. For information about enhanced VPC routing, see [Amazon Redshift enhanced VPC routing](#) in the *Amazon Redshift Management Guide*.

Run this Automation (console)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- **ClusterIdentifier**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The unique identifier of the cluster you want to enable enhanced VPC routing on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `redshift:DescribeClusters`
- `redshift:ModifyCluster`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables enhanced VPC routing on the cluster specified in the `ClusterIdentifier` parameter.
- `assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms enhanced VPC routing was enabled on the cluster.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnforceSSLOnlyConnectionsToRedshiftCluster

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnforceSSLOnlyConnectionsToRedshiftCluster runbook requires incoming connections to use SSL for the Amazon Redshift cluster you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- `ClusterIdentifier`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The unique identifier of the cluster you want to enable enhanced VPC routing on.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `redshift:DescribeClusters`
- `redshift:DescribeClusterParameters`
- `redshift:ModifyClusterParameterGroup`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers parameter details from the cluster specified in the `ClusterIdentifier` parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables the `require_ssl` setting on the cluster specified in the `ClusterIdentifier` parameter.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the `require_ssl` setting was enabled on the cluster.
- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies the `require_ssl` setting for the cluster.

AWSConfigRemediation- ModifyRedshiftClusterMaintenanceSettings

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-ModifyRedshiftClusterMaintenanceSettings runbook modifies the maintenance settings for the Amazon Redshift cluster you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- `AllowVersionUpgrade`

Type: Boolean

Description: (Required) If set to `true`, major version upgrades are applied automatically to the cluster during the maintenance window.

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- **AutomatedSnapshotRetentionPeriod**

Type: Integer

Valid values: 1-35

Description: (Required) The number of days automated snapshots are retained.

- **ClusterIdentifier**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The unique identifier of the cluster you want to enable enhanced VPC routing on.

- **PreferredMaintenanceWindow**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The weekly time range (in UTC) during which system maintenance can occur.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `redshift:DescribeClusters`
- `redshift:ModifyCluster`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Modifies the maintenance settings for the cluster specified in the `ClusterIdentifier` parameter.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the modified maintenance settings were configured for the cluster.

AWSConfigRemediation-ModifyRedshiftClusterNodeType

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-ModifyRedshiftClusterNodeType runbook modifies the node type and number of nodes for the Amazon Redshift cluster you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Databases

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- `Classic`

Type: Boolean

Description: (Optional) If set to `true`, the resize operation uses the classic resize process.

- `ClusterIdentifier`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The unique identifier of the cluster whose node type you want to modify.

- ClusterType

Type: String

Valid values: single-node | multi-node

Description: (Required) The type of cluster you want to assign to your cluster.

- NodeType

Type: String

Valid values: ds2.xlarge | ds2.8xlarge | dc1.large | dc1.8xlarge | dc2.large | dc2.8xlarge | ra3.4xlarge | ra3.16xlarge

Description: (Required) The type of node you want to assign to your cluster.

- NumberOfNodes

Type: Integer

Valid values: 2-100

Description: (Optional) The number of nodes you want to assign to your cluster. If your cluster is a single-node type, do not specify a value for this parameter.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- redshift:DescribeClusters
- redshift:ResizeCluster

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Modifies the node type and number of nodes for the cluster specified in the `ClusterIdentifier` parameter.

Amazon S3

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon Simple Storage Service. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-ArchiveS3BucketToIntelligentTiering](#)
- [AWS-ConfigureS3BucketLogging](#)
- [AWS-ConfigureS3BucketVersioning](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-ConfigureS3BucketPublicAccessBlock](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-ConfigureS3PublicAccessBlock](#)
- [AWS>CreateS3PolicyToExpireMultipartUploads](#)
- [AWS-DisableS3BucketPublicReadWrite](#)
- [AWS-EnableS3BucketEncryption](#)
- [AWS-EnableS3BucketKeys](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-RemovePrincipalStarFromS3BucketPolicy](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-RestrictBucketSSLRequestsOnly](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootS3PublicRead](#)

AWS-ArchiveS3BucketToIntelligentTiering

Description

The AWS-ArchiveS3BucketToIntelligentTiering runbook creates, or replaces, an intelligent tiering configuration for the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the S3 bucket you want to create an intelligent tiering configuration for.

- ConfigurationId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID for the intelligent tiering configuration. This can be a new configuration ID, or the ID of an existing configuration.

- NumberOfDaysToArchive

Type: String

Valid values: 90-730

Description: (Required) The number of consecutive days after an object in your bucket is eligible to be transitioned to the Archive Access tier.

- NumberOfDaysToDeepArchive

Type: String

Valid values: 180-730

Description: (Required) The number of consecutive days after an object in your bucket is eligible to be transitioned to the Deep Archive Access tier.

- S3Prefix

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The key name prefix of the objects you want to apply the configuration to.

- Tags

Type: MapList

Description: (Optional) Metadata assigned to the objects you want to apply the configuration to. Tags consist of a user-defined key and value.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- s3:GetIntelligentTieringConfiguration
- s3:PutIntelligentTieringConfiguration

Document Steps

- PutsBucketIntelligentTieringConfiguration (aws:executeScript) - Creates or updates an Amazon S3 Intelligent-Tiering configuration for the specified bucket.
- VerifyBucketIntelligentTieringConfiguration (aws:assertAwsResourceProperty) - Verifies the S3 Bucket Intelligent Configuration was applied to the specified bucket.

AWS-ConfigureS3BucketLogging

Description

Enable logging on an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon S3 Bucket for which you want to configure logging.

- GrantedPermission

Type: String

Valid values: FULL_CONTROL | READ | WRITE

Description: (Required) Logging permissions assigned to the grantee for the bucket.

- GranteeEmailAddress

Type: String

(Optional) Email address of the grantee.

- GranteeId

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The canonical user ID of the grantee.

- GranteeType

Type: String

Valid values: CanonicalUser | AmazonCustomerByEmail | Group

Description: (Required) Type of grantee.

- GranteeUri

Type: String

Description: (Optional) URI of the grantee group.

- TargetBucket

Type: String

Description: (Required) Specifies the bucket where you want Amazon S3 to store server access logs. You can have your logs delivered to any bucket that you own. You can also configure multiple buckets to deliver their logs to the same target bucket. In this case you should choose a different TargetPrefix for each source bucket so that the delivered log files can be distinguished by key.

- TargetPrefix

Type: String

Default: /

Description: (Optional) Specifies a prefix for the keys under which the log files will be stored.

AWS-ConfigureS3BucketVersioning

Description

Configure versioning for an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon S3 bucket you want to configure versioning for.

- VersioningState

Type: String

Valid values: Enabled | Suspended

Default: Enabled

Description: (Optional) Applied to the VersioningConfiguration.Status. When set to 'Enabled', this process enables versioning for the objects in the bucket, all objects added to the bucket receive a unique version ID. When set to Suspended , this process disables versioning for the objects in the bucket. All objects added to the bucket receive the version ID null .

AWSConfigRemediation-ConfigureS3BucketPublicAccessBlock

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-ConfigureS3BucketPublicAccessBlock runbook configures the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) public access block settings for an Amazon S3 bucket based on the values you specify in the runbook parameters.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- BlockPublicAcls

Type: Boolean

Default: true

Description: (Optional) If set to `true`, Amazon S3 blocks public access control lists (ACLs) for the S3 bucket, and objects stored in the S3 bucket you specify in the `BucketName` parameter.

- `BlockPublicPolicy`

Type: Boolean

Default: true

Description: (Optional) If set to `true`, Amazon S3 blocks public bucket policies for the S3 bucket you specify in the `BucketName` parameter.

- `BucketName`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the S3 bucket you want to configure.

- `IgnorePublicAcls`

Type: Boolean

Default: true

Description: (Optional) If set to `true`, Amazon S3 ignores all public ACLs for the S3 bucket you specify in the `BucketName` parameter.

- `RestrictPublicBuckets`

Type: Boolean

Default: true

Description: (Optional) If set to `true`, Amazon S3 restricts public bucket policies for the S3 bucket you specify in the `BucketName` parameter.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`

- s3:GetAccountPublicAccessBlock
- s3:PutAccountPublicAccessBlock
- s3:GetBucketPublicAccessBlock
- s3:PutBucketPublicAccessBlock

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Creates or modifies the PublicAccessBlock configuration for the S3 bucket specified in the BucketName parameter.
- aws:executeScript - Returns the PublicAccessBlock configuration for the S3 bucket specified in the BucketName parameter, and verifies the changes were successfully made based on the values specified in the runbook parameters.

AWSConfigRemediation-ConfigureS3PublicAccessBlock

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-ConfigureS3PublicAccessBlock runbook configures an AWS account's Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) public access block settings based on the values you specify in the runbook parameters.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AccountId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the AWS account that owns the S3 bucket you are configuring.

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- BlockPublicAcls

Type: Boolean

Default: true

Description: (Optional) If set to `true` , Amazon S3 blocks public access control lists (ACLs) for S3 buckets owned by the AWS account you specify in the `AccountId` parameter.

- BlockPublicPolicy

Type: Boolean

Default: true

Description: (Optional) If set to `true` , Amazon S3 blocks public bucket policies for S3 buckets owned by the AWS account you specify in the `AccountId` parameter.

- IgnorePublicAcls

Type: Boolean

Default: true

Description: (Optional) If set to `true` , Amazon S3 ignores all public ACLs for S3 buckets owned by the AWS account you specify in the `AccountId` parameter.

- RestrictPublicBuckets

Type: Boolean

Default: true

Description: (Optional) If set to `true`, Amazon S3 restricts public bucket policies for S3 buckets owned by the AWS account you specify in the `AccountId` parameter.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `s3:GetAccountPublicAccessBlock`
- `s3:PutAccountPublicAccessBlock`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Creates or modifies the `PublicAccessBlock` configuration for the AWS account specified in the `AccountId` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Returns the `PublicAccessBlock` configuration for the AWS account specified in the `AccountId` parameter, and verifies the changes were successfully made based on the values specified in the runbook parameters.

AWS-CreateS3PolicyToExpireMultipartUploads

Description

The `AWS-CreateS3PolicyToExpireMultipartUploads` runbook creates a lifecycle policy for a specified bucket that expires incomplete, multi-part uploads in progress after a defined number of days. This runbook merges the new lifecycle policy with any existing lifecycle bucket policies that already exist.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the S3 bucket you want to configure.

- DaysUntilExpire

Type: Integer

Description: (Required) The number of days Amazon S3 waits before permanently removing all parts of the upload.

- RuleId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID used to identify the lifecycle bucket rule. This must be a unique value.

- S3Prefix

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The key name prefix of the objects you want to apply the configuration to.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- s3:GetLifecycleConfiguration
- s3:PutLifecycleConfiguration

Document Steps

- ConfigureExpireMultipartUploads (aws:executeScript) - Configures the lifecycle policy for the bucket.
- VerifyExpireMultipartUploads (aws:executeScript) - Verifies the lifecycle policy has been configured for the bucket.

Outputs

- VerifyExpireMultipartUploads.VerifyExpireMultipartUploadsResponse
- VerifyExpireMultipartUploads.LifecycleConfigurationRule

AWS-DisableS3BucketPublicReadWrite

Description

Use Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) Block Public Access to disable read and write access for a public S3 bucket. For more information, see [Using Amazon S3 Block Public Access](#) in the *Amazon Simple Storage Service User Guide*.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- S3BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Required) S3 bucket on which you want to restrict access.

AWS-EnableS3BucketEncryption

Description

Configures default encryption for an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the S3 bucket where you want to encrypt the contents.

- SSEAlgorithm

Type: String

Default: AES256

Description: (Optional) Server-side encryption algorithm to use for the default encryption.

AWS-EnableS3BucketKeys

Description

The AWS-EnableS3BucketKeys runbook enables Bucket Keys on the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket you specify. This bucket level key creates data keys for new objects during its lifecycle. If you don't specify a value for the KmsKeyId parameter, server-side encryption using Amazon S3 managed keys (SSE-S3) are used for the default encryption configuration.

 **Note**

Amazon S3 Bucket Keys aren't supported for dual-layer server-side encryption with AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) keys (DSSE-KMS).

Run this Automation (console)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `BucketName`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the S3 bucket you want to enable Bucket Keys for.

- `KMSKeyId`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN), key ID, or the key alias of the AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) customer managed key you want to use for server-side encryption.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `s3:GetEncryptionConfiguration`
- `s3:PutEncryptionConfiguration`

Document Steps

- ChooseEncryptionType (aws:branch) - Evaluates the value provided for the KmsKeyId parameter to determine if SSE-S3 (AES256) or SSE-KMS will be used.
- PutBucketKeysKMS (aws:executeAwsApi) - Sets the BucketKeyEnabled property to true for the specified S3 bucket using the specified KmsKeyId.
- PutBucketKeysAES256 (aws:executeAwsApi) - Sets the BucketKeyEnabled property to true for the specified S3 bucket with AES256 encryption.
- VerifyS3BucketKeysEnabled (aws:assertAwsResourceProperty) - Verifies that the Bucket Keys are enabled on the target S3 bucket.

AWSConfigRemediation-RemovePrincipalStarFromS3BucketPolicy

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-RemovePrincipalStarFromS3BucketPolicy runbook removes principal policy statements that have wildcards (Principal: * or Principal: "AWS": *) for Allow actions from your Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket policy. Policy statements with conditions are also removed.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- **BucketName**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Amazon S3 bucket whose policy you want to modify.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- s3:DeleteBucketPolicy
- s3:GetBucketPolicy
- s3:PutBucketPolicy

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Modifies the bucket policy and verifies principal policy statements with wildcards have been removed from the Amazon S3 bucket you specify in the BucketName parameter.

AWSConfigRemediation-RestrictBucketSSLRequestsOnly

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-RestrictBucketSSLRequestsOnly runbook creates an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket policy statement that explicitly denies HTTP requests to the Amazon S3 bucket you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the S3 bucket that you want to deny HTTP requests.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- s3:DeleteBucketPolicy
- s3:GetBucketPolicy
- s3:PutEncryptionConfiguration
- s3:PutBucketPolicy

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Creates a bucket policy for the S3 bucket specified in the `BucketName` parameter that explicitly denies HTTP requests.

AWSsupport-TroubleshootS3PublicRead

Description

The AWSsupport-TroubleshootS3PublicRead runbook diagnoses issues reading objects from the public Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket you specify in the `S3BucketName` parameter. A subset of settings are also analyzed for objects in the S3 bucket.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Limitations

- This automation does not check for access points that allow public access to objects.
- This automation does not evaluate condition keys in the S3 bucket policy.
- If you're using AWS Organizations, this automation does not evaluate service control policies to confirm that access to Amazon S3 is allowed.

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on

your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- CloudWatchLogGroupName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon CloudWatch Logs log group where you want to send the automation output. If a log group is not found that matches the value you specify, the automation will create a log group using this parameter value. The retention period for the log group created by this automation is 14 days.

- CloudWatchLogStreamName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The CloudWatch Logs log stream where you want to send the automation output. If a log stream is not found that matches the value you specify, the automation will create a log stream using this parameter value. If you do not specify a value for this parameter, the automation will use the ExecutionId for the name of the log stream.

- HttpGet

Type: Boolean

Valid values: true | false

Default: true

Description: (Optional) If this parameter is set to `true`, the automation makes a partial HTTP request to the objects in the S3BucketName you specify. Only the first byte of the object is returned using the Range HTTP header.

- IgnoreBlockPublicAccess

Type: Boolean

Valid values: true | false

Default: false

Description: (Optional) If this parameter is set to `true`, the automation ignores the public access block settings of the S3 bucket you specify in the S3BucketName parameter. Changing this parameter from the default value is not recommended.

- MaxObjects

Type: Integer

Valid values: 1-25

Default: 5

Description: (Optional) The number of objects to analyze in the S3 bucket you specify in the S3BucketName parameter.

- S3BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the S3 bucket to troubleshoot.

- S3PrefixName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The key name prefix of the objects you want to analyze in your S3 bucket.

For more information, see [Object keys](#) in the *Amazon Simple Storage Service User Guide*.

- StartAfter

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The object key name where you want the automation to begin analyzing objects in your S3 bucket.

- ResourcePartition

Type: String

Valid values: aws | aws-us-gov | aws-cn

Default: aws

Description: (Required) The partition where your S3 bucket is located.

- Verbose

Type: Boolean

Valid values: true | false

Default: false

Description: (Optional) To return more detailed information during the automation, set this parameter to true . Only warning and error messages will be returned if the parameter is set to false .

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

The logs:CreateLogGroup , logs:CreateLogStream , and logs:PutLogEvents permissions are only required if you want the automation to send log data to CloudWatch Logs.

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Action": [
                "iam:SimulateCustomPolicy",
                "iam:GetContextKeysForCustomPolicy",
                "s3>ListAllMyBuckets",
                "logs>CreateLogGroup",
                "logs>CreateLogStream",
                "logs>PutLogEvents",
                "logs>PutRetentionPolicy",
                "s3>GetAccountPublicAccessBlock"
            ],
            "Resource": "*",
            "Effect": "Allow"
        },
        {
            "Action": [
                "s3>GetObject",
                "s3>GetObjectAcl",
                "s3>GetObjectTagging"
            ],
            "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::awsexamplebucket1/*",
            "Effect": "Allow"
        },
        {

```

```
        "Action": [
            "s3>ListBucket",
            "s3>GetBucketLocation",
            "s3>GetBucketPublicAccessBlock",
            "s3>GetBucketRequestPayment",
            "s3>GetBucketPolicyStatus",
            "s3>GetBucketPolicy",
            "s3>GetBucketAcl"
        ],
        "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::awsexamplebucket1",
        "Effect": "Allow"
    }
]
}
```

Document Steps

- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the S3 bucket exists, and is accessible.
- `aws:executeScript` - Returns the S3 bucket location and your canonical user ID.
- `aws:executeScript` - Returns the public access block settings for your account and the S3 bucket.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the S3 bucket payer is set to `BucketOwner`. If `Requester Pays` is enabled on the S3 bucket, the automation ends.
- `aws:executeScript` - Returns the S3 bucket policy status and determines whether it is considered public. For more information about public S3 buckets, see [The meaning of "public"](#) in the *Amazon Simple Storage Service User Guide*.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Returns the S3 bucket policy.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Returns all context keys found in the S3 bucket policy.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms whether there is an explicit deny in the S3 bucket policy for the `GetObject` API action.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Returns the access control list (ACL) for the S3 bucket.
- `aws:executeScript` - Creates a CloudWatch Logs log group and log stream if you specify a value for the `CloudWatchLogGroupName` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Based on the values you specify in the runbook input parameters, evaluates whether any of the S3 bucket settings gathered during the automation are preventing objects from being accessed by the public. This script performs the following functions:
 - Evaluates public access block settings

- Returns objects from your S3 bucket based on the values you specify in the MaxObjects , S3PrefixName , and StartAfter parameters.
- Returns the S3 bucket policy to simulate a custom IAM policy for the objects returned from your S3 bucket.
- Performs a partial HTTP request to the returned objects if the HttpGet parameter is set to true . Only the first byte of the object is returned using the Range HTTP header.
- Checks the returned object's key name to confirm whether it ends with one or two periods. Object key names that end in periods can't be downloaded from the Amazon S3 console.
- Checks whether the returned object's owner matches the owner of the S3 bucket.
- Checks whether the object's ACL grants READ or FULL_CONTROL permissions to anonymous users.
- Returns tags associated with the object.
- Uses the simulated IAM policy to confirm whether there is an explicit deny for this object in the S3 bucket policy for the GetObject API action.
- Returns the object's metadata to confirm that the storage class is supported.
- Checks the object's server-side encryption settings to confirm whether the object is encrypted using a AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) customer managed key.

Outputs

AnalyzeObjects.bucket

AnalyzeObjects.object

SageMaker

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon SageMaker. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-DisableSageMakerNotebookRootAccess](#)

AWS-DisableSageMakerNotebookRootAccess

Description

The AWS-DisableSageMakerNotebookRootAccess runbook disables root access on a Amazon SageMaker notebook instance. During the automation, the notebook instance is stopped to make the required changes. SageMaker Studio notebook instances aren't supported.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- NotebookInstanceName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the SageMaker notebook instance to disable root access on.

- StartInstanceAfterUpdate

Type: Boolean

Default: true

Description: (Optional) Determines whether the notebook instance is started after disabling root access. The default setting for this parameter is `true`. If set to `true`, the instance is started after root access is disabled. If set to `false`, the instance is left in the stopped state after root access is disabled.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `sagemaker:DescribeNotebookInstance`
- `sagemaker:StartNotebookInstance`
- `sagemaker:StopNotebookInstance`
- `sagemaker:UpdateNotebookInstance`

Document Steps

- `CheckNotebookInstanceState` (`aws:executeAwsApi`): Checks the current status of the notebook instance.
- `StopOrUpdateNotebookInstance` (`aws:branch`): Branches based on the status of the notebook instance.
- `StopNotebookInstance` (`aws:executeAwsApi`): Starts the instance if the status is stopped.
- `WaitForInstanceToStop` (`aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty`): Verifies the instance is stopped.
- `UpdateNotebookInstance` (`aws:executeAwsApi`): Disables root access on the notebook instance.
- `WaitForNotebookUpdate` (`aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty`): Verifies root access has been disabled and the instance has a stopped status.
- `ChooseInstanceStart` (`aws:branch`): Branch based on whether the instance should be started.
- `StartNotebookInstance` (`aws:executeAwsApi`): Starts the notebook instance.
- `VerifyNotebookInstanceState` (`aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty`): Verifies if the instance is available before disabling root access.

- VerifyNotebookInstanceRootAccess (aws:assertAwsResourceProperty): Verifies the notebook instance root access setting is successfully disabled.

Secrets Manager

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for AWS Secrets Manager. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteSecret](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-RotateSecret](#)

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteSecret

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteSecret runbook deletes a secret and all of the versions stored in AWS Secrets Manager. You can optionally specify the recovery window during which you can restore the secret. If you don't specify a value for the RecoveryWindowInDays parameter, the operation defaults to 30 days.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- RecoveryWindowInDays

Type: Integer

Valid values: 7-30

Default: 30

Description: (Optional) The number of days which you can restore the secret.

- SecretId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the secret you want to delete.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- secretsmanager>DeleteSecret
- secretsmanager>DescribeSecret

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Deletes the secret you specify in the SecretId parameter.
- aws:executeScript - Verifies the secret has been scheduled for deletion.

AWSConfigRemediation-RotateSecret

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-RotateSecret runbook rotates a secret stored in AWS Secrets Manager.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- RotationInterval

Type: Interval

Valid values: 1-365

Description: (Required) The number of days between rotations of the secret.

- RotationLambdaArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Lambda function that can rotate the secret.

- SecretId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the secret you want to rotate.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `lambda:InvokeFunction`
- `secretsmanager:DescribeSecret`
- `secretsmanager:RotateSecret`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Rotates the secret you specify in the `SecretId` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies rotation has been enabled on the secret.

Security Hub

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for AWS Security Hub. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableSecurityHub](#)

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableSecurityHub

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableSecurityHub runbook enables AWS Security Hub (Security Hub) for the AWS account and AWS Region where you run the automation. For information about Security Hub, see [What is AWS Security Hub?](#) in the *AWS Security Hub User Guide*.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- **EnableDefaultStandards**

Type: Boolean

Default: true

Description: (Required) If set to `true` , the default security standards designated by Security Hub are enabled.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `securityhub:DescribeHub`
- `securityhub:EnableSecurityHub`
- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`

- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables Security Hub in the current account and Region.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Verifies that Security Hub has been enabled.

AWS Shield

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for AWS Shield. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSPremiumSupport-DDoSResiliencyAssessment](#)

AWSPremiumSupport-DDoSResiliencyAssessment

Description

The AWSPremiumSupport-DDoSResiliencyAssessment, AWS Systems Manager automation runbook helps you to check DDoS vulnerabilities and configuration of resources in accordance with the AWS Shield Advanced protection for your AWS account. It provides a configuration settings report for resources that are vulnerable to Distributed Denial of Service (DDoS) attacks. It is used to collect, analyze, and assess the following resources: Amazon Route 53, Amazon Load Balancers, Amazon CloudFront distributions, AWS Global Accelerator and AWS Elastic IPs for their configuration settings in accordance with the recommended best practices for AWS Shield Advanced Protection. The final configuration report is available in an Amazon S3 bucket of your choice as an HTML file.

How does it work?

This runbook contains a series of checks for the various types of resources that are enabled for public access and if they have protections configured as per the recommendations in the [AWS DDoS Best Practices Whitepaper](#). The runbook performs the following:

- Checks if a subscription to AWS Shield Advanced is enabled.

- If enabled, it finds if there are any Shield Advanced protected resources.
- It finds all the global and regional resources in the AWS account and checks if these are Shield protected.
- It requires the Resource Type parameters for assessment, Amazon S3 bucket name, and the Amazon S3 bucket AWS account ID (S3BucketOwner).
- It returns the findings as an HTML report stored in the Amazon S3 bucket provided.

The input parameters `AssessmentType` decides if the checks on all resources will be performed. By default, the runbook checks for all types of resources. If only `GlobalResources` or `RegionalResources` parameter is selected, the runbook performs checks only on the selected resource types.

 **Important**

- Access to `AWSPremiumSupport-*` runbooks requires an Enterprise or Business Support subscription. For more information, see [Compare AWS Support Plans](#).
- This runbook requires an ACTIVE [AWS Shield Advanced subscription](#).

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **AssessmentType**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Determines the type of resources to be evaluated for DDoS resiliency assessment. By default, the runbook will evaluate both global and regional resources. For regional resources, the runbook describes all Application (ALB) and Network (NLB) load balancers as well as all the Auto Scaling group in your AWS account/region.

Valid values: ['Global Resources', 'Regional Resources', 'Global and Regional Resources']

Default: Global and Regional Resources

- **S3BucketName**

Type: AWS::S3::Bucket::Name

Description: (Required) The Amazon S3 bucket name where the report will be uploaded.

Allowed Pattern: ^[0-9a-z][a-z0-9\-\.\.]{3,63}\$

- **S3BucketOwnerAccount**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The AWS account that owns the Amazon S3 bucket. Please specify this parameter if the Amazon S3 bucket belongs to a different AWS account, otherwise you can leave this parameter empty.

Allowed Pattern: ^\$ | ^[0-9]{12,13}\$

- **S3BucketOwnerRoleArn**

Type: AWS::IAM::Role::Arn

Description: (Optional) The ARN of an IAM role with permissions to describe the Amazon S3 bucket and AWS account block public access configuration if the bucket is in a different AWS

account. If this parameter is not specified, the runbook uses the AutomationAssumeRole or the IAM user that starts this runbook (if AutomationAssumeRole is not specified). Please see the required permissions section in the runbook description.

Allowed Pattern: `^$ | ^arn:(aws|aws-cn|aws-us-gov|aws-iso|aws-iso-b):iam::[0-9]{12,13}:role/.*$`

- S3BucketPrefix

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The prefix for the path inside Amazon S3 for storing the results.

Allowed Pattern: `^[a-zA-Z0-9][-./a-zA-Z0-9]{0,255}$|^$`

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- autoscaling:DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- cloudfront>ListDistributions
- ec2:DescribeAddresses
- ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls
- ec2:DescribeInstances
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancers
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeTargetGroups
- globalaccelerator>ListAccelerators
- iam:GetRole
- iam>ListAttachedRolePolicies
- route53>ListHostedZones
- route53:GetHealthCheck
- shield>ListProtections
- shield:GetSubscriptionState
- shield:DescribeSubscription
- shield:DescribeEmergencyContactSettings

- shield:DescribeDRTAccess
- waf:GetWebACL
- waf:GetRateBasedRule
- wafv2:GetWebACL
- wafv2:GetWebACLForResource
- waf-regional:GetWebACLForResource
- waf-regional:GetWebACL
- s3>ListBucket
- s3:GetBucketAcl
- s3:GetBucketLocation
- s3:GetBucketPublicAccessBlock
- s3:GetBucketPolicyStatus
- s3:GetBucketEncryption
- s3:GetAccountPublicAccessBlock
- s3:PutObject

Example IAM Policy for the Automation Assume Role

```
{  
    "Version": "2012-10-17",  
    "Statement": [  
        {  
            "Action": [  
                "s3>ListBucket",  
                "s3:GetBucketAcl",  
                "s3:GetAccountPublicAccessBlock"  
            ],  
            "Resource": "*",  
            "Effect": "Allow"  
        },  
        {  
            "Action": [  
                "s3>ListBucket",  
                "s3:GetBucketAcl",  
                "s3:GetBucketLocation",  
                "s3:GetBucketPolicyStatus",  
                "s3:GetBucketEncryption"  
            ],  
            "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::  
                !Ref AutomationBucket",  
            "Effect": "Allow"  
        }  
    ]  
}
```

```
        "s3:GetBucketPublicAccessBlock",
        "s3:GetBucketPolicyStatus",
        "s3:GetEncryptionConfiguration"
    ],
    "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::<bucket-name>",
    "Effect": "Allow"
},
{
    "Action": [
        "s3:PutObject"
    ],
    "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::<bucket-name>/*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
},
{
    "Action": [
        "autoscaling:DescribeAutoScalingGroups",
        "cloudfront>ListDistributions",
        "ec2:DescribeInstances",
        "ec2:DescribeAddresses",
        "ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls",
        "elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancers",
        "elasticloadbalancing:DescribeTargetGroups",
        "globalaccelerator>ListAccelerators",
        "iam:GetRole",
        "iam>ListAttachedRolePolicies",
        "route53>ListHostedZones",
        "route53:GetHealthCheck",
        "shield>ListProtections",
        "shield:GetSubscriptionState",
        "shield:DescribeSubscription",
        "shield:DescribeEmergencyContactSettings",
        "shield:DescribeDRTAccess",
        "waf:GetWebACL",
        "waf:GetRateBasedRule",
        "wafv2:GetWebACL",
        "wafv2:GetWebACLForResource",
        "waf-regional:GetWebACLForResource",
        "waf-regional:GetWebACL"
    ],
    "Resource": "*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
},
{
```

```
        "Action": "iam:PassRole",
        "Resource": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
<AutomationAssumeRole-Name>",
        "Effect": "Allow"
    }
]
```

Instructions

1. Navigate to the [AWSPremiumSupport-DDoSResiliencyAssessment](#) in the AWS Systems Manager Console.
2. Select **Execute Automation**
3. For input parameters, enter the following:

- **AutomationAssumeRole (Optional):**

The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **AssessmentType (Optional):**

Determines the type of resources to evaluate for DDoS resiliency assessment. By default, the runbook evaluates both global and regional resources.

- **S3BucketName (Required):**

The name of the Amazon S3 bucket to save the assessment report in HTML format.

- **S3BucketOwner (Optional):**

The AWS account ID of the Amazon S3 bucket for ownership verification. The AWS account ID is required if the report needs to publish to a cross-account Amazon S3 bucket and optional if the Amazon S3 bucket is in the same AWS account as automation initiation.

- **S3BucketPrefix (Optional):**

Any prefix for the path inside Amazon S3 for storing the results.

Input parameters	
AutomationAssumeRole (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.	ResourceType (Required) Determines the type of resources to be evaluated for DDoS resiliency assessment. By default, the runbook will evaluate both global and regional resources.
<input type="button" value="Select an existing IAM Role"/> <input type="text" value="ssm-admin arn:aws:iam::[REDACTED]role/ssm-admin"/> ✖	<input type="button" value="Global and Regional Resources"/> <input type="text" value="Global and Regional Resources"/> ▼
S3BucketName (Required) The name of the Amazon S3 bucket to save the assessment report in HTML format.	S3BucketOwner (Required) The Account ID of the Amazon S3 bucket for ownership verification.
<input type="button" value="Select an existing S3 Bucket"/> <input type="text" value="[REDACTED]"/> ✖	<input type="text" value="[REDACTED]"/>
S3BucketPrefix (Optional) Any prefix for the path inside Amazon S3 for storing the results. Example path with prefix: S3://<BucketName>/<Prefix>	
<input type="text" value="String"/>	

4. Select Execute.

5. The automation initiates.

6. The document performs the following steps:

- **CheckShieldAdvancedState:**

Checks if the Amazon S3 bucket specified in the "S3BucketName" allows anonymous, or public read or write access permissions, whether the bucket has encryption at rest enabled, and if the AWS account ID provided in "S3BucketOwner" is the owner of the Amazon S3 bucket.

- **S3BucketSecurityChecks:**

Checks if the Amazon S3 bucket specified in the "S3BucketName" allows anonymous, or public read or write access permissions, whether the bucket has encryption at rest enabled, and if the AWS account ID provided in "S3BucketOwner" is the owner of the Amazon S3 bucket.

- **BranchOnShieldAdvancedStatus:**

Branches document steps based on the AWS Shield Advanced Subscription status and/or Amazon S3 Bucket Ownership status.

- **ShieldAdvancedConfigurationReview:**

Reviews Shield Advanced configurations to ensure minimum required details are present. For example: IAM Access for AWS Shield Response Team (SRT) Team, Contact List Details, and SRT Proactive Engagement Status.

- **ListShieldAdvancedProtections:**

Lists the Shield Protected Resources and creates a group of protected resources for each service.

- **BranchOnResourceTypeAndCount:**

Branches document steps based on the value of Resource Type parameter and the number of Shield protected global resources.

- **ReviewGlobalResources:**

Reviews the Shield Advanced protected Global resources like Route 53 Hosted Zones, CloudFront Distributions and Global Accelerators.

- **BranchOnResourceType:**

Branches document steps based on the Resource type selections, if Global, Regional, or both.

- **ReviewRegionalResources:**

Reviews the Shield Advanced protected Regional resources like Application Load Balancers, Network Load Balancers, Classic Load Balancers, Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Instances (Elastic IPs).

- **SendReportToS3:**

Uploads the DDoS Assessment Report details to the Amazon S3 bucket.

7. After completed, the URI for the assessment report HTML file is provided in the Amazon S3 bucket:

S3 Console link and Amazon S3 URI for the Report on successful execution of the runbook

Outputs														
SendReportToS3.AssessmentReportS3ConsoleUrl https://s3.console.aws.amazon.com/s3/object/ddos-readiness-review?region=us-east-1&prefix=ddos-resiliency-assessment-report-71278beb-f36f-4dff-a505-7faeafb373ce-2023-06-24_04.08.37.html														
SendReportToS3.AssessmentReportS3Uri S3://ddos-readiness-review/ddos-resiliency-assessment-report-71278beb-f36f-4dff-a505-7faeafb373ce-2023-06-24_04.08.37.html														
Execution status														
<table><tbody><tr><td>Overall status</td><td>All executed steps</td><td># Succeeded</td></tr><tr><td>Success</td><td>9</td><td>9</td></tr><tr><td># Failed</td><td># Cancelled</td><td># TimedOut</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr></tbody></table>			Overall status	All executed steps	# Succeeded	Success	9	9	# Failed	# Cancelled	# TimedOut	0	0	0
Overall status	All executed steps	# Succeeded												
Success	9	9												
# Failed	# Cancelled	# TimedOut												
0	0	0												

References

Systems Manager Automation

- [Run this Automation \(console\)](#)
- [Run an automation](#)
- [Setting up an Automation](#)

- [Support Automation Workflows landing page](#)

AWS service documentation

- [AWS Shield Advanced](#)

Amazon SNS

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon Simple Notification Service. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-EnableSNSTopicDeliveryStatusLogging](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EncryptSNSTopic](#)
- [AWS-PublishSNSNotification](#)

AWS-EnableSNSTopicDeliveryStatusLogging

Description

The AWS-EnableSNSTopicDeliveryStatusLogging runbook configures delivery status logging for a HTTP, Amazon Data Firehose, Lambda, Platform application, or Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) endpoint. This allow Amazon SNS to log failed alerts and a sample percentage of successful alert notifications to Amazon CloudWatch. If delivery status logging is already configured for the topic, the runbook replaces the existing configuration with the new values you specify for the input parameters.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- EndpointType

Type: String

Valid values:

- HTTP
- Firehose
- Lambda
- Application
- SQS

Description: (Required) The type of Amazon SNS topic endpoint you want to log delivery status notification messages for.

- TopicArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the Amazon SNS topic you want to configure delivery status logging for.

- SuccessFeedbackRoleArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the IAM role which Amazon SNS uses to send logs for successful notification messages to CloudWatch.

- SuccessFeedbackSampleRate

Type: String

Valid values: 0-100

Description: (Required) The percentage of successful messages to sample for the specified Amazon SNS topic.

- FailureFeedbackRoleArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the IAM role which Amazon SNS uses to send logs for failure notification messages to CloudWatch.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- iam:PassRole
- sns:GetTopicAttributes
- sns:SetTopicAttributes

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Applies the value for the SuccessFeedbackRoleArn parameter to the Amazon SNS topic.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Applies the value for the SuccessFeedbackSampleRate parameter to the Amazon SNS topic.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Applies the value for the FailureFeedbackRoleArn parameter to the Amazon SNS topic.
- aws:executeScript - Confirms delivery status logging is enabled on the Amazon SNS topic.

Outputs

VerifyDeliveryStatusLoggingEnabled.GetTopicAttributesResponse - Response from the GetTopicAttributes API operations.

VerifyDeliveryStatusLoggingEnabled.VerifyDeliveryStatusLoggingEnabled - Message indicating successful verification of delivery status logging.

AWSConfigRemediation-EncryptSNSTopic

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EncryptSNSTopic runbook enables encryption on the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic you specify using an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) customer managed key. This runbook should only be used as a baseline to ensure that your Amazon SNS topics are encrypted according to minimum recommended security best practices. We recommend encrypting multiple topics with different customer managed keys.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- KmsKeyArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS KMS customer managed key you want to use to encrypt the Amazon SNS topic.

- TopicArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the Amazon SNS topic you want to encrypt.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- sns:GetTopicAttributes
- sns:SetTopicAttributes

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Encrypts the Amazon SNS topic you specify in the TopicArn parameter.
- aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Confirms encryption is enabled on the Amazon SNS topic.

AWS-PublishSNSNotification

Description

Publish a notification to Amazon SNS.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Message

Type: String

Description: (Required) The message to include in the SNS notification.

- TopicArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the SNS topic to publish the notification to.

Amazon SQS

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS). For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-EnableSQSEncryption](#)

AWS-EnableSQSEncryption

Description

The AWS-EnableSQSEncryption runbook enables encryption at rest for an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue. An Amazon SQS queue can be encrypted with Amazon SQS managed keys (SSE-SQS), or with AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) managed keys (SSE-KMS). The key that you assign to your queue must have a key policy that includes permissions for all principals that are authorized to use the queue. With encryption enabled, anonymous SendMessage and ReceiveMessage requests to the encrypted queue are rejected.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- QueueUrl

Type: String

Description: (Required) The URL of the Amazon SQS queue you want to enable encryption on.

- KmsKeyId

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The AWS KMS key to use for encryption. This value can be a globally unique identifier, an ARN to either an alias or a key, or an alias name prefixed by "alias/". You can also use the AWS managed key by specifying the alias aws/sqs.

- KmsDataKeyReusePeriodSeconds

Type: String

Valid values: 60-86400

Default: 300

Description: (Optional) The length of time, in seconds, an Amazon SQS queue can reuse a data key to encrypt or decrypt messages before calling AWS KMS again.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- sqs:GetQueueAttributes
- sqs:SetQueueAttributes

Document Steps

- SelectKeyType (aws:branch): Branches based on the key specified.
- PutAttributeSseKms (aws:executeAwsApi) - Updates the Amazon SQS queue to use the AWS KMS key specified for encryption.
- PutAttributeSseSqs (aws:executeAwsApi) - Updates the Amazon SQS queue to use the default key for encryption.
- VerifySqsEncryptionKms (aws:assertAwsResourceProperty) - Verifies encryption is enabled on the Amazon SQS queue.
- VerifySqsEncryptionDefault (aws:assertAwsResourceProperty) - Verifies encryption is enabled on the Amazon SQS queue.

Step Functions

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for AWS Step Functions (Step Functions). For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-EnableStepFunctionsStateMachineLogging](#)

AWS-EnableStepFunctionsStateMachineLogging

Description

The AWS-EnableStepFunctionsStateMachineLogging runbook enables or updates logging on the AWS Step Functions state machine you specify. The minimum logging level must be set to ALL, ERROR, or FATAL.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **Level**

Type: String

Valid values: ALL | ERROR | FATAL

Description: (Required) The URL of the Amazon SQS queue you want to enable encryption on.

- **LogGroupArn**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the Amazon CloudWatch Logs log group you want to send state machine logs to.

- **StateMachineArn**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the state machine you want enable logging on.

- **IncludeExecutionData**

Type: Boolean

Default: False

Description: (Optional) Determines whether execution data is included in the logs.

- **TracingConfiguration**

Type: Boolean

Default: False

Description: (Optional) Determines whether AWS X-Ray tracing is enabled.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`

- `states:DescribeStateMachine`
- `states:UpdateStateMachine`

Document Steps

- `EnableStepFunctionsStateMachineLogging` (`aws:executeAwsApi`) - Updates the specified state machine with the logging configuration specified.
- `VerifyStepFunctionsStateMachineLoggingEnabled` (`aws:assertAwsResourceProperty`) - Verifies logging was enabled for the specified state machine.

Outputs

- `EnableStepFunctionsStateMachineLogging.Response` - Response from the `UpdateStateMachine` API call.

Systems Manager

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Systems Manager. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-BulkDeleteAssociation](#)
- [AWS-BulkEditOpsItems](#)
- [AWS-BulkResolveOpsItems](#)
- [AWS-ConfigureMaintenanceWindows](#)
- [AWS-CreateManagedLinuxInstance](#)
- [AWS-CreateManagedWindowsInstance](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCWLoggingForSessionManager](#)
- [AWS-ExportOpsDataToS3](#)
- [AWS-ExportPatchReportToS3](#)
- [AWS-SetupInventory](#)
- [AWS-SetupManagedInstance](#)

- [AWS-SetupManagedRoleOnEC2Instance](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootManagedInstance](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootPatchManagerLinux](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootSessionManager](#)

AWS-BulkDeleteAssociation

Description

The AWS-BulkDeleteAssociation runbook helps you to delete up to 50 Systems Manager State Manager associations at a time.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- AssociationIds

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) A comma-separated list of the IDs of the associations you want to delete.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:DeleteAssociation`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Deletes the associations you specify in the `AssociationIds` parameter.

AWS-BulkEditOpsItems

Description

The AWS-BulkEditOpsItems runbook helps you edit the status, severity, category, or priority of AWS Systems Manager OpsItems. This automation can edit a maximum of 50 OpsItems at a time.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on

your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Category

Type: String

Valid values:

- Availability
- Cost
- No change
- Performance
- Recovery
- Security

Default: No change

Description: (Optional) The new category you want to specify for the edited OpsItems.

- OpsItemIds

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) A comma-separated list of OpsItems IDs you want to edit (for example, oi-XXXXXXXXXXXX,oi-XXXXXXXXXXXX).

- Priority

Type: String

Valid values:

- No change
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5

Description: (Optional) The importance of the edited OpsItems in relation to other OpsItems in the system.

- Severity

Type: String

Valid values:

- No change
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4

Default: No change

Description: (Optional) The severity of the edited OpsItems.

- WaitTimeBetweenEditsInSecs

Type: String

Valid values: 0.0-2.0

Default: 0.8

Description: (Optional) The time the automation waits between calling the UpdateOpsItems operation.

- Status

Type: String

Valid values:

- InProgress
- No change
- Open
- Resolved

Description: (Optional) The new status of the edited OpsItems.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:UpdateOpsItem

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Edits the OpsItems you specified in the OpsItemIds parameter based on the values you specify for the Category , Priority , Severity , and Status parameters.

AWS-BulkResolveOpsItems

Description

The AWS-BulkResolveOpsItems runbook resolves AWS Systems Manager OpsItems that match the filter you specify. You can also specify an OpsItemId to add to the resolved OpsItems using the OpsInsightsId parameter. If you specify a value for the S3BucketName parameter, a result summary is sent to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. To receive a notification once the result summary has been sent to the Amazon S3 bucket, specify a value for the SnsTopicArn parameter. This automation will resolve a maximum of 1,000 OpsItems at a time.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Filters

Type: String

Description: (Required) The key-value pairs of filters to return the OpsItems you want to resolve. For example, `[{"Key": "Status", "Values": ["Open"], "Operator": "Equal"}]`. To learn more about the options available for filtering OpsItems responses, see [OpsItemFilters](#) in the *AWS Systems Manager API Reference*.

- OpsInsightId

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The related resource identifier you want to add to resolved OpsItems.

- S3BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The name of the Amazon S3 bucket you want to send the result summary to.

- SnsMessage

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The notification you want Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) to send when the automation completes.

- SnsTopicArn

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN of the Amazon SNS topic you want to notify when the result summary has been sent to Amazon S3.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- s3:GetBucketAcl
- s3:PutObject
- sns:Publish
- ssm:DescribeOpsItems
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:UpdateOpsItem

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Gathers and resolves the OpsItems based on the filters you specify. If you specified a value for the OpsItemId parameter, the value is added as a related resource.
- aws:executeScript - If you specified a value for the S3BucketName parameter, a result summary is then sent to the Amazon S3 bucket.
- aws:executeScript - If you specified a value for the SnsTopicArn parameter, a notification is sent to the Amazon SNS topic after the result summary has been sent to Amazon S3 including the SnsMessage parameter value if specified.

AWS-ConfigureMaintenanceWindows

Description

The AWS-ConfigureMaintenanceWindows runbook helps you to enable or disable multiple Systems Manager maintenance windows.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- MaintenanceWindows

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) A comma-separated list of the IDs of the maintenance windows you want to enable or disable.

- MaintenanceWindowsStatus

Type: String

Valid values: "True" | "False"

Default: "False"

Description: (Required) Determines whether maintenance windows are enabled or disabled. Specify "True" to enable maintenance windows, and "False" to disable them.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:GetMaintenanceWindow`
- `ssm:UpdateMaintenanceWindow`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Gathers the status of the maintenance windows you specify in the `MaintenanceWindows` parameter, and enables or disables the maintenance windows.

AWS-CreateManagedLinuxInstance

Description

Create an EC2 instance for Linux that is configured for Systems Manager.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux

Parameters

- `Amild`

Type: String

Description: (Required) AMI ID to use for launching the instance.

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- GroupName

Type: String

Default: SSMSecurityGroupForLinuxInstances

Description: (Required) Security group name to create.

- HttpTokens

Type: String

Valid values: optional | required

Default: optional

Description: (Optional) IMDSv2 uses token-backed sessions. Set the use of HTTP tokens to optional or required to determine whether IMDSv2 is optional or required.

- InstanceType

Type: String

Default: t2.medium

Description: (Required) Type of instance to launch. Default is t2.medium.

- KeyPairName

Type: String

Description: (Required) Key pair to use when creating instance.

- RemoteAccessCidr

Type: String

Default: 0.0.0.0/0

Description: (Required) Creates Security group with port for SSH(Port range 22) open to IPs specified by CIDR (default is 0.0.0.0/0). If the security group already exists it will not be modified and rules will not be changed.

- **RoleName**

Type: String

Default: SSManagedInstanceProfileRole

Description: (Required) Role name to create.

- **StackName**

Type: String

Default: CreateManagedInstanceStack{{automation:EXECUTION_ID}}

Description: (Optional) Specify stack name used by this runbook

- **SubnetId**

Type: String

Default: Default

Description: (Required) New instance will be deployed into this subnet or in the default subnet if not specified.

- **VpcId**

Type: String

Default: Default

Description: (Required) New instance will be deployed into this Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC) or in the default Amazon VPC if not specified.

AWS-CreateManagedWindowsInstance

Description

Create an EC2 instance for a Windows Server that is configured for Systems Manager.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Windows

Parameters

Parameters

- Amild

Type: String

Default: {{ssm:/aws/service/ami-windows-latest/Windows_Server-2016-English-Full-Base}}

Description: (Required) AMI ID to use for launching the instance.

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- GroupName

Type: String

Default: SSMSecurityGroupForLinuxInstances

Description: (Required) Security group name to create.

- **HttpTokens**

Type: String

Valid values: optional | required

Default: optional

Description: (Optional) IMDSv2 uses token-backed sessions. Set the use of HTTP tokens to optional or required to determine whether IMDSv2 is optional or required.

- **InstanceType**

Type: String

Default: t2.medium

Description: (Required) Type of instance to launch. Default is t2.medium.

- **KeyPairName**

Type: String

Description: (Required) Key pair to use when creating instance.

- **RemoteAccessCidr**

Type: String

Default: 0.0.0.0/0

Description: (Required) Creates security group with port for RDP (Port range 3389) open to IPs specified by CIDR (default is 0.0.0.0/0). If the security group already exists it will not be modified and rules will not be changed.

- **RoleName**

Type: String

Default: SSMMangedInstanceProfileRole

Description: (Required) Role name to create.

- **StackName**

Type: String

Default: CreateManagedInstanceStack{{automation:EXECUTION_ID}}

Description: (Optional) Specify stack name used by this runbook

- SubnetId

Type: String

Default: Default

Description: (Required) New instance will be deployed into this subnet or in the default subnet if not specified.

- VpcId

Type: String

Default: Default

Description: (Required) New instance will be deployed into this Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC) or in the default Amazon VPC if not specified.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCWLoggingForSessionManager

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableCWLoggingForSessionManager runbook enables AWS Systems Manager Session Manager (Session Manager) sessions to store output logs to an Amazon CloudWatch (CloudWatch) log group.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- DestinationLogGroup

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the CloudWatch log group.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetDocument
- ssm:UpdateDocument
- ssm>CreateDocument
- ssm:UpdateDefaultDocumentVersion
- ssm:DescribeDocument

Document Steps

- aws :executeScript - Accepts the CloudWatch log group to update the document which stores Session Manager session output logs preferences, or creates one if it doesn't exist.

AWS-ExportOpsDataToS3

Description

This runbook retrieves a list of OpsData summaries in AWS Systems Manager Explorer and exports them to an object in a specified Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- **columnFields**

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) Column fields to write to the output file.

- **filters**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Filters for the getOpsSummary request.

- **resultAttribute**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The result attribute for getOpsSummary request.

- **s3BucketName**

Type: String

Description: (Required) S3 bucket where you want to download the output file.

- snsSuccessMessage

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Message to send when runbook finishes.

- snsTopicArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic ARN to notify when the download completes.

- syncName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The name of the resource data sync.

Document Steps

getOpsSummaryStep – Retrieves up to 5,000 ops summaries to export in a CSV file now.

Outputs

OpsData object – If the runbook runs successfully, you will find the exported OpsData object in your target S3 bucket.

AWS-ExportPatchReportToS3

Description

This runbook retrieves lists of patch summary data and patch details in AWS Systems Manager Patch Manager and exports them to .csv files in a specified Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- assumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that runs this document.

- s3BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The S3 bucket where you want to download the output file.

- snsTopicArn

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic Amazon Resource Name (ARN) to notify when the download completes.

- snsSuccessMessage

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Text of the message to send when the runbook finishes.

- targets

Type: String

Description: (Required) The instance ID or a wildcard character (*) to indicate whether to report patch data for a specific instance or for all instances.

Document Steps

`ExportReportStep` – The action for this step depends on the value of the `targets` parameter. If `targets` is in the format of `instanceids=*`, the step retrieves up to 10,000 patch summaries for instances in your account and exports the data to a .csv file.

If `targets` is in the format `instanceids=<instance-id>`, the step retrieves both the patch summary and all the patches for the specified instance in your account and exports them to a .csv file.

Outputs

`PatchSummary/Patches` object – If the runbook runs successfully, the exported patch report object is downloaded to your target S3 bucket.

AWS-SetupInventory

Description

Create a Systems Manager Inventory association for one or more managed instances. The system collects metadata from your instances according to the schedule in the association. For more information, see [AWS Systems Manager Inventory](#).

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- Applications

Type: String

Default: Enabled

Description: (Optional) Collect metadata about installed applications.

- AssociatedDocName

Type: String

Default: AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory

Description: (Optional) The name of the runbook used to collect Inventory from the managed instance.

- AssociationName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) A name for the Inventory association that will be assigned to the instance.

- AssocWaitTime

Type: String

Default: PT5M

Description: (Optional) Amount of time that Inventory collection should pause when the Inventory association start time is reached. The time uses ISO 8601 format.

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- AwsComponents

Type: String

Default: Enabled

Description: (Optional) Collect metadata for AWS Components like amazon-ssm-agent.

- CustomInventory

Type: String

Default: Enabled

Description: (Optional) Collect custom inventory metadata.

- Files

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Collect metadata about files on your instances. For more information about how to collect this type of Inventory data, see [Working with file and Windows registry inventory](#). Requires SSMAgent version 2.2.64.0 or later. Linux example: `[{"Path":"/usr/bin", "Pattern":["aws*", "*ssm*"], "Recursive":false}, {"Path":"/var/log", "Pattern":["amazon*.*"], "Recursive":true, "DirScanLimit":1000}]` Windows example: `[{"Path": "%PROGRAMFILES%", "Pattern": ["*.exe"], "Recursive":true}]`

- InstanceDetailedInformation

Type: String

Default: Enabled

Description: (Optional) Collect additional information about the instance, including the CPU model, speed, and the number of cores, to name a few.

- Instancelds

Type: String

Default: *

Description: (Required) EC2 instances that you want to inventory.

- LambdaAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN of the role that allows Lambda created by Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If not specified a transient role will be created to run the Lambda function.

- NetworkConfig

Type: String

Default: Enabled

Description: (Optional) Collect metadata about network configurations.

- OutputS3BucketName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Name of an Amazon S3 bucket where you want to write Inventory log data.

- OutputS3KeyPrefix

Type: String

Description: (Optional) An Amazon S3 key prefix (subfolder) where you want to write Inventory log data.

- OutputS3Region

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The name of the AWS Region where the Amazon S3 exists.

- Schedule

Type: String

Default: cron(0 */30 * * ? *)

Description: (Optional) A cron expression for the Inventory association schedule. The default is every 30 minutes.

- Services

Type: String

Default: Enabled

Description: (Optional, Windows OS only, requires SSMAgent version 2.2.64.0 and above) Collect data for service configurations.

- WindowsRegistry

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Collect metadata about Microsoft Windows Registry keys. For more information about how to collect this type of Inventory data, see [Working with file and Windows registry inventory](#). Requires SSM Agent version 2.2.64.0 or later. Example:
[{"Path":"HKEY_CURRENT_CONFIG\System","Recursive":true}, {"Path":"HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Amazon\MachineImage", "ValueNames":["AMIName"]}]

- WindowsRoles

Type: String

Default: Enabled

Description: (Optional) Collect information about Windows roles on the instance. Applies to Windows operating systems only. Requires SSMAgent version 2.2.64.0 or later.

- WindowsUpdates

Type: String

Default: Enabled

Description: (Optional) Collect data about all Windows Updates on the instance.

AWS-SetupManagedInstance

Description

Configure an instance with an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role for Systems Manager access.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- InstanceId

Type: String

Description: (Required) ID of the EC2 instance to configure

- LambdaAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN of the role that allows Lambda created by Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If not specified a transient role will be created to run the Lambda function.

- RoleName

Type: String

Default: SSMRoleForManagedInstance

Description: (Optional) The name of the IAM role for the EC2 instance. If this role does not exist, it will be created. When specifying this value, verify that the role contains the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** Managed Policy.

AWS-SetupManagedRoleOnEC2Instance

Description

Configure an instance with the SSMRoleForManagedInstance managed IAM role for Systems Manager access.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **InstanceId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) ID of the EC2 instance to configure

- **LambdaAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN of the role that allows Lambda created by Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If not specified a transient role will be created to run the Lambda function.

- **RoleName**

Type: String

Default: SSMRoleForManagedInstance

Description: (Optional) The name of the IAM role for the EC2 instance. If this role does not exist, it will be created. When specifying this value, verify that the role contains the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** Managed Policy.

AWSsupport-TroubleshootManagedInstance

Description

The AWSsupport-TroubleshootManagedInstance runbook helps you to determine why an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance does not report as managed by AWS Systems Manager. This runbook reviews the VPC configuration for the instance including security group rules, VPC endpoints, network access control list (ACL) rules, and route tables. It also confirms an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) instance profile that contains the required permissions is attached to the instance.

Important

This automation runbook does not evaluate IPv6 rules.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `InstanceId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance that is not reporting as managed by Systems Manager.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:DescribeAutomationExecutions`
- `ssm:DescribeAutomationStepExecutions`
- `ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation`
- `ssm:DescribeInstanceProperties`
- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetDocument`
- `ssm>ListDocuments`
- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `iam>ListRoles`
- `iamGetInstanceProfile`
- `iam>ListAttachedRolePolicies`
- `ec2:DescribeInstances`
- `ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls`
- `ec2:DescribeRouteTables`
- `ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcEndpoints`

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Gathers the PingStatus of the instance.
- aws:branch - Branches based on whether the instance is already reporting as managed by Systems Manager.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers details about the instance including the VPC configuration.
- aws:executeScript - If applicable, gathers additional details related to VPC endpoints that have been deployed to use with Systems Manager, and confirms the security groups attached to the VPC endpoint allow inbound traffic on TCP port 443 from the instance.
- aws:executeScript - Checks whether the route table allows traffic to the VPC endpoint or public Systems Manager endpoints.
- aws:executeScript - Checks whether the network ACL rules allow traffic to the VPC endpoint or public Systems Manager endpoints.
- aws:executeScript - Checks whether outbound traffic to the VPC endpoint or public Systems Manager endpoints is allowed by the security group associated with the instance.
- aws:executeScript - Checks if the instance profile attached to the instance includes a managed policy that provides the required permissions.
- aws:branch - Branches based on the operating system of the instance.
- aws:executeScript - Provides reference to ssmagent-toolkit-linux shell script.
- aws:executeScript - Provides reference to ssmagent-toolkit-windows PowerShell script.
- aws:executeScript - Generates final output for the automation.
- aws:executeScript - If the PingStatus of the instance is Online , returns that the instance is already managed by Systems Manager.

AWSSupport-TroubleshootPatchManagerLinux

Description

The AWSSupport-TroubleshootPatchManagerLinux runbook troubleshoots common issues that can cause a patch failure on Linux-based managed nodes using the AWS Systems Manager capability “Patch Manager”. The main goal of this runbook is to identify the patch command failure root cause and suggest a remediation plan.

How does it work?

The AWSSupport-TroubleshootPatchManagerLinux runbook considers the couple instance ID/Command ID provided by you for troubleshooting. If no Command ID is provided, it selects the latest failed patch command within the last 30 days on the provided instance. After checking the command status, the prerequisites fulfillment, and the OS distribution, the runbook downloads and runs a log analyzer package. The output includes the issue root cause as well as the needed action to fix the issue.

Document Type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

- Amazon Linux 2 and 2023
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8.X and 9.X
- Centos 8.X and 9.X
- SUSE 15.X

Parameters

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:SendCommand
- ssm:DescribeDocument
- ssm:GetCommandInvocation
- ssm>ListCommands
- ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation
- ssm>ListCommandInvocations
- ssm:GetDocument
- ssm:DescribeAutomationExecutions

- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`

Instructions

Follow these steps to configure the automation:

1. Navigate to the [AWSSupport-TroubleshootPatchManagerLinux](#) in the AWS Systems Manager console.
2. Select Execute automation.
3. For the input parameters, enter the following:

- **InstanceId (Required):**

Use the interactive instance picker to choose the ID of the Linux Based SSM Managed Node (Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) or Hybrid Activated server) that the patch command failed against, or manually enter the ID of the SSM Managed instance.

- **AutomationAssumeRole (Optional):**

Enter the ARN of the IAM role that allows Automation to perform actions on your behalf. If a role isn't specified, Automation uses the permissions of the user who starts this runbook.

- **RunCommandId (Optional):**

Enter the Failed Run Command ID of the AWS-RunPatchBaseline document. If you don't provide a Command ID, the runbook will look for the latest failed patch command within the last 30 days on the selected instance.

Input parameters	
InstanceId <small>(Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance you want to troubleshoot EC2 Instance Connect.</small> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Show interactive instance picker <input type="text" value="i-0 [REDACTED]"/>	RunCommandId <small>(Optional) Failed Run Command ID of AWS-RunPatchBaseline. If not provided, we look for the latest unsuccessful execution of AWS-RunPatchBaseline for the instance and evaluate it. To confirm the command ID, look under Command History tab in the Run Command Console under AWS Systems Manager.</small> <input type="text" value="42 [REDACTED] e"/>
AutomationAssumeRole <small>(Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.</small> <input style="width: 150px; height: 20px; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;" type="text" value="Choose an option"/> <input style="width: 15px; height: 20px; border: 1px solid #ccc; border-left: none; border-radius: 0 5px 5px 0; margin-left: 5px;" type="button" value="▼"/> <input style="width: 15px; height: 20px; border: 1px solid #ccc; border-right: none; border-radius: 5px 0 0 5px; margin-left: 5px;" type="button" value="⟳"/>	

4. Select Execute.
5. The automation initiates.
6. The document performs the following steps:
 - **CheckConcurrency:**

Ensures that there is only one execution of this runbook targeting the same instance. If the runbook finds another execution in progress targeting the same instance, it returns an error and ends.

- **ValidateCommandID:**

Validates if the provided Command ID, as input parameter, was executed for the AWS-RunPatchBaseline SSM Document. If no Command ID is provided, the runbook will consider the latest failed execution of AWS-RunPatchBaseline within the last 30 days on the selected instance.

- **BranchOnCommandStatus:**

Confirms that the status of the provided command is failed. Otherwise, the runbook ends the execution and generates a report stating that the provided command was successfully executed.

- **VerifyPrerequisites:**

Confirms that the Prerequisites mentioned above are fulfilled.

- **GetPlatformDetails:**

Retrieves the Operating System (OS) distribution and version.

- **GetDownloadURL:**

Retrieves the download URL for the PatchManager Log Analyzer package.

- **EvaluatePatchManagerLogs:**

Downloads and executes the PatchManager Log Analyzer python package on the instance to evaluate the log file.

- **GenerateReport:**

Generates a final report of the runbook execution that includes the identified problem and suggested solution.

7. After completed, review the Outputs section for the detailed results of the execution:

The screenshot shows the 'Outputs' section of an AWS Systems Manager Automation runbook. It includes a log entry for 'GenerateReport.output' starting a Python script, followed by a 'TROUBLESHOOTING RESULTS' section. This section contains a 'PROBLEM' section with an error message about failing to download a payload from S3, and a 'SOLUTION' section providing troubleshooting steps and a curl command to manually access the payload URL.

```
GenerateReport.output
Starting 'python3 main.py i-0[REDACTED] 3e016680-82f4-45f4-845c-aa4685b4fab Ubuntu 22.04'

TROUBLESHOOTING RESULTS
=====

[PROBLEM] :
-----
The error found in the log file at /var/lib/amazon/ssm/i-0[REDACTED]/document/orchestration/3e016680-82f4-45f4-845c-aa4685b4fab/awsrunShellScript/PatchLinux/stdout is :

Unable to download payload: https://s3.dualstack.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com/aws-ssm-eu-west-1/patchbaselineoperations/linux	payloads/patch-baseline-operations-1.115.tar.gz.failed to run commands: exit status 156

[SOLUTION] :
-----
Here are some suggestions to troubleshoot the issue:

Possible reasons for the above error are :

1. Network connectivity issue while accessing the s3 service endpoint from the instance to download the payload.
2. Instance doesn't have the required permissions to access the specified Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
3. No space left on the Instance.

To resolve this, ensure network connectivity to S3 endpoint from the instance. For more details, see information about required access to S3 buckets for Patch Manager in https://docs.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/latest/userguide/ssm-agent-minimum-s3-permissions.html. For testing purpose, try to manually access the above payload URL using curl or wget from within Instance. Command to run:

curl https://s3.dualstack.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com/aws-ssm-eu-west-1/patchbaselineoperations/linux	payloads/patch-baseline-operations-1.115.tar.gz --output payload.tar.gz
```

References

Systems Manager Automation

- [Run this Automation \(console\)](#)
- [Run an automation](#)
- [Setting up an Automation](#)
- [Support Automation Workflows landing page](#)

AWS Support - TroubleshootSessionManager

Description

The AWS Support - TroubleshootSessionManager runbook helps you troubleshoot common issues that prevent you from connecting to managed Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances using Session Manager. Session Manager is a capability of AWS Systems Manager. This runbook checks the following:

- Checks whether the instance is running and reporting as managed by Systems Manager.
- Runs the AWS Support - TroubleshootManagedInstance runbook if the instance is not reporting as managed by Systems Manager.
- Checks the version of the SSM Agent installed on the instance.
- Checks whether an instance profile containing a recommended AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy for Session Manager is attached to the Amazon EC2 instance.
- Collects SSM Agent logs from the instance.

- Analyzes your Session Manager preferences.
- Runs the AWSSupport-AnalyzeAWSEndpointReachabilityFromEC2 runbook to analyze the instance's connectivity to the endpoints for Session Manager, AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS), Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) and Amazon CloudWatch Logs (CloudWatch Logs).

Considerations

- Hybrid managed nodes are not supported.
- This runbook only checks whether a recommended managed IAM policy is attached to the instance profile. It does not analyze IAM or AWS KMS permissions contained in your instance profile.

Important

The AWSSupport-AnalyzeAWSEndpointReachabilityFromEC2 runbook uses [VPC Reachability Analyzer](#) to analyze the network connectivity between a source and a service endpoint. You are charged per analysis run between a source and destination. For more details, see [Amazon VPC Pricing](#).

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- InstanceId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance that you are unable to connect to using Session Manager.

- SessionPreferenceDocument

Type: String

Default: SSM-SessionManagerRunShell

Description: (Optional) The name of your session preferences document. If you don't specify a custom session preferences document when starting sessions, use the default value.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:CreateNetworkInsightsPath
- ec2:DeleteNetworkInsightsAnalysis
- ec2:DeleteNetworkInsightsPath
- ec2:StartNetworkInsightsAnalysis
- tiros>CreateQuery
- ec2:DescribeAvailabilityZones
- ec2:DescribeCustomerGateways
- ec2:DescribeDhcpOptions
- ec2:DescribeInstances
- ec2:DescribeInstanceStatus

- `ec2:DescribeInternetGateways`
- `ec2:DescribeManagedPrefixLists`
- `ec2:DescribeNatGateways`
- `ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls`
- `ec2:DescribeNetworkInsightsAnalyses`
- `ec2:DescribeNetworkInsightsPaths`
- `ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces`
- `ec2:DescribePrefixLists`
- `ec2:DescribeRegions`
- `ec2:DescribeRouteTables`
- `ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups`
- `ec2:DescribeSubnets`
- `ec2:DescribeTransitGatewayAttachments`
- `ec2:DescribeTransitGatewayConnects`
- `ec2:DescribeTransitGatewayPeeringAttachments`
- `ec2:DescribeTransitGatewayRouteTables`
- `ec2:DescribeTransitGateways`
- `ec2:DescribeTransitGatewayVpcAttachments`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcAttribute`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcEndpoints`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcEndpointServiceConfigurations`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcPeeringConnections`
- `ec2:DescribeVpcs`
- `ec2:DescribeVpnConnections`
- `ec2:DescribeVpnGateways`
- `ec2:GetManagedPrefixListEntries`
- `ec2:GetTransitGatewayRouteTablePropagations`
- `ec2:SearchTransitGatewayRoutes`
- `elasticloadbalancing:DescribeListeners`

- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancers
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeRules
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeTags
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeTargetGroups
- elasticloadbalancing:DescribeTargetHealth
- iam:GetInstanceProfile
- iam>ListAttachedRolePolicies
- iam>ListRoles
- iam:PassRole
- ssm:DescribeAutomationStepExecutions
- ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetDocument
- ssm>ListCommands
- ssm>ListCommandInvocations
- ssm:SendCommand
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- tiros:GetQueryAnswer
- tiros:GetQueryExplanation

Document Steps

1. aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty: Waits up to 6 minutes for your target instance to pass status checks.
2. aws:executeScript: Parses the session preference document.
3. aws:executeAwsApi: Gets the ARN of the instance profile attached to your instance.
4. aws:executeAwsApi: Checks whether your instance is reporting as managed by Systems Manager.
5. aws:branch: Branches based on whether your instance is reporting as managed by Systems Manager.

6. `aws:executeScript`: Checks whether the SSM Agent installed on your instance supports Session Manager.
7. `aws:branch`: Branches based on the platform of your instance to collect `ssm-cli` logs.
8. `aws:runCommand`: Collects logs output from `ssm-cli` from a Linux or macOS instance.
9. `aws:runCommand`: Collects logs output from `ssm-cli` from a Windows instance.
10. `aws:executeScript`: Parses the `ssm-cli` logs.
11. `aws:executeScript`: Checks whether a recommended IAM policy is attached to the instance profile.
12. `aws:branch`: Determines whether to evaluate `ssmmessages` endpoint connectivity based on `ssm-cli` logs.
13. `aws:executeAutomation`: Evaluates whether the instance can connect to an `ssmmessages` endpoint.
14. `aws:branch`: Determines whether to evaluate Amazon S3 endpoint connectivity based on `ssm-cli` logs and your session preferences.
15. `aws:executeAutomation`: Evaluates whether the instance can connect to an Amazon S3 endpoint.
16. `aws:branch`: Determines whether to evaluate AWS KMS endpoint connectivity based on `ssm-cli` logs and your session preferences.
17. `aws:executeAutomation`: Evaluates whether the instance can connect to an AWS KMS endpoint.
18. `aws:branch`: Determines whether to evaluate CloudWatch Logs endpoint connectivity based on `ssm-cli` logs and your session preferences.
19. `aws:executeAutomation`: Evaluates whether the instance can connect to an CloudWatch Logs endpoint.
20. `aws:executeAutomation`: Runs the `AWSSupport-TroubleshootManagedInstance` runbook.
21. `aws:executeScript`: Compiles the output of the previous steps and outputs a report.

Ouputs

- `generateReport.EvalReport` - The results of the checks performed by the runbook in plain text.

Third-party

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for third-party products and services. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-CreateJiraIssue](#)
- [AWS-CreateServiceNowIncident](#)
- [AWS-RunPacker](#)

AWS-CreateJiraIssue

Description

Create an issue in Jira.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AssigneeName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The username of the person the issue should be assigned to.

- DueDate

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The due date for the issue in yyyy-mm-dd format.

- IssueDescription

Type: String

Description: (Required) A detailed description of the issue.

- IssueSummary

Type: String

Description: (Required) A brief summary of the issue.

- IssueTypeName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the type of issue you want to create (for example, Task, Sub-task, Bug, etc.).

- JiraURL

Type: String

Description: (Required) The url of the Jira instance.

- JiraUsername

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the user the issue will be created with.

- PriorityName

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The name of the priority of the issue.

- ProjectKey

Type: String

Description: (Required) The key of the project the issue should be created in.

- **SSMParameterName**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of an encrypted SSM Parameter containing the API key or password for the Jira user.

Document Steps

`aws:createStack` - Create CloudFormation stack to create Lambda IAM role and function.

`aws:invokeLambdaFunction` - Invoke Lambda function to create the Jira issue

`aws:deleteStack` - Delete the CloudFormation stack created.

Outputs

`IssueId`: ID of the newly created Jira issue

AWS-CreateServiceNowIncident

Description

Create an incident in the ServiceNow incident table.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Category

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The category of the incident.

Valid values: None | Inquiry/Help | Software | Hardware | Network | Database

Default Value: None

- Description

Type: String

Description: (Required) A detailed explanation on the incident.

- Impact

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The effect an incident has on business.

Valid values: High | Medium | Low

Default Value: Low

- ServiceNowInstanceUsername

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the user the incident will be created with.

- ServiceNowInstancePassword

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of an encrypted SSM Parameter containing the password for the ServiceNow user.

- ServiceNowInstanceURL

Type: String

Description: (Required) The URL of the ServiceNow instance

- ShortDescription

Type: String

Description: (Required) A brief description of the incident.

- Subcategory

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The subcategory of the incident.

Valid values: None | Antivirus | Email | Internal Application | Operating System | CPU | Disk | Keyboard | Hardware | Memory | Monitor | Mouse | DHCP | DNS | IP Address | VPN | Wireless | DB2 | MS SQL Server | Oracle

Default Value: None

Document Steps

Push_incident – Pushes the incident information to ServiceNow.

Outputs

Push_incident.incidentID – The created incident ID.

AWS-RunPacker

Description

This runbook uses the HashiCorp [Packer](#) tool to validate, fix, or build packer templates that are used to create machine images. This runbook uses Packer v1.7.2.

Note

If you specify a `vpc_id` value, you must also specify the `subnet_id` value of a public subnet. Unless you modify your subnet's IPv4 public addressing attribute, you must also set `associate_public_ip_address` to true.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Force

Type: Boolean

Description: A Packer option to force a builder to run when artifacts from a previous build otherwise prevent a build from running.

- Mode

Type: String

Description: The mode, or command, in which to use Packer when validating against the template. Options include Build , Validate , and Fix .

- TemplateFileName

Type: String

Description: The name, or key, of the template file in the S3 bucket.

- TemplateS3BucketName

Type: String

Description: The name of the S3 bucket containing the packer template.

Document Steps

RunPackerProcessTemplate – Runs the selected mode against the template using the Packer tool.

Outputs

RunPackerProcessTemplate.output – The stdout from the Packer tool.

RunPackerProcessTemplate.fixed_template_key – The name of the template stored in an S3 bucket to use only when running in "Fix" mode.

RunPackerProcessTemplate.s3_bucket – The name of the S3 bucket that contains the fixed template to use only when running in "Fix" mode.

Amazon VPC

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon Virtual Private Cloud. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-CloseSecurityGroup](#)
- [AWSSupport-ConfigureDNSQueryLogging](#)
- [AWSSupport-ConfigureTrafficMirroring](#)
- [AWSSupport-ConnectivityTroubleshooter](#)
- [AWSSupport-TroubleshootVPN](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteEgressOnlyInternetGateway](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedENI](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedSecurityGroup](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedVPCNetworkACL](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteVPCFlowLog](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DetachAndDeleteInternetGateway](#)

- [AWSConfigRemediation-DetachAndDeleteVirtualPrivateGateway](#)
- [AWS-DisableIncomingSSHOnPort22](#)
- [AWS-DisablePublicAccessForSecurityGroup](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-DisableSubnetAutoAssignPublicIP](#)
- [AWSSupport-EnableVPCFlowLogs](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableVPCFlowLogsToCloudWatch](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableVPCFlowLogsToS3Bucket](#)
- [AWS-ReleaseElasticIP](#)
- [AWS-RemoveNetworkACLUnrestrictedSSHRDP](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-RemoveUnrestrictedSourceIngressRules](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-RemoveVPCDefaultSecurityGroupRules](#)
- [AWSSupport-SetupIPMonitoringFromVPC](#)
- [AWSSupport-TerminateIPMonitoringFromVPC](#)

AWS-CloseSecurityGroup

Description

This runbook removes all ingress and egress rules from the security group you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- SecurityGroupId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the security group you want to close.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups
- ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupEgress
- ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupIngress

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Removes all ingress and egress rules from the security group you specify in the SecurityGroupId parameter.

AWSsupport-ConfigureDNSQueryLogging

Description

The AWSSupport-ConfigureDNSQueryLogging runbook configures logging for DNS queries that originate in your virtual private cloud (VPC) or for Amazon Route 53 hosted zones. You can choose to publish query logs to Amazon CloudWatch Logs, Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3), or Amazon Data Firehose. For more information about query logging and resolver query logs, see [Public DNS query logging](#) and [Resolver query logging](#).

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- LogDestinationArn

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN of the CloudWatch Logs group, Amazon S3 bucket or Firehose stream you want to send query logs to. Note that Route 53 public DNS query logging only supports CloudWatch Logs groups. If you do not specify a value for this parameter, the automation creates a CloudWatch Logs group with the format `AWSSupport-ConfigureDNSQueryLogging-{automation: EXECUTION_ID }`, and an IAM resource policy to publish the query logs. The CloudWatch Logs group created by the automation has a retention period of 14 days.

- QueryLogType

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The types of queries you want to log.

Valid values: Public | Resolver/Private

Default: Public

- **ResourceId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the resource whose queries you want to log. If you specify Public for the QueryLogType parameter, the resource must be the ID of a Route 53 private hosted zone. If you specify Resolver/Private for the QueryLogType parameter, the resource must be the ID of a VPC.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ec2:DescribeVpcs`
- `firehose>ListTagsForDeliveryStream`
- `firehose:PutRecord`
- `firehose:PutRecordBatch`
- `firehose:TagDeliveryStream`
- `iam:AttachRolePolicy`
- `iam>CreatePolicy`
- `iam:CreateRole`
- `iam>CreateServiceLinkedRole`
- `iam>DeletePolicy`
- `iam>DeleteRole`
- `iam>DeleteRolePolicy`
- `iam:GetPolicy`
- `iam:GetRole`
- `iam:PassRole`
- `iam:PutRolePolicy`
- `iam:TagRole`
- `iam:UpdateRole`
- `logs>CreateLogDelivery`

- logs>CreateLogGroup
- logs>DeleteLogDelivery
- logs>DeleteLogGroup
- logs>DescribeLogGroups
- logs>DescribeLogStreams
- logs>DescribeResourcePolicies
- logs>ListLogDeliveries
- logs>PutResourcePolicy
- logs>PutRetentionPolicy
- logs>UpdateLogDelivery
- route53>CreateQueryLoggingConfig
- route53>DeleteQueryLoggingConfig
- route53>GetHostedZone
- route53resolver:AssociateResolverQueryLogConfig
- route53resolver>CreateResolverQueryLogConfig
- route53resolver>DeleteResolverQueryLogConfig
- s3:GetBucketAcl

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Verifies the resource you specify for the ResourceId parameter exists, and checks whether the resource type matches the required QueryLogType option.
- aws:executeScript - Verifies that the value you specify for the LogDestinationArn parameter matches the required QueryLogType .
- aws:executeScript - Verifies the required permissions for Route 53 to publish logs to the CloudWatch Logs log group, and creates the required IAM resource policy if it doesn't exist.
- aws:executeScript - Enables the DNS query logging on the selected destination.

AWSsupport-ConfigureTrafficMirroring

Description

The `AWSSupport-ConfigureTrafficMirroring` runbook configures traffic mirroring to help you troubleshoot connectivity issues between a load balancer and Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances. Traffic mirroring copies inbound and outbound traffic from the network interfaces that are attached to your instances. To configure traffic mirroring, this runbook creates the required targets, filters, and sessions. By default, the runbook configures mirroring for all inbound and outbound traffic for all protocols except Amazon DNS. If you want to mirror traffic from specific sources and destinations, you can modify the inbound and outbound rules after the automation completes.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- `SourceENI`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The elastic network interface you want to configure traffic mirroring for.

- `Target`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The destination for the mirrored traffic. You must specify the ID of a network interface, a Network Load Balancer, or a Gateway Load Balancer endpoint. If you specify a Network Load Balancer, there must be UDP listeners on port 4789.

- SessionNumber

Type: String

Valid values: 1-32766

Description: (Required) The number of the mirror session you want to use.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:CreateTrafficMirrorTarget
- ec2:CreateTrafficMirrorFilter
- ec2:CreateTrafficMirrorFilterRule
- ec2:CreateTrafficMirrorSession
- ec2:DeleteTrafficMirrorSession
- ec2:DeleteTrafficMirrorFilter
- ec2:DeleteTrafficMirrorSession
- ec2:DeleteTrafficMirrorFilterRule
- iam>ListRoles
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ssm:StartAutomationExecution

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Runs a script to create a target.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Creates a filter rule.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Creates a mirror filter rule for all inbound traffic.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Creates a mirror filter rule for all outbound traffic.

- aws:executeAwsApi - Creates a traffic mirror session.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Deletes the filter if filter or session creation fails.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Deletes the target if filter or session creation fails.

Outputs

CreateFilter.FilterId

CreateSession.SessionId

CreateTarget.TargetIDOutput

AWSSupport-ConnectivityTroubleshooter

Description

The AWSSupport-ConnectivityTroubleshooter runbook diagnoses connectivity issues between the following:

- AWS resources within an Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC)
- AWS resources in different Amazon VPCs within the same AWS Region that are connected using VPC peering
- AWS resources in an Amazon VPC and an internet resource using an internet gateway
- AWS resources in an Amazon VPC and an internet resource using a network address translation (NAT) gateway

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **DestinationIP**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The IPv4 address of the resource you want to connect to.

- **DestinationPort**

Type: String

Default: true

Description: (Required) The port number you want to connect to on the destination resource.

- **DestinationVpc**

Type: String

Default: All

Description: (Optional) The ID of the Amazon VPC you want to test connectivity to.

- **SourceIP**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The private IPv4 address of the AWS resource in your Amazon VPC you want to test connectivity from.

- **SourcePortRange**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The port range used by the AWS resource in your Amazon VPC you want to test connectivity from.

- **SourceVpc**

Type: String

Default: All

Description: (Optional) The ID of the Amazon VPC you want to test connectivity from.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:DescribeNatGateways
- ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls
- ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces
- ec2:DescribeRouteTables
- ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups
- ec2:DescribeVpcPeeringConnections

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Gathers details about the AWS resource you specify in the SourceIP parameter.
- aws:executeScript - Determines the destination of network traffic from the AWS resource using the routes gathered from the previous step.
- aws:branch - Branches based on the destination of the network traffic.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers details about the destination resource.
- aws:executeScript - Confirms that the ID returned for the destination Amazon VPC matches the value specified, if any, in the DestinationVpc parameter.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers the security group rules for the source and destination resources.
- aws:executeScript - Confirms whether the security group rules allow the needed traffic between the source and destination resources.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers the network access control lists (NACLs) associated with the subnets for the source and destination resources.

- `aws:executeScript` - Confirms whether the NACLs allow the needed traffic between the source and destination resources.
- `aws:executeScript` - Confirms whether the source has a public IP address associated with the resource, if the route destination is an internet gateway.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the security group rules for the source resource.
- `aws:executeScript` - Confirms whether the security group rules allow the needed traffic from the source to the destination resource.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the NACLs associated with the subnet for the source resource.
- `aws:executeScript` - Confirms whether the NACLs allow the needed traffic from the source resource.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers details about the NAT gateway.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the NACLs associated with the subnet for the NAT gateway.
- `aws:executeScript` - Confirms whether the NACLs allow the needed traffic from the subnet for the NAT gateway.
- `aws:executeScript` - Gathers the routes associated with the subnet for the NAT gateway.
- `aws:executeScript` - Confirms whether the NAT gateway has a route to an internet gateway.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers details about the VPC peering connection.
- `aws:executeScript` - Confirms both VPCs are in the same Region and that the ID returned for the destination VPC matches the value specified, if any, in the `DestinationVpc` parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Returns the subnet of the destination resource.
- `aws:executeScript` - Gathers the routes associated with the subnet for the peered VPC.
- `aws:executeScript` - Confirms whether the peered VPC has a route to the peering connection.
- `aws:executeScript` - Confirms whether traffic is allowed from the source resource if the destination is not supported by the automation.

AWSSupport-TroubleshootVPN

Description

The AWSSupport-TroubleshootVPN runbook helps you to trace and resolve errors in an AWS Site-to-Site VPN connection. The automation includes several automated checks designed to trace IKEv1 or IKEv2 errors related to AWS Site-to-Site VPN connection tunnels. The automation tries to match specific errors and its corresponding resolution form a list of common issues.

Note: This automation does not rectify the errors. It runs for the mentioned time range and scans the log group for errors in [VPN CloudWatch logs group](#).

How does it work?

The runbook runs a parameter validation to confirm if the Amazon CloudWatch log group included in the input parameter exists, if there are any log streams in the log group that correspond to VPN tunnel logging, if VPN connection id exists, and if the Tunnel IP address exists. It makes Logs Insights API calls on your CloudWatch log group that are configured for VPN logging.

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- LogGroupName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon CloudWatch log group name configured for AWS Site-to-Site VPN connection logging

Allowed Pattern: ^[\.\-_/#A-Za-z0-9]{1,512}

- VpnConnectionId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The AWS Site-to-Site VPN connection id to be troubleshooted.

Allowed Pattern: ^vpn-[0-9a-f]{8,17}\$

- TunnelAIPAddress

Type: String

Description: (Required) The tunnel number 1 IPv4 address associated with your AWS Site-to-Site VPN.

Allowed Pattern: ^((25[0-5]|2[0-4][0-9]| [01]?[0-9][0-9]?)[.]){3}(25[0-5]|2[0-4][0-9]| [01]?[0-9][0-9]?){1}\$

- TunnelBIPAddress

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The tunnel number 2 IPv4 address associated with your AWS Site-to-Site VPN.

Allowed Pattern: ^((25[0-5]|2[0-4][0-9]| [01]?[0-9][0-9]?)[.]){3}(25[0-5]|2[0-4][0-9]| [01]?[0-9][0-9]?){1}|^\$

- IKEVersion

Type: String

Description: (Required) Select what IKE Version you are using. Allowed values : IKEv1, IKEv2

Valid values: ['IKEv1', 'IKEv2']

- StartTimeinEpoch

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Start time for log analysis. You can either use StartTimeinEpoch/EndTimeinEpoch or LookBackPeriod for logs analysis

Allowed Pattern: ^\d{10}|\^\$

- EndTimeinEpoch

Type: String

Description: (Optional) End time for log analysis. You can either use StartTimeinEpoch/EndTimeinEpoch or LookBackPeriod for logs analysis. If given both StartTimeinEpoch/EndTimeinEpoch and LookBackPeriod then LookBackPeriod takes precedence

Allowed Pattern: `^\d{10}|\^$`

- LookBackPeriod

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Two digit time in hours to look back for log analysis. Valid range : 01 - 99. This value takes precedence if you also give StartTimeinEpoch and EndTime

Allowed Pattern: `^(\\d?[1-9]|\\d[1-9]0)|^$`

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- logs:DescribeLogGroups
- logs:GetQueryResults
- logs:DescribeLogStreams
- logs:StartQuery
- ec2:DescribeVpnConnections

Instructions

Note: This automation works on the CloudWatch log groups that is configured for your VPN tunnel logging, when the logging Output format is JSON.

Follow these steps to configure the automation:

1. Navigate to the [AWSSupport-TroubleshootVPN](#) in the AWS Systems Manager console.
2. For the input parameters enter the following:
 - **AutomationAssumeRole (Optional):**

The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **LogGroupName (Required):**

The Amazon CloudWatch log group name to be validated. This must be the CloudWatch log group which is configured for VPN to send logs to.

- **VpnConnectionId (Required):**

The AWS Site-to-Site VPN connection id whose log group is traced for VPN error.

- **TunnelAIPAddress (Required):**

The tunnel A IP address associated with your AWS Site-to-Site VPN connection.

- **TunnelBIPAddress (Optional):**

The tunnel B IP address associated with your AWS Site-to-Site VPN connection.

- **IKEVersion (Required):**

Select what IKEversion you are using. Allowed values : IKEv1, IKEv2.

- **StartTimeinEpoch (Optional):**

The beginning of the time range to query for error. The range is inclusive, so the specified start time is included in the query. Specified as epoch time, the number of seconds since January 1, 1970, 00:00:00 UTC.

- **EndTimeinEpoch (Optional):**

The end of the time range to query for errors. The range is inclusive, so the specified end time is included in the query. Specified as epoch time, the number of seconds since January 1, 1970, 00:00:00 UTC.

- **LookBackPeriod (Required):**

Time in hours to look back to query for error.

Note: Configure a StartTimeinEpoch, EndTimeinEpoch, or LookBackPeriod to fix the time range for log analysis. Give a two-digit number in hours to check for errors in the past from

the automation start time. Or, if the error is in the past within a specific time range, include StartTimeinEpoch and EndTimeinEpoch, instead of LookBackPeriod.

The screenshot shows the 'Input parameters' section of a Lambda function configuration. It includes fields for AutomationAssumeRole, VpnConnectionId, TunnelBIPAddress, StartTimeinEpoch, LookBackPeriod, LogGroupName, TunnelIPAddress, IKEVersion, and EndTimeinEpoch. The 'AutomationAssumeRole' field has a dropdown menu with 'Choose an option'. The 'VpnConnectionId' field contains 'vpn-123abc456zxc'. The 'TunnelBIPAddress' field contains 'String'. The 'StartTimeinEpoch' field has a dropdown menu with 'String'. The 'LookBackPeriod' field contains '05'. The 'LogGroupName' field has a dropdown menu with 'vpnlog'. The 'TunnelIPAddress' field contains '1.1.1.1'. The 'IKEVersion' field has a dropdown menu with 'IKEv1'. The 'EndTimeinEpoch' field has a dropdown menu with 'String'.

3. Select Execute.

4. The automation initiates.

5. The automation runbook performs the following steps:

- parameterValidation:**

Runs a series of validation on input parameters included in automation.

- branchOnValidationOfLogGroup:**

Checks if log group mentioned in the parameter is valid. If invalid, it halts the further initiation of automation steps.

- branchOnValidationOfLogStream:**

Checks if log stream exists in the included CloudWatch log group. If invalid, it halts the further initiation of automation steps.

- branchOnValidationOfVpnConnectionId:**

Checks if the VPN Connection id included in the parameter is valid. If invalid, it halts the further initiation of automation steps.

- branchOnValidationOfVpnIp:**

Checks if Tunnel IP address mentioned in parameter is valid or not. If invalid then it halts the further execution of automation steps.

- traceError:**

Makes a logs insight API call in your included CloudWatch log group and searches for the error related to IKEv1/IKEv2 along with a related suggested resolution.

6. After completed, review the Outputs section for the detailed results of the execution.

▼ Outputs

```

parameterValidation.LogGroupName
LogGroupvalid
parameterValidation.VpnConnection
validVPNconnection
traceError.Tunnel1IKEv2
("IKEv2ErrorCount":0)
traceError.Tunnel2IKEv2
("IKEv2ErrorCount":0)
traceError.TunnelIKEv1
("IKEv2ErrorCount":0)

{"Error related to : AWS tunnel received DELETE for Phase 2 SA":
 Please treat below as Potential resolution of this error :
 
 AWS CloudWatch monitoring has identified that your VPN tunnel went down because CGW has sent Delete_SA message for Phase 2. When AWS receives Delete_SA for Phase 2 from CGW it deletes the Phase 2 of SPI mentioned in Delete_SA request.

 Possible reason of CGW sending Delete_SA message can be due to any configurational changes made in CGW side

 Next Steps:
 * Check IPsec Logs on the CGW Device to verify if you are able to see information pertaining to this issue.

 References:
 [1] Tunnel stability issues during a rekey: https://aws.amazon.com/premiumsupport/knowledge-center/vpn-fix-ikev2-tunnel-instability-rekey/
 [2] Phase 2 Troubleshooting: https://aws.amazon.com/premiumsupport/knowledge-center/vpn-tunnel-phase-2-ipsec/
 
 ", "Error related to : AWS tunnel received DELETE for IKE_SA from CGW":
 Please treat below as Potential resolution of this error :
 
 AWS CloudWatch monitoring has identified that your VPN tunnel went down because CGW has sent the Delete_SA message for Parent/IKE_SA. When AWS receives Delete_SA from CGW, it honours the message and brings down the VPN tunnel.

 There can be various reasons for CGW sending Delete_SA message like :
 
 * A reset to clear active SAs has been performed on the CGW side
 * IKE SA has been timed out
 * Configuration changes have been made on CGW

 Next Steps:
 * Review your VPN device idle timeout settings using information from your device vendor. When there is no traffic through a VPN tunnel for the duration of your vendor-specific VPN idle time, the IPsec session terminates. For more information on tunnel inactivity and instability refer to this documentation [1]
 * Check logs on your CGW device to verify if you are able to see information pertaining to this issue.

 References:
 [1] Tunnel inactivity or instability: https://aws.amazon.com/premiumsupport/knowledge-center/vpn-tunnel-instability-inactivity/
 
 ", "Error related to : No proposal chosen":
 Please treat below as Potential resolution of this error :
 
 AWS CloudWatch monitoring has detected that IKE Phase 2 parameters (such as encryption algorithm, hashing algorithm and DH group) configured on Customer Gateway (CGW) device and AWS VPN endpoint do not match or the CGW is using parameters that are not supported by the AWS VPN.

 Next Steps:
 * Verify that the Phase 2 parameters (Integrity algorithm, Encryption algorithm and DH group) being proposed by CGW are matching with those configured on AWS side. If you are using default settings on AWS side then verify that parameters being proposed are supported by AWS VPN. To Find list of parameters supported by

 * If you want to modify the parameters on the AWS VPN side you can follow below steps:
 Step 1: Open the Amazon VPC console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/vpc/
 Step 2: In the navigation pane, choose Site-to-Site VPN Connections.
 Step 3: Select the Site-to-Site VPN connection, and choose Actions, Modify VPN Tunnel Options.
 Step 4: For VPN Tunnel Outside IP Address, choose the tunnel endpoint IP of the VPN tunnel that you are modifying options for.
 Step 5: Choose or enter new values for the tunnel options.
 Step 6: Choose Save.
}

```

References

Systems Manager Automation

- [Run this Automation \(console\)](#)
- [Run an automation](#)
- [Setting up an Automation](#)
- [Support Automation Workflows landing page](#)

AWS service documentation

- [Contents of Site-to-Site VPN logs](#)

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteEgressOnlyInternetGateway

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteEgressOnlyInternetGateway runbook deletes the egress-only internet gateway you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- EgressOnlyInternetGatewayId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the egress-only internet gateway that you want to delete.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ec2:DeleteEgressOnlyInternetGateway
- ec2:DescribeEgressOnlyInternetGateways

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Deletes the egress-only internet gateway specified in the `EgressOnlyInternetGatewayId` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Verifies the egress-only internet gateway has been deleted.

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedENI

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedENI runbook deletes an elastic network interface (ENI) that has an attachment status of detached .

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- `NetworkInterfaceId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the ENI that you want to delete.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ec2:DeleteNetworkInterface
- ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Deletes the ENI you specify in the NetworkInterfaceId parameter.
- aws:executeScript - Verifies the ENI has been deleted.

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedSecurityGroup

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedSecurityGroup runbook deletes the security group you specify in the GroupId parameter. If you attempt to delete a security group that is associated with an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance, or is referenced by another security group, the automation fails. This automation does not delete a default security group.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- **GroupId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the security group that you want to delete.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups`
- `ec2:DeleteSecurityGroup`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Returns the security group name using the value you provide in the `GroupId` parameter.
- `aws:branch` - Confirms that the group name is not "default".
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Deletes the security group specified in the `GroupId` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Confirms the security group was deleted.

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedVPCNetworkACL

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteUnusedVPCNetworkACL runbook deletes a network access control list (ACL) that is not associated with a subnet.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- NetworkAclId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the network ACL that you want to delete.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ec2:DeleteNetworkAcl
- ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Deletes the network ACL specified in the `NetworkAclId` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Confirms the network ACL specified in the `NetworkAclId` parameter was deleted.

AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteVPCFlowLog

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DeleteVPCFlowLog runbook deletes the virtual private cloud (VPC) flow log you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- `FlowLogId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the flow log that you want to delete.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ec2:DeleteFlowLogs
- ec2:DescribeFlowLogs

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Deletes the flow log you specify in the FlowLogId parameter.
- aws:executeScript - Verifies the flow log has been deleted.

AWSConfigRemediation-DetachAndDeleteInternetGateway

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DetachAndDeleteInternetGateway runbook detaches and deletes the internet gateway you specify. If any Amazon EC2 instances in your virtual private cloud (VPC) have elastic IP addresses or public IPv4 addresses associated with them, the runbook fails.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- InternetGatewayId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the internet gateway that you want to delete.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ec2:DeleteInternetGateway
- ec2:DescribeInternetGateways
- ec2:DetachInternetGateway

Document Steps

- aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Accepts the ID of the virtual private gateway and waits until the virtual private gateway's state property changes to available or times out.
 - aws:executeAwsApi - Retrieves a specified virtual private gateway configuration.
 - aws:branch - Branches based on the VpcAttachments.state parameter value.
-
- aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Accepts the ID of the virtual private gateway and waits until the virtual private gateway's VpcAttachments.state's property changes to attached or times out.
 - aws:executeAwsApi - Accepts the ID of the virtual private gateway and the ID of the Amazon VPC as input, and detaches the virtual private gateway from the Amazon VPC.
 - aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty - Accepts the ID of the virtual private gateway and waits until the virtual private gateway's VpcAttachments.state's property changes to detached or times out.

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Accepts the ID of the virtual private gateway as input and deletes it.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Accepts the ID of the virtual private gateway as input and verifies its deletion.
`aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the VPC ID from the internet gateway ID.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Detaches the internet gateway ID from the VPC.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Deletes the internet gateway.

AWSConfigRemediation-DetachAndDeleteVirtualPrivateGateway

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DetachAndDeleteVirtualPrivateGateway runbook detaches and deletes a given Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) virtual private gateway attached to a virtual private cloud (VPC) created with Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC).

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- `VpnGatewayId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the virtual private gateway to be deleted.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ec2:DeleteVpnGateway`
- `ec2:DetachVpnGateway`
- `ec2:DescribeVpnGateways`

Document Steps

- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Accepts the ID of the virtual private gateway and waits until the virtual private gateway's state property changes to available or times out.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Retrieves a specified virtual private gateway configuration.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the `VpcAttachments.state` parameter value.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Accepts the ID of the virtual private gateway and waits until the virtual private gateway's `VpcAttachments.state`'s property changes to attached or times out.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Accepts the ID of the virtual private gateway and the ID of the Amazon VPC as input, and detaches the virtual private gateway from the Amazon VPC.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Accepts the ID of the virtual private gateway and waits until the virtual private gateway's `VpcAttachments.state`'s property changes to detached or times out.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Accepts the ID of the virtual private gateway as input and deletes it.

- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Accepts the ID of the virtual private gateway as input and verifies its deletion.

AWS-DisableIncomingSSHOnPort22

Description

The AWS-DisableIncomingSSHOnPort22 runbook removes rules that allow unrestricted incoming SSH traffic on TCP port 22 for security groups.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `SecurityGroupIds`

Type: String

Description: (Required) A comma separated list of the IDs of the security groups you want to restrict SSH traffic for.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups
- ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupIngress

Document Steps

- aws :executeAwsApi - Removes all rules allowing incoming SSH traffic on TCP port 22 from the security groups you specify in the SecurityGroupIds parameter.

Outputs

DisableIncomingSSHTemplate.RestrictedSecurityGroupIds - A list of the IDs of the security groups that had inbound SSH rules removed.

AWS-DisablePublicAccessForSecurityGroup

Description

This runbook disables default SSH and RDP ports that are opened to all IP addresses.

Important

This runbook fails with an "InvalidPermission.NotFound" error for security groups that meet both of the following criteria: 1) The security group is located in a non-default VPC; and 2) The inbound rules for the security group don't specify open ports using all four of the following patterns:

- 0.0.0.0/0
- ::/0
- SSH or RDP port + 0.0.0.0/0
- SSH or RDP port + ::/0

Note

This runbook is not available in the AWS Regions located within China.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)**Document type**

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- GroupId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the security group for which the ports should be disabled.

- IpAddressToBlock

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Additional IPv4 addresses from which access should be blocked, in the format 1.2.3.4/32 .

AWSConfigRemediation-DisableSubnetAutoAssignPublicIP

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-DisableSubnetAutoAssignPublicIP runbook disables the IPv4 public addressing attribute for the subnet you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- SubnetId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the subnet that you want to disable the auto-assign public IPv4 address attribute on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ec2:DescribeSubnets`
- `ec2:ModifySubnetAttribute`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Disables the auto-assign public IPv4 address attribute for the subnet you specified in the `SubnetId` parameter.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the attribute has been disabled.

AWSSupport-EnableVPCFlowLogs

Description

The `AWSSupport-EnableVPCFlowLogs` runbook creates Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC) Flow Logs for subnets, network interfaces, and VPCs in your AWS account. If you create a flow log for a subnet or VPC, each elastic network interface in that subnet or Amazon VPC is monitored. Flow log data is published to the Amazon CloudWatch Logs log group or the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket you specify. For more information about flow logs, see [VPC Flow Logs](#) in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.

Important

Data ingestion and archival charges for vended logs apply when you publish flow logs to CloudWatch Logs or to Amazon S3. For more information, see [Flow Logs pricing](#)

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- DeliverLogsPermissionArn

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN for the IAM role that permits Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) to publish flow logs to the CloudWatch Logs log group in your account. If you specify s3 for the LogDestinationType parameter, do not provide a value for this parameter. For more information, see [Publish flow logs to CloudWatch Logs](#) in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.

- LogDestinationARN

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The ARN of the resource to which the flow log data is published. If cloud-watch-logs is specified for the LogDestinationType parameter, provide the ARN of the CloudWatch Logs log group you want to publish flow log data to. Alternatively, use LogGroupName instead. If s3 is specified for the LogDestinationType parameter, you must specify the ARN of the Amazon S3 bucket you want to publish flow log data to for this parameter. You can also specify a folder in the bucket.

- LogDestinationType

Type: String

Valid values: cloud-watch-logs | s3

Description: (Required) Determines where flow log data is published. If you specify LogDestinationType as s3 , do not specify DeliverLogsPermissionArn or LogGroupName .

- **LogFormat**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The fields to include in the flow log, and the order in which they should appear in the record. For a list of available fields, see [Flow log records](#) in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*. If you do not provide a value for this parameter, the flow log is created using the default format. If you specify this parameter, you must specify at least one field.

- **LogGroupName**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The name of the CloudWatch Logs log group where flow log data is published. If you specify s3 for the LogDestinationType parameter, do not provide a value for this parameter.

- **ResourceIds**

Type: StringList

Description: (Required) A comma-separated list of the IDs for the subnets, elastic network interfaces, or VPC for which you want to create a flow log.

- **TrafficType**

Type: String

Valid values: ACCEPT | REJECT | ALL

Description: (Required) The type of traffic to log. You can log traffic that the resource accepts or rejects, or all traffic.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ec2>CreateFlowLogs`
- `ec2>DeleteFlowLogs`

- `ec2:DescribeFlowLogs`
- `iam:AttachRolePolicy`
- `iam>CreateRole`
- `iam:CreatePolicy`
- `iam>DeletePolicy`
- `iam>DeleteRole`
- `iam>DeleteRolePolicy`
- `iam:GetPolicy`
- `iam:GetRole`
- `iam:TagRole`
- `iam:PassRole`
- `iam:PutRolePolicy`
- `iam:UpdateRole`
- `logs>CreateLogDelivery`
- `logs>CreateLogGroup`
- `logs>DeleteLogDelivery`
- `logs>DeleteLogGroup`
- `logs:DescribeLogGroups`
- `logs:DescribeLogStreams`
- `s3:GetBucketAcl`

Document Steps

- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value specified for the `LogDestinationType` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Creates a log group if no value is specified for the `LogDestinationARN` parameter, and `cloud-watch-logs` is specified for the `LogDestinationType` parameter.
- `aws:executeScript` - Creates flow logs based on the values specified in the runbook parameters.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableVPCFlowLogsToCloudWatch

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableVPCFlowLogsToCloudWatch runbook replaces an existing Amazon VPC flow log that publishes flow log data to Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) with a flow log that publishes flow log data to the Amazon CloudWatch Logs (CloudWatch Logs) log group you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- DestinationLogGroup

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the CloudWatch Logs log group you want to publish flow log data to.

- DeliverLogsPermissionArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role you want to use that provides Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) the requisite permissions to publish flow log data to CloudWatch Logs.

- **FlowLogId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the flow log that publishes to Amazon S3 you want to replace.

- **MaxAggregationInterval**

Type: Integer

Valid values: 60 | 600

Description: (Optional) The maximum interval of time, in seconds, during which a flow of packets is captured and aggregated into a flow log record.

- **TrafficType**

Type: String

Valid values: ACCEPT | REJECT | ALL

Description: (Required) The type of flow log data you want to record and publish.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ec2>CreateFlowLogs`
- `ec2>DeleteFlowLogs`
- `ec2:DescribeFlowLogs`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers details about your VPC from the value you specify in the `FlowLogId` parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Creates a flow log based on the values you specify for the runbook parameters.

- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the newly created flow log publishes to CloudWatch Logs.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Deletes the flow log that publishes to Amazon S3.
- `aws:executeScript` - Confirms the flow log that published to Amazon S3 was deleted.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableVPCFlowLogsToS3Bucket

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableVPCFlowLogsToS3Bucket runbook *replaces* an existing Amazon VPC flow log that publishes flow log data to Amazon CloudWatch Logs (CloudWatch Logs) with a flow log that publishes flow log data to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- `DestinationS3BucketArn`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ARN of the Amazon S3 bucket you want to publish flow log data to.

- `FlowLogId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the flow log that publishes to CloudWatch Logs you want to replace.

- `MaxAggregationInterval`

Type: Integer

Valid values: 60 | 600

Description: (Optional) The maximum interval of time, in seconds, during which a flow of packets is captured and aggregated into a flow log record.

- `TrafficType`

Type: String

Valid values: ACCEPT | REJECT | ALL

Description: (Required) The type of flow log data you want to record and publish.

Required IAM permissions

The `AutomationAssumeRole` parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ec2>CreateFlowLogs`
- `ec2>DeleteFlowLogs`
- `ec2:DescribeFlowLogs`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers details about your VPC from the value you specify in the `FlowLogId` parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Creates a flow log based on the values you specify for the runbook parameters.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the newly created flow log publishes to Amazon S3.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Deletes the flow log that publishes to CloudWatch Logs.
- `aws:executeScript` - Confirms the flow log that published to CloudWatch Logs was deleted.

AWS-ReleaseElasticIP

Description

Release the specified Elastic IP address using the allocation ID.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- `AllocationId`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Allocation ID of the Elastic IP address.

AWS-RemoveNetworkACLUnrestrictedSSHRDP

Description

The AWS-RemoveNetworkACLUnrestrictedSSHRDP runbook removes all network access control list (ACL) rules from the specified network ACL that allow ingress traffic from all source addresses to default SSH and RDP ports. Rules that include port ranges that overlap with the default SSH and RDP ports aren't removed.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- NetworkAclId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the network ACL that you want to remove unrestricted rules that allow ingress traffic from all source addresses to default SSH and RDP ports.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ec2:DeleteNetworkAclEntry
- ec2:DescribeNetworkAcls

Document Steps

- aws :executeScript - Removes all ingress rules that allow traffic from all source addresses from the security group you specified in the SecurityGroupId parameter.

Outputs

RemoveNaclEntriesAndVerify.VerificationMessage - Verification messages of the successfully deleted network ACL rules.

RemoveNaclEntriesAndVerify.RulesDeletedAndApiResponses - The network ACL rules that were deleted, and the DeleteNetworkAclEntry API operation responses.

AWSConfigRemediation- RemoveUnrestrictedSourceIngressRules

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-RemoveUnrestrictedSourceIngressRules runbook removes all ingress rules from the security group you specify that allow traffic from all source addresses.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- SecurityGroupId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the security group that you want to remove ingress rules that allow traffic from all source addresses from.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups
- ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupIngress

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Removes all ingress rules that allow traffic from all source addresses from the security group you specified in the SecurityGroupId parameter.

AWSConfigRemediation-RemoveVPCDefaultSecurityGroupRules

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-RemoveVPCDefaultSecurityGroupRules runbook removes all rules from the default security group of the virtual private cloud (VPC) you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- GroupId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the security group that you want to remove all rules from.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups`
- `ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupEgress`
- `ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupIngress`

Document Steps

- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the security group you specified in the `GroupId` parameter is named default.
- `aws:executeScript` - Removes all rules from the security group you specified in the `GroupId` parameter.

AWSSupport-SetupIPMonitoringFromVPC

Description

`AWSSupport-SetupIPMonitoringFromVPC` creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance in the specified subnet and monitors selected target IPs (IPv4 or IPv6) by continuously running ping, MTR, traceroute and tracetcp tests. The results are stored in Amazon CloudWatch Logs logs, and metric filters are applied to quickly visualize latency and packet loss statistics in a CloudWatch dashboard.

Additional Information

The CloudWatch Logs data can be used for network troubleshooting and analysis of pattern/trends. Additionally, you can configure CloudWatch alarms with Amazon SNS notifications when packet loss and/or latency reach a threshold. The data can also be used when opening a case with AWS Support, to help isolate an issue quickly and reduce time to resolution when investigating a network issue.

Note

To clean up resources created by `AWSSupport-SetupIPMonitoringFromVPC`, you can use the runbook `AWSSupport-TerminateIPMonitoringFromVPC`. For more information, see [AWSSupport-TerminateIPMonitoringFromVPC](#).

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- CloudWatchLogGroupNamePrefix

Type: String

Default: / AWSSupport-SetupIPMonitoringFromVPC

Description: (Optional) Prefix used for each CloudWatch log group created for the test results.

- CloudWatchLogGroupRetentionInDays

Type: String

Valid values: 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 14 | 30 | 60 | 90 | 120 | 150 | 180 | 365 | 400 | 545 | 731 | 1827 | 3653

Default: 7

Description: (Optional) Number of days you want to keep the network monitoring results for.

- InstanceType

Type: String

Valid values: t2.micro | t2.small | t2.medium | t2.large | t3.micro | t3.small | t3.medium | t3.large | t4g.micro | t4g.small | t4g.medium | t4g.large

Default: t2.micro

Description: (Optional) The EC2 instance type for the EC2Rescue instance. Recommended size: t2.micro.

- SubnetId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The subnet ID for the monitor instance. Be aware that if you specify a private subnet, then you must make sure there is Internet access to allow the monitor instance to setup the test (meaning, install the CloudWatch Logs agent, interact with Systems Manager and CloudWatch).

- TargetIPs

Type: String

Description: (Required) Comma separated list of IPv4s and/or IPv6s to monitor. No spaces allowed. Maximum size is 255 characters. Be aware that if you provide an invalid IP, then the automation will fail and rollback the test setup.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

It is recommended that the user who runs the automation have the **AmazonSSMAutomationRole** IAM managed policy attached. In addition, the user must have the following policy attached to their user account, group, or role:

```
{
"Version": "2012-10-17",
"Statement": [
{
    "Action": [
        "iam:CreateRole",
```

```
        "iam:CreateInstanceProfile",
        "iam:GetRole",
        "iamGetInstanceProfile",
        "iam:DetachRolePolicy",
        "iam:AttachRolePolicy",
        "iam:PassRole",
        "iam:AddRoleToInstanceProfile",
        "iam:RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfile",
        "iam:DeleteRole",
        "iam:DeleteInstanceProfile",
        "iam:PutRolePolicy",
        "iam:DeleteRolePolicy"
    ],
    "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:iam::  

         AWS_account_ID  

        :role/AWSSupport/SetupIPMonitoringFromVPC_*",
        "arn:aws:iam::  

         AWS_account_ID  

        :instance-profile/AWSSupport/SetupIPMonitoringFromVPC_*"
    ],
    "Effect": "Allow"
},
{
    "Action": [
        "iam:DetachRolePolicy",
        "iam:AttachRolePolicy"
    ],
    "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore"
    ],
    "Effect": "Allow"
},
{
    "Action": [
        "cloudwatch:DeleteDashboards"
    ],
    "Resource": [
        "*"
    ],
    "Effect": "Allow"
},
{
    "Action": [
```

```
        "ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress",
        "ec2>CreateSecurityGroup",
        "ec2>DeleteSecurityGroup",
        "ec2>DescribeSubnets",
        "ec2>DescribeInstanceTypes",
        "ec2>RunInstances",
        "ec2>TerminateInstances",
        "ec2>DescribeInstanceStatus"
        "ec2>CreateTags",
        "ec2>AssignIpv6Addresses",
        "ec2>DescribeTags",
        "ec2>DescribeInstances",
        "ec2>DescribeSecurityGroups"
    ],
    "Resource": [
        "*"
    ],
    "Effect": "Allow"
},
{
    "Action": [
        "ssm:GetParameter",
        "ssm:SendCommand",
        "ssm>ListCommands",
        "ssm>ListCommandInvocations",
    ],
    "Resource": [
        "*"
    ],
    "Effect": "Allow"
}
]
}
```

Document Steps

1. **aws:executeAwsApi** - describe the provided subnet.
2. **aws:branch** - evaluate the TargetIPs input.

(IPv6) If TargetIPs contains an IPv6:

aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - check the provided subnet has an IPv6 pool associated

3. **aws:executeScript** - get the architecture of instance type and public parameter path for latest Amazon Linux 2 AMI.
4. **aws:executeAwsApi** - get the latest Amazon Linux 2 AMI from Parameter Store.
5. **aws:executeAwsApi** - create a security group for the test in the subnet's VPC.

(Cleanup) If the security group creation fails:

aws:executeAwsApi - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

6. **aws:executeAwsApi** - allow all outbound traffic in the test security group.

(Cleanup) If the security group egress rule creation fails:

aws:executeAwsApi - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

7. **aws:executeAwsApi** - create an IAM role for the test EC2 instance

(Cleanup) If the role creation fails:

- a. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation, if it exists.
- b. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

8. **aws:executeAwsApi** - attach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy

(Cleanup) If the policy attachment fails:

- a. **aws:executeAwsApi** - detach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy from the role created by the automation, if attached.
- b. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation.
- c. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

9. **aws:executeAwsApi** - attach an inline policy to allow setting CloudWatch log group retentions and creating a CloudWatch dashboard

(Cleanup) If the inline policy attachment fails:

- a. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the CloudWatch inline policy from the role created by the automation, if created.
- b. **aws:executeAwsApi** - detach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy from the role created by the automation.
- c. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation.

10aws:executeAwsApi - create an IAM instance profile.

(Cleanup) If the instance profile creation fails:

- a. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM instance profile created by the automation, if it exists.
- b. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the CloudWatch inline policy from the role created by the automation.
- c. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy from the role created by the automation.
- d. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation.
- e. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

11aws:executeAwsApi - associate the IAM instance profile to the IAM role.

(Cleanup) If the instance profile and role association fails:

- a. **aws:executeAwsApi** - remove the IAM instance profile from the role, if associated.
- b. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM instance profile created by the automation.
- c. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the CloudWatch inline policy from the role created by the automation.
- d. **aws:executeAwsApi** - detach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy from the role created by the automation.
- e. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation.
- f. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

12aws:sleep - wait for the instance profile to become available.**13aws:runInstances** - create the test instance in the specified subnet, and with the instance profile created earlier attached.

(Cleanup) If the step fails:

- a. **aws:changeInstanceState** - terminate the test instance.
- b. **aws:executeAwsApi** - remove the IAM instance profile from the role.
- c. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM instance profile created by the automation.
- d. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the CloudWatch inline policy from the role created by the automation.

- e. **aws:executeAwsApi** - detach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy from the role created by the automation.
- f. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation.
- g. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

14**aws:branch** - evaluate the TargetIPs input.

(IPv6) If TargetIPs contains an IPv6:

aws:executeAwsApi - assign an IPv6 to the test instance.

15**aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty** - wait for the test instance to become a managed instance.

(Cleanup) If the step fails:

- a. **aws:changeInstanceState** - terminate the test instance.
- b. **aws:executeAwsApi** - remove the IAM instance profile from the role.
- c. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM instance profile created by the automation.
- d. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the CloudWatch inline policy from the role created by the automation.
- e. **aws:executeAwsApi** - detach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy from the role created by the automation.
- f. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation.
- g. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

16**aws:runCommand** - install test pre-requisites:

(Cleanup) If the step fails:

- a. **aws:changeInstanceState** - terminate the test instance.
- b. **aws:executeAwsApi** - remove the IAM instance profile from the role.
- c. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM instance profile created by the automation.
- d. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the CloudWatch inline policy from the role created by the automation.
- e. **aws:executeAwsApi** - detach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy from the role created by the automation.
- f. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation.
- g. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

17 **aws:runCommand** - validate the provided IPs are syntactically correct IPv4 and/or IPv6 addresses:

(Cleanup) If the step fails:

- a. **aws:changeInstanceState** - terminate the test instance.
- b. **aws:executeAwsApi** - remove the IAM instance profile from the role.
- c. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM instance profile created by the automation.
- d. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the CloudWatch inline policy from the role created by the automation.
- e. **aws:executeAwsApi** - detach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy from the role created by the automation.
- f. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation.
- g. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

18 **aws:runCommand** - define the MTR test for each of the provided IPs.

(Cleanup) If the step fails:

- a. **aws:changeInstanceState** - terminate the test instance.
- b. **aws:executeAwsApi** - remove the IAM instance profile from the role.
- c. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM instance profile created by the automation.
- d. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the CloudWatch inline policy from the role created by the automation.
- e. **aws:executeAwsApi** - detach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy from the role created by the automation.
- f. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation.
- g. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

19 **aws:runCommand** - define the first ping test for each of the provided IPs.

(Cleanup) If the step fails:

- a. **aws:changeInstanceState** - terminate the test instance.
- b. **aws:executeAwsApi** - remove the IAM instance profile from the role.
- c. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM instance profile created by the automation.
- d. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the CloudWatch inline policy from the role created by the automation.

- e. **aws:executeAwsApi** - detach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy from the role created by the automation.
- f. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation.
- g. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

20 **aws:runCommand** - define the second ping test for each of the provided IPs.

(Cleanup) If the step fails:

- a. **aws:changeInstanceState** - terminate the test instance.
- b. **aws:executeAwsApi** - remove the IAM instance profile from the role.
- c. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM instance profile created by the automation.
- d. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the CloudWatch inline policy from the role created by the automation.
- e. **aws:executeAwsApi** - detach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy from the role created by the automation.
- f. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation.
- g. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

21 **aws:runCommand** - define the tracepath test for each of the provided IPs.

(Cleanup) If the step fails:

- a. **aws:changeInstanceState** - terminate the test instance.
- b. **aws:executeAwsApi** - remove the IAM instance profile from the role.
- c. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM instance profile created by the automation.
- d. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the CloudWatch inline policy from the role created by the automation.
- e. **aws:executeAwsApi** - detach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy from the role created by the automation.
- f. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation.
- g. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

22 **aws:runCommand** - define the traceroute test for each of the provided IPs.

(Cleanup) If the step fails:

- a. **aws:changeInstanceState** - terminate the test instance.

- c. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM instance profile created by the automation.
- d. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the CloudWatch inline policy from the role created by the automation.
- e. **aws:executeAwsApi** - detach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy from the role created by the automation.
- f. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation.
- g. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

23 **aws:runCommand** - configure CloudWatch logs.

(Cleanup) If the step fails:

- a. **aws:changeInstanceState** - terminate the test instance.
- b. **aws:executeAwsApi** - remove the IAM instance profile from the role.
- c. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM instance profile created by the automation.
- d. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the CloudWatch inline policy from the role created by the automation.
- e. **aws:executeAwsApi** - detach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy from the role created by the automation.
- f. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation.
- g. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

24 **aws:runCommand** - schedule cronjobs to run each test every minute.

(Cleanup) If the step fails:

- a. **aws:changeInstanceState** - terminate the test instance.
- b. **aws:executeAwsApi** - remove the IAM instance profile from the role.
- c. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM instance profile created by the automation.
- d. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the CloudWatch inline policy from the role created by the automation.
- e. **aws:executeAwsApi** - detach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy from the role created by the automation.
- f. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation.
- g. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

25 **aws:sleep** - wait for the tests to generate some data.

725

26 **aws:runCommand** - set the desired CloudWatch log group retentions.

(Cleanup) If the step fails:

- a. **aws:changeInstanceState** - terminate the test instance.
- b. **aws:executeAwsApi** - remove the IAM instance profile from the role.
- c. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM instance profile created by the automation.
- d. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the CloudWatch inline policy from the role created by the automation.
- e. **aws:executeAwsApi** - detach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy from the role created by the automation.
- f. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation.
- g. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

27 **aws:runCommand** - set the CloudWatch log group metric filters.

(Cleanup) If the step fails:

- a. **aws:changeInstanceState** - terminate the test instance.
- b. **aws:executeAwsApi** - remove the IAM instance profile from the role.
- c. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM instance profile created by the automation.
- d. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the CloudWatch inline policy from the role created by the automation.
- e. **aws:executeAwsApi** - detach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy from the role created by the automation.
- f. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation.
- g. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

28 **aws:runCommand** - create the CloudWatch dashboard.

(Cleanup) If the step fails:

- a. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the CloudWatch dashboard, if it exists.
- b. **aws:changeInstanceState** - terminate the test instance.
- c. **aws:executeAwsApi** - remove the IAM instance profile from the role.
- d. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM instance profile created by the automation.
- e. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the CloudWatch inline policy from the role created by the automation.

- f. **aws:executeAwsApi** - detach the AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore managed policy from the role created by the automation.
- g. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the IAM role created by the automation.
- h. **aws:executeAwsApi** - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

Outputs

createCloudWatchDashboards.Output - the URL of the CloudWatch dashboard.

createManagedInstance.InstanceIds - the test instance ID.

AWSSupport-TerminateIPMonitoringFromVPC

Description

AWSSupport-TerminateIPMonitoringFromVPC terminates an IP monitoring test previously started by AWSSupport-SetupIPMonitoringFromVPC . Data related to the specified test ID will be deleted.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on

your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **AutomationExecutionId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The automation execution ID from when you previously ran the AWSSupport-SetupIPMonitoringFromVPC runbook. All resources associated with this execution ID are deleted.

- **InstanceId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The instance ID for the monitor instance.

- **SubnetId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The subnet ID for the monitor instance.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

It is recommended that the user who runs the automation have the **AmazonSSMAutomationRole** IAM managed policy attached. In addition, the user must have the following policy attached to their user, group, or role:

```
{  
    "Version": "2012-10-17",  
    "Statement": [  
        {  
            "Action": [  
                "iam:DetachRolePolicy",  
                "iam:RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfile",  
                "iam:DeleteRole",  
                "iam:DeleteInstanceProfile",  
                "iam:DeleteRolePolicy"  
            ],  
            "Effect": "Allow",  
            "Resource": "arn:aws:iam::  
                the user's account ID:role/AmazonSSMAutomationRole"  
        }  
    ]  
}
```

```
"Resource": [
    "arn:aws:iam::An-AWS-Account-ID:role/AWSSupport/
SetupIPMonitoringFromVPC_",
    "arn:aws:iam::An-AWS-Account-ID:instance-profile/AWSSupport/
SetupIPMonitoringFromVPC_"
],
"Effect": "Allow"
},
{
    "Action": [
        "iam:DetachRolePolicy"
    ],
    "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore"
    ],
    "Effect": "Allow"
},
{
    "Action": [
        "cloudwatch:DeleteDashboards"
    ],
    "Resource": [
        "*"
    ],
    "Effect": "Allow"
},
{
    "Action": [
        "ec2:DescribeTags",
        "ec2:DescribeInstances",
        "ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups",
        "ec2:DeleteSecurityGroup",
        "ec2:TerminateInstances",
        "ec2:DescribeInstanceState"
    ],
    "Resource": [
        "*"
    ],
    "Effect": "Allow"
}
]
```

Document Steps

1. aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - check AutomationExecutionId and InstanceId are related to the same test.
2. aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - check SubnetId and InstanceId are related to the same test.
3. aws:executeAwsApi - retrieve the test security group.
4. aws:executeAwsApi - delete the CloudWatch dashboard.
5. aws:changeInstanceState - terminate the test instance.
6. aws:executeAwsApi - remove the IAM instance profile from the role.
7. aws:executeAwsApi - delete the IAM instance profile created by the automation.
8. aws:executeAwsApi - delete the CloudWatch inline policy from the role created by the automation.
9. aws:executeAwsApi - detach the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** managed policy from the role created by the automation.
- 10aws:executeAwsApi - delete the IAM role created by the automation.
- 11aws:executeAwsApi - delete the security group created by the automation, if it exists.

Outputs

None

AWS WAF

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for AWS WAF. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-AddWAFRegionalRuleToRuleGroup](#)
- [AWS-AddWAFRegionalRuleToWebAcl](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableWAFCClassicLogging](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableWAFCClassicRegionalLogging](#)
- [AWSConfigRemediation-EnableWAFV2Logging](#)

AWS-AddWAFRegionalRuleToRuleGroup

Description

The AWS-AddWAFRegionalRuleToRuleGroup runbook adds an existing AWS WAF regional rule to a AWS WAF regional rule group. Only AWS WAF Classic regional rule groups are supported. AWS WAF Classic regional rule groups can have a maximum of 10 rules.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- RuleGroupId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the rule group that you want to update.

- RulePriority

Type: Integer

Description: (Required) The priority for the new rule. Rule priority determines the order in which rules in a regional group are evaluated. Rules with a lower value have higher priority than rules

with a higher value. The value must be a unique integer. If you add multiple rules to a regional rule group, the values don't have to be consecutive.

- RuleId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID for the rule that you want to add to your regional rule group.

- RuleAction

Type: String

Description: (Required) Specifies the action that AWS WAF takes when a web request matches the conditions of the rule.

Valid values: ALLOW | BLOCK | COUNT

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- waf-regional:GetChangeToken
- waf-regional:GetChangeTokenStatus
- waf-regional>ListActivatedRulesInRuleGroup
- waf-regional:UpdateRuleGroup

Document Steps

- GetWAFChangeToken (aws:executeAwsApi) - Retrieves a AWS WAF change token to ensure the runbook doesn't submit conflicting requests to the service.
- AddWAFRuleToWAFRegionalRuleGroup (aws:executeScript) - Adds the specified rule to the AWS WAF regional rule group.
- VerifyChangeTokenPropagating (aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty) - Verifies the change token has a status of PENDING or INSYNC.

- `VerifyRuleAddedToRuleGroup` (`aws:executeScript`) - Verifies the specified AWS WAF rule was added to the target regional rule group.

Outputs

- `VerifyRuleAddedToRuleGroup.VerifyRuleAddedToRuleGroupResponse` - Output of the step verifying that the new rule was added to the regional rule group.
- `VerifyRuleAddedToRuleGroup.ListActivatedRulesInRuleGroupResponse` - Output of the `ListActivatedRulesInRuleGroup` API operation.

AWS-AddWAFRegionalRuleToWebAcl

Description

The `AWS-AddWAFRegionalRuleToWebAcl` runbook adds an existing AWS WAF regional rule, rule group or rate-based rule to a AWS WAF Classic regional web access control list (ACL). This runbook doesn't update existing AWS WAF Classic regional web ACL's that are managed by AWS Firewall Manager.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on

your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- **WebACLId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the web ACL that you want to update.

- **ActivatedRulePriority**

Type: Integer

Description: (Required) The priority for the new rule. Rule priority determines the order in which rules in a web ACL are evaluated. Rules with a lower value have higher priority than rules with a higher value. The value must be a unique integer. If you add multiple rules to a regional web ACL, the values don't have to be consecutive.

- **ActivatedRuleRuleId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID for the regular rule, rate-based rule, or group you want to add to the web ACL.

- **ActivatedRuleAction**

Type: String

Valid values: ALLOW | BLOCK | COUNT

Description: (Optional) Specifies the action that AWS WAF takes when a web request matches the conditions of the rule.

- **ActivatedRuleType**

Type: String

Valid values: REGULAR | RATE_BASED | GROUP

Default: REGULAR

Description: (Optional) The rule type you're adding to the web ACL. Although this field is optional, note that if you try to add a RATE_BASED rule to a web ACL without setting the type, the request fails because the request defaults to a REGULAR rule.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- waf-regional:GetChangeToken
- waf-regional:GetWebACL
- waf-regional:UpdateWebACL

Document Steps

- DetermineWebACLNotInFMSAndRulePriority (aws:executeScript) - Verifies if the AWS WAF web ACL is in a Firewall Manager security policy and verifies the priority ID doesn't conflict with an existing ACL.
- AddRuleOrRuleGroupToWebACL (aws:executeScript) - Adds the specified rule to the AWS WAF web ACL.
- VerifyRuleOrRuleGroupAddedToWebAcl (aws:executeScript) - Verifies the specified AWS WAF rule was added to the target web ACL.

Outputs

- DetermineWebACLNotInFMSAndRulePriority.PrereqResponse: Output from the DetermineWebACLNotInFMSAndRulePriority step.
- VerifyRuleOrRuleGroupAddedToWebAcl.VerifyRuleOrRuleGroupAddedToWebACLResponse: Output from the AddRuleOrRuleGroupToWebACL step.
- VerifyRuleOrRuleGroupAddedToWebAcl.ListActivatedRulesOrRuleGroupsInWebACLResponse: Output of the VerifyRuleOrRuleGroupAddedToWebAcl step.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableWAFClassicLogging

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableWAFClassicLogging runbook enables logging to Amazon Data Firehose (Firehose) for the AWS WAF web access control list (web ACL) you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- DeliveryStreamName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The name of the Firehose delivery stream that you want to send logs to.

- WebACLId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the AWS WAF web ACL that you want to enable logging on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`

- `iam:CreateServiceLinkedRole`
- `waf:GetLoggingConfiguration`
- `waf:GetWebAcl`
- `waf:PutLoggingConfiguration`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Confirms the delivery stream you specify in the `DeliveryStreamName` exists.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the ARN of the AWS WAF web ACL specified in the `WebACLId` parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables logging for the web ACL.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies logging has been enabled on the AWS WAF web ACL.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableWAFClassicRegionalLogging

Description

The `AWSConfigRemediation-EnableWAFClassicRegionalLogging` runbook enables logging to Amazon Data Firehose (Firehose) for the AWS WAF web access control list (ACL) you specify.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- `AutomationAssumeRole`

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- LogDestinationConfigs

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the Firehose delivery stream that you want to send logs to.

- WebACLId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the AWS WAF web ACL that you want to enable logging on.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- iam>CreateServiceLinkedRole
- waf-regional:GetLoggingConfiguration
- waf-regional:GetWebAcl
- waf-regional:PutLoggingConfiguration

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers the ARN of the AWS WAF web ACL specified in the WebACLId parameter.
- aws:executeAwsApi - Enables logging for the web ACL.
- aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Verifies logging has been enabled on the AWS WAF web ACL.

AWSConfigRemediation-EnableWAFV2Logging

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-EnableWAFV2Logging runbook enables logging for an AWS WAF (AWS WAFV2) web access control list (web ACL) with the specified Amazon Data Firehose (Firehose) delivery stream.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- LogDestinationConfigs

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Firehose delivery stream ARN that you want to associate with the web ACL.

Note

The Firehose delivery stream ARN must begin with the prefix aws-waf-logs-. For example, aws-waf-logs-us-east-2-analytics . For more information, see [Amazon Data Firehose](#) .

- WebAclArn

Type: String

Description: (Required) ARN of the web ACL for which logging will be enabled.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- firehose:DescribeDeliveryStream
- wafv2:PutLoggingConfiguration

- wafv2:GetLoggingConfiguration

Document Steps

- aws:executeScript - Enables logging for the AWS WAFV2 web ACL and verifies that the logging has the specified configuration.

Amazon WorkSpaces

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for Amazon WorkSpaces. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWS-CreateWorkSpace](#)
- [AWSSupport-RecoverWorkSpace](#)

AWS-CreateWorkSpace

Description

The AWS-CreateWorkSpace runbook creates a new Amazon WorkSpaces virtual desktop, known as a WorkSpace, based on the values that you specify for the input parameters. For information about WorkSpaces, see [What is Amazon WorkSpaces?](#) in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- BundleId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the bundle to use for the WorkSpace.

- **ComputeTypeName**

Type: String

Valid values: VALUE | STANDARD | PERFORMANCE | POWER | GRAPHICS | POWERPRO | GRAPHICSPRO

Description: (Optional) The compute type for your WorkSpace.

- **DirectoryId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the directory to add your WorkSpace to.

- **RootVolumeEncryptionEnabled**

Type: Boolean

Valid values: true | false

Default: false

Description: (Optional) Determines whether the root volume of the WorkSpace is encrypted.

- **RootVolumeSizeGiB**

Type: Integer

Description: (Required) The size of the root volume for the WorkSpace.

- **RunningMode**

Type: String

Valid values: ALWAYS_ON | AUTO_STOP

Description: (Required) The running mode of the WorkSpace.

- **RunningModeAutoStopTimeoutInMinutes**

Type: Integer

Description: (Optional) The time after a user logs off when the WorkSpaces stops. Specify a value in 60-minute intervals.

- **Tags**

Type: String

Description: (Optional) Tags that you want to apply to the WorkSpace.

- UserName

Type: String

Description: (Required) The user name to associate with the WorkSpace.

- UserVolumeEncryptionEnabled

Type: Boolean

Valid values: true | false

Default: false

Description: (Optional) Determines whether the user volume of the WorkSpace is encrypted.

- UserVolumeSizeGib

Type: Integer

Description: (Required) The size of the user volume for the WorkSpace.

- VolumeEncryptionKey

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The symmetric AWS Key Management Service key that you want to use to encrypt data stored on your WorkSpace.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- workspaces:CreateWorkspaces
- workspaces:DescribeWorkspaces

Document Steps

- `aws:executeScript` - Creates a WorkSpace based on the values that you specify for the input parameters.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies the state of the WorkSpace is AVAILABLE.

Outputs

`CreateWorkspace.WorkspaceId`

AWS Support - RecoverWorkSpace

Description

The AWS Support - RecoverWorkSpace runbook performs recovery steps on the Amazon WorkSpaces virtual desktop, known as a WorkSpace, you specify. The runbook reboots the WorkSpace, and if the state is still UNHEALTHY , restores or rebuilds the WorkSpace based on the values you specify for the input parameters. Before using this runbook we recommend reviewing [Troubleshooting WorkSpaces Issues](#) in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide* .

Important

Restoring or rebuilding a WorkSpace is a potentially destructive action that can result in the loss of data. This is because the WorkSpace is restored from the last available snapshot and data recovered from snapshots can be as old as 12 hours.

The restore option recreates both the root volume and user volume based on the most recent snapshots. The rebuild option recreates the user volume from the most recent snapshot and recreates the WorkSpace from the image associated with the bundle the WorkSpace was created from. Applications that were installed or system settings that were changed after the WorkSpace was created are lost. For more information about restoring and rebuilding WorkSpaces, see [Restore a WorkSpace](#) and [Rebuild a WorkSpace](#) in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide* .

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- AutomationAssumeRole

Type: String

Description: (Optional) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified, Systems Manager Automation uses the permissions of the user that starts this runbook.

- Acknowledge

Type: String

Valid values: Yes

Description: (Required) Entering yes means that you understand the restore and rebuild actions will try to recover the WorkSpace from the most recent snapshot, and that data restored from these snapshots can be as old as 12 hours.

- Reboot

Type: String

Valid values: Yes | No

Default: Yes

Description: (Required) Determines whether the WorkSpace is rebooted.

- Rebuild

Type: String

Valid values: Yes | No

Default: No

Description: (Required) Determines whether the WorkSpace is rebuilt.

- Restore

Type: String

Valid values: Yes | No

Default: No

Description: (Required) Determines whether the WorkSpace is restored.

- WorkspaceId

Type: String

Description: (Required) The ID of the WorkSpace you want to recover.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- ssm:StartAutomationExecution
- ssm:GetAutomationExecution
- workspaces:DescribeWorkspaces
- workspaces:DescribeWorkspaceSnapshots
- workspaces:RebootWorkspaces
- workspaces:RebuildWorkspaces
- workspaces:RestoreWorkspace
- workspaces:StartWorkspaces

Document Steps

- aws:executeAwsApi - Gathers the state of the WorkSpace you specify in the WorkspaceId parameter.
- aws:assertAwsResourceProperty - Verifies the state of the WorkSpace is AVAILABLE , ERROR , IMPAIRED , STOPPED , or UNHEALTHY .

- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the state of the WorkSpace.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Starts the WorkSpace.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value you specify for the Action parameter.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the WorkSpace status after being started.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the WorkSpace state to change to AVAILABLE, ERROR, IMPAIRED, or UNHEALTHY after being started.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the state of the WorkSpace after being started.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the state of the WorkSpace after being started.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the available snapshots for restoring or rebuilding the WorkSpace.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value you specify for the Reboot parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Reboots the WorkSpace.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the state of the WorkSpace after being started.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the state of the WorkSpace to change to REBOOTING.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the WorkSpace state to change to AVAILABLE, ERROR, or UNHEALTHY after being rebooted.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the state of the WorkSpace after being rebooted.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the state of the WorkSpace after rebooting.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value you specify for the Restore parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Restores the WorkSpace. If the restore fails, the runbook tries to rebuild the WorkSpace.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the state of the WorkSpace to change to RESTORING.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the WorkSpace state to change to AVAILABLE, ERROR, or UNHEALTHY after being restored.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the state of the WorkSpace after being restored.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the state of the WorkSpace after restoring.
- `aws:branch` - Branches based on the value you specify for the Rebuild parameter.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Rebuilds the WorkSpace.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the state of the WorkSpace to change to REBUILDING.

- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the WorkSpace state to change to AVAILABLE , ERROR , or UNHEALTHY after being rebuilt.
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the state of the WorkSpace after being rebuilt.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Confirms the state of the WorkSpace is AVAILABLE .

X-Ray

AWS Systems Manager Automation provides predefined runbooks for AWS X-Ray. For more information about runbooks, see [Working with runbooks](#). For information about how to view runbook content, see [View runbook content](#).

Topics

- [AWSConfigRemediation-UpdateXRayKMSKey](#)

AWSConfigRemediation-UpdateXRayKMSKey

Description

The AWSConfigRemediation-UpdateXRayKMSKey runbook enables encryption on your AWS X-Ray data using an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key. This runbook should only be used as a baseline to ensure that your AWS X-Ray data is encrypted according to minimum recommended security best practices. We recommend encrypting multiple sets of data with different KMS keys.

[Run this Automation \(console\)](#)

Document type

Automation

Owner

Amazon

Platforms

Linux, macOS, Windows

Parameters

- **AutomationAssumeRole**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows Systems Manager Automation to perform the actions on your behalf.

- **KeyId**

Type: String

Description: (Required) The Amazon Resource Name (ARN), key ID, or the key alias of the KMS key you want AWS X-Ray to use to encrypt data.

Required IAM permissions

The AutomationAssumeRole parameter requires the following actions to use the runbook successfully.

- `ssm:StartAutomationExecution`
- `ssm:GetAutomationExecution`
- `kms:DescribeKey`
- `xray:GetEncryptionConfig`
- `xray:PutEncryptionConfig`

Document Steps

- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Enables encryption on your X-Ray data using the KMS key you specify in the KeyId parameter.
- `aws:waitForAwsResourceProperty` - Waits for the encryption configuration status of your X-Ray to be ACTIVE .
- `aws:executeAwsApi` - Gathers the ARN of the key you specify in the KeyId parameter.
- `aws:assertAwsResourceProperty` - Verifies encryption has been enabled on your X-Ray.